

©Copyright 2021

Sean Gasiorowski

Searches for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state
using the ATLAS detector, or: How I Learned to Stop Worrying
and Love the QCD Background

Sean Gasiorowski

A dissertation
submitted in partial fulfillment of the
requirements for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy

University of Washington

2021

Reading Committee:

Anna Goussiou, Chair

Shih-Chieh Hsu

David Kaplan

Program Authorized to Offer Degree:
Physics

University of Washington

Abstract

Searches for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state using the ATLAS detector, or: How I Learned to Stop Worrying and Love the QCD Background

Sean Gasiorowski

Chair of the Supervisory Committee:
Professor Anna Goussiou
Physics

This thesis discusses searches for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state using data recorded by the ATLAS detector from $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV proton-proton (pp) collisions during the full period of LHC Run 2. It develops two separate analysis strategies: one targeting resonant pair production of Higgs bosons, in which Beyond the Standard Model resonances are produced which subsequently decay to two Higgs bosons, and one targeting non-resonant pair production of Higgs bosons, which is sensitive to Standard Model HH production as well as to variations of the Higgs trilinear self-coupling. In the resonant searches, no significant excesses are seen, and upper limits on cross section are set on both spin-0 and spin-2 resonant hypotheses. Such limits are competitive with other leading ATLAS full Run 2 searches, and represent a significantly stronger statement than previous, beating the early Run 2 combined ATLAS results above 350 GeV and leading the ATLAS full Run 2 sensitivity above 700 GeV. In the non-resonant, no evidence of Standard Model HH production is seen, but upper limits on cross section of $pp \rightarrow HH$ via gluon-gluon fusion are set to be 4.4 (5.9) observed (expected) times the value predicted by the Standard Model. Such limits represent a significant improvement in sensitivity over the early Run 2 $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ results, achieving a 30 (40) % additional gain in sensitivity beyond that predicted from a pure increase in dataset size. These limits are competitive with other leading ATLAS full Run 2 searches. Cross section

limits are additionally set for a range of values of the Higgs self coupling, parametrized via its ratio to the value predicted by the Standard Model, $\kappa_\lambda = \lambda_{HHH}/\lambda_{HHH}^{SM}$. This is restricted to have values $-4.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 14.4$ observed ($-3.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 10.9$ expected). An excess of data over background is seen for values of $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$, with maximum local significance of 3.8σ at $\kappa_\lambda = 6$. Such an excess is demonstrated to be due to low mass, where the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel has limited sensitivity, and is not seen in more sensitive channels in this region. Results on the development of two methods for the improvement of hadronic shower modeling in ATLAS fast calorimeter simulation are also presented.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
List of Figures	iv
Preface	xxi
Chapter 1: The Standard Model of Particle Physics	1
1.1 Introduction: Particles and Fields	1
1.2 Quantum Electrodynamics	4
1.3 An Aside on Group Theory	9
1.4 Quantum Chromodynamics	11
1.5 The Weak Interaction	14
1.6 The Higgs Potential and the SM	20
1.7 The Standard Model: A Summary	26
1.8 Experimental Review and Outlook	27
Chapter 2: Di-Higgs Phenomenology and Physics Beyond the Standard Model . .	31
2.1 Intro to Di-Higgs	31
2.2 Resonant HH Searches	32
2.3 Non-resonant HH Searches	34
Chapter 3: Experimental Apparatus	38
3.1 The Large Hadron Collider	38
3.2 The ATLAS Experiment	41
Chapter 4: Simulation	51
4.1 Event Generation	51
4.2 Detector Simulation	54
4.3 Correlated Fluctuations in FastCaloSim	56

4.4 Outlook	65
Chapter 5: Reconstruction	66
5.1 Jets	66
5.2 Flavor Tagging	68
Chapter 6: Setting up the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ Analysis	78
6.1 Data and Monte Carlo Simulation	80
6.2 Triggers	82
Chapter 7: Analysis Selection	86
7.1 Analysis Selection	86
7.2 Background Reduction and Top Veto	94
7.3 Kinematic Region Definition	97
7.4 Discriminating Variable	101
Chapter 8: Background Estimation	104
8.1 The Two Tag Region	105
8.2 Kinematic Reweighting	105
Chapter 9: Uncertainties and Validation	138
9.1 Statistical Uncertainties and Bootstrapping	138
9.2 Background Shape Uncertainties	143
9.3 Signal Uncertainties	146
9.4 Background Validation	148
Chapter 10: Results	151
10.1 m_{HH} Distributions	151
10.2 Statistical Analysis	163
10.3 Results	167
Chapter 11: Comparisons with Other Channels	175
Chapter 12: Conclusions	178
Appendix A: Overview of Other $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ Channels	196

Appendix B: Future Ideas for $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$	200
B.1 pairAGraph: A New Method for Jet Pairing	200
B.2 Background Estimation with Mass Plane Interpolation	205
Appendix C: Kinematic Reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region	220

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure Number	Page
1.1 Diagram of the elementary particles described by the Standard Model [6].	3
2.1 Representative diagrams for the gluon-gluon fusion production of spin-0 (X) and spin-2 (G_{KK}^*) resonances which decay to two Standard Model Higgs bosons. The spin-0 resonance considered for this thesis is a generic narrow width resonance which may be interpreted in the context of two Higgs doublet models [23], whereas the spin-2 resonance is considered as a Kaluza-Klein graviton within the bulk Randall-Sundrum (RS) model [24, 25].	32
2.2 Dominant contributing diagrams for non-resonant gluon-gluon fusion production of HH . κ_λ and κ_t represent ratios of the Higgs self-coupling and coupling to top quarks respectively, relative to the values predicted by the Standard Model.	33
2.3 Illustration of dominant HH branching ratios. $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ is the most common decay mode, representing 34 % of all HH events produced at the LHC.	34
2.4 Monte Carlo generator level m_{HH} distributions for various values of κ_λ , demonstrating the impact of the interference between the two diagrams of Figure 2.2 on the resulting m_{HH} distribution. For $\kappa_\lambda = 0$ there is no triangle diagram contribution, demonstrating the shape of the box diagram contribution, whereas for $\kappa_\lambda = 10$, the triangle diagram dominates, with a strong low mass peak. The interplay between the two is quite evident for other values, resulting in, e.g., the double peaked structure present for $\kappa_\lambda = 2$ (near maximal destructive interference) and $\kappa_\lambda = -5$. At $\kappa_\lambda = 5$, the interference leads to a deficit at high m_{HH} , resulting in a narrower distribution (and thus a more pronounced low mass peak) than the $\kappa_\lambda = 10$ case. [26]	36
3.1 Diagram of the ATLAS detector [48]	41
3.2 Cross section of the ATLAS detector showing how particles interact with various detector components [50]	43
3.3 2D projections of the ATLAS coordinate system	44

3.4	Illustration of electromagnetic showering. Repeated bremsstrahlung and electron-positron pair production result in a shower structure in which the number of particles approximately doubles every radiation length, X_0 . Figure taken from [8].	48
4.1	Schematic diagram of the Monte Carlo simulation of a hadron-hadron collision. The incoming hadrons are the green blobs with the arrows on the left and right, with the red blob in the center representing the hard scatter event, and the purple representing a secondary hard scatter. Radiation from both incoming and outgoing particles is shown, and the light green blobs represent hadronization, with the outermost dark green circles corresponding to the final state hadrons. Yellow lines are radiated photons. [65]	53
4.2	The projected ATLAS computational requirements for Run 3 and the HL-LHC relative to the projected computing budget. Aggressive R&D is required to keep resources within budget [68]. y -axis units are MHS06 · years, where HS06 is a high energy physics specific CPU performance benchmark [69].	55
4.3	Example average lateral shower shape for a 265 GeV photon in the range $0.55 < \eta < 0.60$ in the second layer of the EM barrel. The binning shown here is in polar $\alpha - R$ coordinates in a local plane tangential to the surface of the calorimeter system. Such a histogram is used as a probability distribution, from which a finite number of “hits” are drawn [71].	57
4.4	Energy and variable weta2, defined as the energy weighted lateral width of a shower in the second electromagnetic calorimeter layer, for 16 GeV photons with full simulation (G4) and FastCaloSimV2 (FCSV2) [71].	58
4.5	Example of photon and pion average shapes in 5×5 calorimeter cells. The left column shows the average shape over a sample of 10000 events, while the right column shows the energy ratio, in each cell, of single GEANT4 events with respect to this average. The photon ratios are all close to 1, while the pion ratios show significant deviation from the average.	59
4.6	Distribution of the ratio of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, with GEANT4 events in blue and Gaussian model events in orange, for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2. Moving top to bottom corresponds to increasing α , left to right corresponds to increasing R , with core voxels numbered 1, 10, 19, Agreement is quite good across all voxels. Results are similar for the VAE method.	61

4.7	Correlation coefficient of ratios of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, examined between the core bin from $\alpha = 0$ to $2\pi/8$ and each of the other voxels. The periodic structure represents the binning in α , and the increasing numbers in each of these periods correspond to increasing R , where the eight points with correlation coefficient 1 are the eight core bins. Both the Gaussian and VAE generated toy events are able to reproduce the major correlation structures for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2.	62
4.8	Comparison of the RMS fluctuations about the average shape with the Gaussian fluctuation model (red), the VAE fluctuation model (green), and without correlated fluctuations (blue) for a range of pion energies, η points, and layers.	63
4.9	Comparison of the Gaussian fluctuation model to the default FCSV2 version and to G4 simulation, using pions of 65 GeV energy and $0.2 < \eta < 0.25$. Variables shown relate to calorimeter clusters, three-dimensional spatial groupings of cells [76] which provide powerful insight on the structure of energy deposits in the calorimeter. Variables considered include number and energy of clusters, the 2nd moment in lambda, ($< \lambda^2 >$), which describes the square of the longitudinal extension of a cluster, where λ is the distance of a cell from the shower center along the shower axis, and a cluster moment is defined as $< x^n > = \frac{\sum E_i x_i^n}{\sum E_i}$, and the distance ΔR , between the cluster and the true pion. With the correlated fluctuations, variables demonstrate improved modeling relative to default FastCaloSimV2.	64
5.1	Illustration of an interaction producing two light jets and one b -jet in the transverse plane. While the light jets decay “promptly”, coinciding with the primary vertex of the proton-proton interaction, the longer lifetime of B hadrons leads to a secondary decay vertex, displaced from the primary vertex by length L_{xy} . This is typically a few mm, and therefore is not directly visible in the detector, but leads to a large transverse impact parameter, d_0 , for the resulting tracks. [85]	71
5.2	Performance of the various low and high level flavor tagging algorithms in $t\bar{t}$ simulation, demonstrating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light and c -jet rejection. The high level taggers demonstrate significantly better performance than any of the individual low level taggers, with DL1 offering slight improvements over MV2 due to the inclusion of additional input variables.	75

5.3	Performance of the MV2, DL1, and DL1r algorithms in $t\bar{t}$ simulation, demonstrating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light and c -jet rejection. f_c controls the importance of c -jet rejection in the discriminating variable, and values shown have been optimized separately for each DL1 configuration. DL1r demonstrates a significant improvement in both light and c jet rejection over MV2 and DL1. [90]	76
6.1	Example distributions in invariant mass of the reconstructed di-Higgs system for a variety of spin-0 resonances ($m(X)$) compared to the Standard Model non-resonant signal (SM HH). Both are presented in their respective signal regions, after all corresponding analysis selections. The resonant signals are sharply peaked at values near their respective resonance masses, whereas the non-resonant signal is much more broad. The different character of these different signals informs the analysis design.	85
7.1	Comparison of m_{H1} vs m_{H2} planes for the full Run 2 $2b$ dataset with different pairings, where m_{H1} and m_{H2} are the invariant masses of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates. As evidenced, this choice significantly impacts where events fall in this plane, and therefore which events fall into the various kinematic regions defined in this plane (see Section 7.3). The signal regions for the resonant/early Run 2 analysis are shown for reference for the BDT and D_{HH} pairings, while the the min ΔR signal region shifted is shifted slightly up and to the right to match the non-resonant selection. Note that the band structure around 80 GeV in both m_{H1} and m_{H2} is introduced by the top veto described in Section 7.2.	92
7.2	Comparison of signal distributions in the respective signal regions for the min ΔR and D_{HH} pairing for various values of the Higgs trilinear coupling. The distributions are quite similar at the Standard Model point, but for other variations, min ΔR does not pick up the low mass features.	93
7.3	Resonant search: Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the resonant analysis, with representative scalar signals shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events, and the value of the cut is chosen to retain analysis sensitivity, particularly for low mass.	95

7.4	Non-resonant search: Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the non-resonant analysis, with the Standard Model signal shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events. While this plot may seem to motivate a more aggressive cut on X_{Wt} , increasing the value of the cut was found to reduce analysis sensitivity. . . .	96
7.5	Regions used for the resonant search, shown on the $2b$ data mass plane. The outermost region (the “control region”) is used for derivation of the nominal background estimate. The innermost region is the signal region, where the signal extraction fit is performed. The region in between (the “validation region”) is used for the assessment of an uncertainty.	98
7.6	Regions used for the non-resonant search. The “top” and “bottom” quadrants together comprise the control region, in which the nominal background estimate is derived. The “left” and “right” quadrants together comprise the validation region, which is used to assess an uncertainty. The signal region, in the center, is where the signal extraction fit is performed.	100
7.7	Acceptance times efficiency for the respective analysis selections for spin-0, spin-2, and $4b$ Standard Model signals. The Standard Model acceptance times efficiency is roughly consistent with the resonant signals in the mass range near the Standard Model peak (near 400 to 600 GeV). Acceptance times efficiency at low mass is mostly limited by the trigger, whereas for higher masses, the jets start to merge together, and the efficiency for reconstructing four b -tagged jets decreases. The spin-2 signal has a higher low mass acceptance times efficiency than spin-0 due to the broader signal distributions of this variable, which leads to a distortion of this distribution towards higher mass values. The increase in acceptance times efficiency at very low mass reflects the impact of the kinematic threshold of 250 GeV.	102
7.8	Impact of the m_{HH} correction on a range of spin-0 resonant signals. The corrected m_{HH} distributions (solid lines) are much sharper and more centered on the corresponding resonance masses than the uncorrected m_{HH} distributions (dashed).	103
8.1	Resonant Search: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	111
8.2	Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	112

8.3	Resonant Search: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	113
8.4	Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	114
8.5	Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	115
8.6	Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	116
8.7	Resonant Search: Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	117
8.8	Resonant Search: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and sub-leading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	118
8.9	Resonant Search: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied	119
8.10	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	120
8.11	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	121
8.12	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	122
8.13	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	123
8.14	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	124

8.15	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	125
8.16	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	126
8.17	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	127
8.18	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	128
8.19	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	129
8.20	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	130
8.21	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	131
8.22	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	132
8.23	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	133
8.24	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	134
8.25	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	135

8.26	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	136
8.27	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	137
9.1	Illustration of the approximate bootstrap band procedure, shown as a ratio to the nominal estimate for the 2017 non-resonant background estimate. Each grey line is from the m_{HH} prediction for a single bootstrap training. Figure 9.1(a) shows the variation histograms constructed from median weight $\pm$ the IQR of the replica weights. It can be seen that this captures the rough shape of the bootstrap envelope, but is not good estimate for the overall magnitude of the variation. Figure 9.1(b) demonstrates the applied normalization correction, and Figure 9.1(c) shows the final band (normalized Figure 9.1(a) + Figure 9.1(b)). Comparing this with the IQR variation for the prediction from each bootstrap in each bin in Figure 9.1(d), the approximate envelope describes a very similar variation.	142
9.2	Resonant Search: Example of CR vs VR variation in each H_T region for 2018. The variation nicely factorizes into low and high mass components. . .	144
9.3	Non-resonant Search (4b): Example of CR vs VR variation in each signal region quadrant for 2018. Significantly different behavior is seen between quadrants, with the largest variation in quadrant 1 and the smallest in quadrant 4.	145
9.4	Resonant Search: Performance of the background estimation method in the resonant analysis reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ kinematic signal region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures entirely within the reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region, and the resulting model, including uncertainties, is compared with 4b data in the corresponding signal region. Good agreement is shown. The the quoted p -value uses the χ^2 test statistic, and demonstrates no evidence that the data differs from the assessed background.	149
9.5	Non-resonant Search: Performance of the background estimation method in the $3b + 1$ fail validation region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures but with a reweighting from $2b$ to $3b + 1$ fail events. Generally good agreement is seen, though there is some deviation at very low masses in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ low X_{HH} category.	150

10.1	Resonant Search: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on corrected m_{HH} , with Figure 10.1(a) showing $2b$ events normalized to the total $4b$ yield and Figure 10.1(b) applying the reweighting procedure. Agreement is much improved with the reweighting. Note that overall reweighted $2b$ yield agrees with $4b$ yield in the control region by construction.	153
10.2	Resonant Search: Demonstration of the performance of the control region derived reweighting in the validation region on corrected m_{HH} . Agreement is generally good for this extrapolated estimate. Note that the uncertainty band includes the extrapolation systematic, which is defined by a reweighting trained in the validation region.	154
10.3	Resonant Search: Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit. The left plot overlays a variety of representative spin-0 signals, while the right does the same for spin-2. The background and data are identical between the two. The closure is generally quite good, though there is an evident deficit in the background estimate relative to the data for higher values of corrected m_{HH} . Note that the spin-2 signals are significantly wider than the spin-0 signals. Near the kinematic threshold of 250 GeV, this leads to, e.g., the double peaked structure of the 280 GeV signal, which is understood to be an effect of the limited kinematic phase space in this region.	155
10.4	Non-resonant Search (4b): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with some residual mis-modeling in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region near 600 GeV.	157
10.5	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with similar conclusions as for the $4b$ region.	158
10.6	Non-resonant Search (4b): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. The low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region is consistently overestimated, but, systematic uncertainties are defined via the difference between VR and CR estimates.	159
10.7	Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. A deficit is present near 600 GeV, but agreement is fairly good otherwise.	160

10.8 Non-resonant Search (4b): Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the $4b$ channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Modeling is generally quite good near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements are seen at very low and high masses. A deficit is present in low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ bins near 600 GeV.	161
10.9 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the $3b1l$ channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Conclusions are very similar to the $4b$ channels, with generally good modeling near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements at very low and high masses. A deficit is present near 600 GeV.	162
10.10 Pulls and impacts of the background extrapolation uncertainties for the resonant analysis, ranked by magnitude of post-fit impact and shown for a variety of representative scalar signals. Significant pulls of the H_T systematics are present, corresponding to the expectation that the validation region is more similar to the signal region than the control region is. Nuisance parameter pulls are generally consistent across signal mass, but impacts vary, with low H_T having the largest impact for low mass, and high H_T for high mass. 400 GeV is near the split between the two regimes.	165
10.11 Background control/validation region systematic nuisance parameter pulls for the Standard Model non-resonant signal, shown for $4b$ (left) and $3b1l$ (right) separately, though the two channels are fit together. There are four signal region quadrant nuisance parameters for each category in the 2×2 scheme in $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ and X_{HH} , and each year is treated as a separate channel in the fit. Pulls are generally consistent with zero, though there are some trends: quadrant 1 $4b$ tends to be pulled negatively, 2016 tends to be pulled positively. Note that $4b$ dominates the sensitivity relative to $3b1l$	166

- 10.12 Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on the cross-section times branching ratio of resonant production for spin-0 ($X \rightarrow HH$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$). The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are shown in the colored bands. The resolved channel expected limit is shown in dashed pink and covers the range from 251 and 1500 GeV. It is combined with the boosted channel (dashed blue) between 900 and 1500 GeV. The theoretical prediction for the bulk RS model with $k/\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ [25] (solid red line) is shown, with the decrease below 350 GeV due to a sharp reduction in the $G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$ branching ratio. The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582. Note that all results use the asymptotic approximation, though the validity of this approximation for the boosted results above 3 TeV is being evaluated. 171
- 10.13 Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits or spin-0 (Scalar $\rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK} \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) from the early Run 2 4b search [2], to be compared with the results in Figure 10.12. Note that the y -axis scaling differs from Figure 10.12 by a factor of the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ branching ratio. An excess is present at 280 GeV, with local (global) significance 3.6(2.3) σ . The spin-2 bulk Randall-Sundrum model with $k/\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ is excluded for graviton masses between 313 and 1362 GeV. . . . 172
- 10.14 Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on the cross-section times branching ratio of non-resonant production for a range of values of the Higgs self-coupling, with the Standard Model value ($\kappa_\lambda = 1$) illustrated with a star. The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are shown in the colored bands. The cross section limit for HH production is set at 140 fb (180 fb) observed (expected), corresponding to an observed (expected) limit of 4.4 (5.9) times the Standard Model prediction. κ_λ is constrained to be within the range $-4.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 14.4$ observed ($-3.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 10.9$ expected). The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582. The excess present for $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$ is thought to be due to a low mass background mis-modeling, present due to the optimization of this analysis for the Standard Model point, and is not present in more sensitive channels in this same region (e.g. $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ [98]). 173
- 10.15 Limits including only events above 381 GeV in m_{HH} , to be compared with the limits in Figure 10.14. Such a cut is accomplished by dropping m_{HH} bins below 381 GeV, with the value of 381 GeV determined by the optimized variable width binning. All other aspects of the procedure and inputs are kept the same as in Figure 10.14. The excess at and above $\kappa_\lambda = 5$ is significantly reduced, demonstrating that such an excess is driven by low mass. Notably, there is minimal impact on the expected sensitivity with this m_{HH} cut. . . 174

11.1	Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for spin-0 resonances. The $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel (blue) is compared with full Run 2 results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ (both resolved and boosted) and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, as well as the combined early Run 2 results. The $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel has leading sensitivity above a mass of around 700 GeV, and is competitive with other channels across much of the mass range, demonstrating a strong contribution to the ATLAS HH experimental results. [119]	176
11.2	Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for Standard Model HH production. The preliminary results presented in this thesis are not yet included in these results. However, the results presented in Table 10.3 are quite competitive with the results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, two of the ATLAS channels with leading sensitivity in the search for HH. Note that these results include signals produced via both gluon-gluon fusion (ggF) and vector boson fusion (VBF), and are normalized as such, while the results of this thesis only include (and are normalized to) ggF production [119]	177
A.1	Representative Feynman diagrams for the VBF channel. While this channel may be used for both resonant and non-resonant searches [22], this thesis work was developed concurrently with a focused non-resonant search. In addition to variations of the trilinear coupling, κ_λ , VBF is sensitive to various Higgs couplings to vector bosons, namely κ_V and κ_{2V} , attached to VVH and $VVHH$ vertices respectively.	199
B.1	Comparison of distributions of HH p_T in the 2018 resonant validation region before reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). HH p_T is a variable with a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$, but the relative shapes seem to be more similar for pairAGraph than for BDT paring, corresponding to the hypothesis that pairAGraph chooses more “ $4b$ -like” jets.	205
B.2	Comparison of distributions of HH p_T in the 2018 resonant validation region after reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). HH p_T is a variable with a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$, and the reweighted agreement in the high p_T tail is significantly improved with pairAGraph, with a corresponding reduction in the assigned bootstrap uncertainty in that region.	206
B.3	Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H1} and m_{H2} for $2b$ signal region events compared to real $2b$ signal region events for the 2018 dataset. Good agreement is seen. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the $2b$ dataset is used for both training and this final comparison to mimic $4b$ statistics.	213

B.4	Gaussian process sampling prediction for the mass plane compared to the real $2b$ dataset for 2018. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the $2b$ dataset is used for both training and this final comparison to mimic $4b$ statistics. Good agreement is seen.	215
B.5	Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H1} and m_{H2} for $4b$ signal region events compared to both control and validation reweighting predictions. While there are some differences, the estimates are compatible.	216
B.6	Gaussian process sampling prediction for the $4b$ mass plane compared to the reweighted $2b$ estimate in the signal region. Both estimates are compatible. .	217
B.7	Comparison of the interpolation background estimate with real $2b$ data in the signal region. Only 1 % of $2b$ data is used in order to mimic $4b$ statistics, and results are presented here summed across years. The “Flow Only” prediction uses samples of actual $2b$ signal region data for the input values of m_{H1} and m_{H2} , whereas the “Flow + GP” prediction uses samples following the Gaussian process procedure above, more closely mimicking a the full background estimation procedure. The two predictions are quite comparable, demonstrating the closure of the Gaussian process estimate, and the predicted m_{HH} shape agrees well with $2b$ data. Only $2b$ statistical uncertainty is shown.	218
B.8	Comparison of the interpolation background estimate in the $4b$ signal region with the control region derived reweighted $2b$ estimate, shown for each year individually. Results are generally similar, within around 10 %.	219
C.1	Resonant Search: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	221
C.2	Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	222
C.3	Resonant Search: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	223
C.4	Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	224
C.5	Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	225

C.6	Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	226
C.7	Resonant Search: Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	227
C.8	Resonant Search: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	228
C.9	Resonant Search: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied	229
C.10	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	230
C.11	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	231
C.12	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	232
C.13	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	233
C.14	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	234
C.15	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	235
C.16	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	236
C.17	Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	237

C.18 Non-resonant Search (4b) : Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	238
C.19 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	239
C.20 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	240
C.21 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	241
C.22 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	242
C.23 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	243
C.24 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	244
C.25 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	245
C.26 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	246
C.27 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	247

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Five years is both a short time and a long time – many things have happened and many have stayed the same. I certainly know much more physics than I did at the outset, but also have learned to ski, discovered a love for hiking, eaten large amounts of cheese, and survived a pandemic by making sourdough and cinnamon rolls. Of course, the most important part of any journey is the friends we made along the way – the utmost gratitude and appreciation goes to the Seattle friends, for the many nights both hard at work and at College Inn, to the CERN friends, for adventures around Europe and days by the lake, the Chicago friends, for my position as European correspondent for the Dum Dum Donut Intellectuals, and the friends from home, for New Years Eve parties and visits in between. Though we’re scattered across the world, I hope to see you all soon.

A thank you, of course, to my family for their continued and constant support, for trying their best to learn physics along with me, and going along on this Ph.D. adventure every step of the way.

I am only writing this thesis because of the incredible support of my research group, so a massive thank you to Anna, for your guidance and compassion, for advising me as both a physicist and a person, and for always being available, and Jana, for shaping who I am as a physicist and providing feedback on almost literally every talk that I’ve written – I knew I was getting ready to graduate when you started running out of comments.

A special set of thank yous to the SLAC group, namely Nicole, Michael, and Rafael, for being an excellent set of collaborators with an excellent set of ideas to push the analysis forward, many of which are in this thesis, and for being my second research family.

And last but not least, a thank you to the entire $HH \rightarrow 4b$ group, of course to Max

and Rafael for their guidance and direction, Beojan for being an excellent collaborator and co-editor for the resonant search, Dale and Alex for excelling on the boosted side of things, Lucas, for great work on triggers and for diving headfirst into all of my code, the ggF push squad, for a huge amount of hard work on the non-resonant, and of course the $HH \rightarrow 4\text{beers}$ team, many of whom have already been mentioned, but who deserve an extra shout out for keeping things fun even during stressful times.

The physics is done, the rest is paperwork. Let us begin.

PREFACE

This thesis focuses primarily on searches for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state. It begins with an overview of the relevant physics and experimental background for such work, structured as follows: In Chapter 1, I provide an overview of the Standard Model of particle physics, with discussion of the theoretical and experimental development of such a model. Chapter 2 dives more into the details of Higgs boson pair production, as well as the physics beyond the Standard Model relevant for this thesis. Chapter 3 then provides an introduction to the experimental apparatus used for the presented searches, with an outline of the Large Hadron Collider and the ATLAS detector. Chapter 4 details the procedure to simulate the physics processes discussed in Chapters 1 and 2, including simulation of the detector discussed Chapter 3. Finally, a review of the procedures to reconstruct objects used for physics analysis is provided in Chapter 5, with a focus on jets and flavor-tagging.

The original contributions of this thesis are discussed in a variety of places. Chapter 4 includes my work on the development of methods to improve the modeling of hadronic showers within a parametrized simulation of the ATLAS calorimeter. I entirely developed both the method and the software for the Gaussian method discussed in Chapter 4, including all of the validations presented there. The development of the Variational Autoencoder method was done in collaboration with Dalila Salamani. This work has been published in a set of proceedings [1] and implemented into ATLAS software. At the time of this writing, it is a candidate for inclusion in the Run 3 simulation infrastructure.

Chapters 6 through 10 detail searches for resonant and non-resonant pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state. I was one of the main analyzers for both of these searches, responsible for much of the development of the methods, infrastructure, and documentation.

My most major contribution was the development of the background estimation procedure and the associated uncertainties, which I spearheaded both conceptually and practically. This is quite a significant contribution for both the resonant and non-resonant, as it is the core of much of the analysis design, with the most direct impact on the final results – to paraphrase Georges Aad during the resonant review process, “This is the analysis.”

This was not my only contribution – for the resonant search, I contributed to the development of the analysis selection and codebase, performed many of the necessary cross-checks, and was the co-editor of the ATLAS internal documentation, along with Beojan Stanislaus, who developed the BDT pairing and much of the analysis software. Credit goes as well to Lucas Borgna, for much of the work behind the development of the trigger strategy.

The resonant search follows many of the procedures of the early Run 2 analysis [2], with the pairing method and background estimation method constituting the two biggest analysis-level differences from that work. The non-resonant analysis has several additional changes, which include a variety of new kinematic variable and region definitions, as well as a different pairing method than both the early Run 2 search and the resonant search. I was responsible for a large majority of the studies behind each of these decisions. I am also responsible for the development of much of the modern $4b$ software infrastructure, including, of course, the background estimation framework, a new limit setting framework, and a new centralized plotting framework, the latter of which greatly facilitates both studies and documentation for the more complicated non-resonant analysis strategy.

At the time of this writing, the preliminary resonant results have been published [3], with a paper soon to follow, pending some additional studies on the high mass (> 3 TeV) results in the boosted analysis channel ¹. The non-resonant results are more preliminary, but the analysis strategy presented in this thesis is approximately final, and the analysis is beginning

¹This thesis focuses on the resolved analysis channel, so these additional studies do not impact the final results of this thesis work. The boosted channel is included in the limits presented in Figure 10.12, but in no other plots or results. See Appendix A for a description of the boosted analysis selection.

internal ATLAS review.

While these above results are the main results of this thesis, proof-of-concept studies for two novel $4b$ analysis methods are included in Appendix B. This work, done in collaboration primarily with Nicole Hartman, was not used for the $4b$ results presented here, but I encourage the interested reader to consider these for further study in future iterations of the $4b$ analysis. I note as well that, while these methods are promising in the context of the $4b$ analysis, they are also methodologically interesting, and conceptually related results have been published concurrently with the development of the work presented in this thesis in [4] and [5].

DEDICATION

To family, both given and found

Chapter 1

THE STANDARD MODEL OF PARTICLE PHYSICS

The Standard Model of Particle Physics (SM) is a monumental historical achievement, providing a formalism with which one may describe everything from the physics of everyday experience to the physics that is studied at very high energies at the Large Hadron Collider (Chapter 3). In this chapter, we will provide a brief overview of the pieces that go into the construction of such a model. The primary focus of this thesis is searches for pair production of Higgs bosons decaying to four b -quarks. Consequently, we will pay particular attention to the relevant pieces of the Higgs Mechanism, as well as to the theory behind searches at a hadronic collider.

1.1 Introduction: Particles and Fields

What is a particle? The Standard Model describes a set of fundamental, point-like, objects shown in Figure 1.1. These objects have distinguishing characteristics (e.g., mass and spin). These objects interact in very specific ways. The set of objects and their interactions result in a set of observable effects, and these effects are the basis of a field of experimental physics.

The effects of these objects and their interactions are familiar as fundamental forces: electromagnetism (photons, electrons), the strong interaction (quarks, gluons), the weak interaction (neutrinos, W and Z bosons). Gravity is not described in this model, as the weakest, with effects most relevant on much larger distance scales than the rest. However, the description of these other three is powerful – verifying and searching for cracks in this description is a large effort, and the topic of this thesis.

The formalism for describing these particles and their interactions is that of quantum field theory. Classical field theory is most familiar in the context of, e.g., electromagnetism – an

electric field exists in some region of space, and a charged point-particle experiences a force characterized by the charge of the point-particle and the magnitude of the field at the location of the point-particle in spacetime. The same language translates to quantum field theory. Here, particles are described in terms of quantum fields in some region of spacetime. These fields have associated charges which describe the forces they experience when interacting with other quantum fields. Most familiar is electric charge – however this applies to e.g., the strong interaction as well, where quantum fields have an associated *color charge* describing behavior under the strong force.

Particles are observed to behave in different ways under different forces. These behaviors respect certain *symmetries*, which are most naturally described in the language of group theory. The respective fields, charges, and generators of these symmetry groups are the basic pieces of the SM Lagrangian, which describes the full dynamics of the theory. In the following, we will build up the basic components of this Lagrangian. The treatment presented here relies heavily on Jackson’s Classical Electrodynamics [7] for the build-up, and Thomson’s Modern Particle Physics [8] for the rest, with reference to Srednicki’s Quantum Field Theory [9], and some personal biases and interjections.

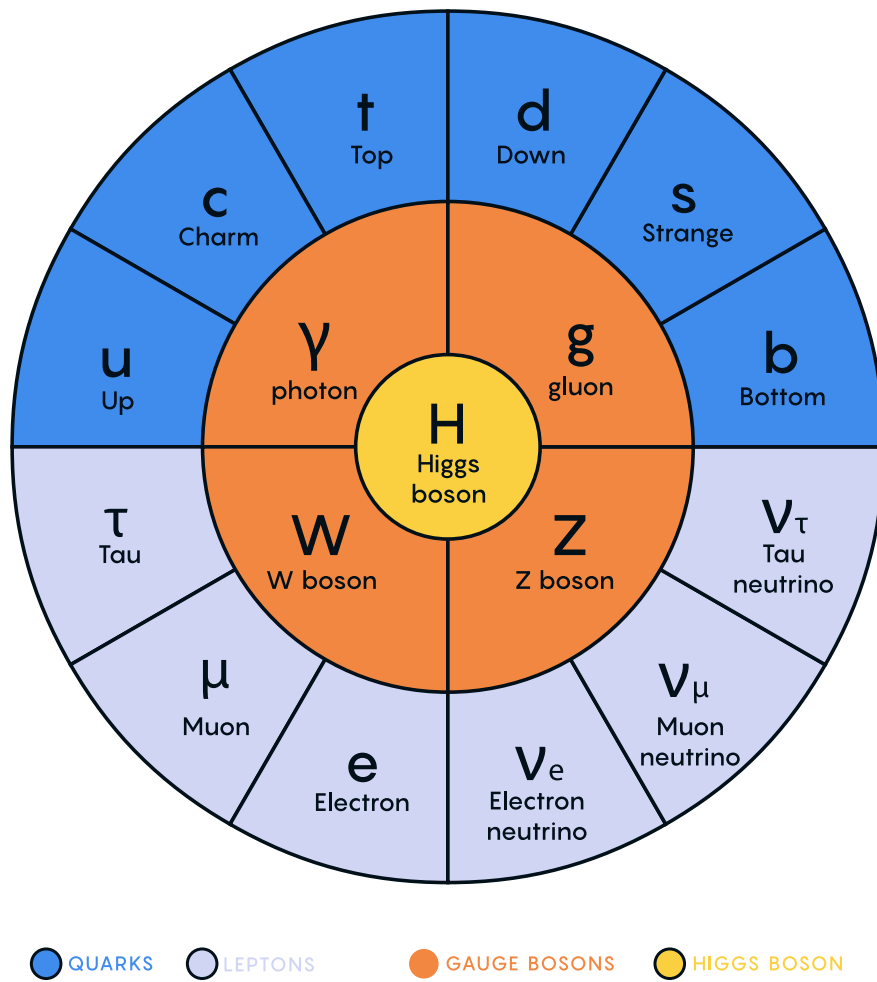


Figure 1.1: Diagram of the elementary particles described by the Standard Model [6].

1.2 Quantum Electrodynamics

Classical electrodynamics is familiar to the general physics audience: electric ($\vec{E}$) and magnetic ($\vec{B}$) fields are used to describe behavior of particles with charge q moving with velocity $\vec{v}$, with forces described as $\vec{F} = q\vec{E} + q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$. Hints at some more fundamental properties of electric and magnetic fields come via a simple thought experiment: in a frame of reference moving along with the particle at velocity $\vec{v}$, the particle would appear to be standing still, and therefore have no magnetic force exerted. Therefore a *relativistic* formulation of the theory is required. This is most easily accomplished with a repackaging: the fundamental objects are no longer classical fields but the electric and magnetic *potentials*: ϕ and $\vec{A}$ respectively, with

$$\vec{E} = -\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t} \quad (1.1)$$

$$\vec{B} = \nabla \times \vec{A} \quad (1.2)$$

It is then natural to fully repackage into a relativistic *four-vector*: $A^\mu = (\phi, \vec{A})$. Considering $\partial^\mu = (\frac{\partial}{\partial t}, \nabla)$, the x components of these above two equations become:

$$E_x = -\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial A_x}{\partial t} = -(\partial^0 A^1 - \partial^1 A^0) \quad (1.3)$$

$$B_x = \frac{\partial A_z}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial A_y}{\partial z} = -(\partial^2 A^3 - \partial^3 A^2) \quad (1.4)$$

where we have used the sign convention $(+, -, -, -)$, such that $\partial^\mu = (\frac{\partial}{\partial x_0}, -\nabla)$.

This is naturally suggestive of a second rank, antisymmetric tensor to describe both the electric and magnetic fields (the *field strength tensor*), defined as:

$$F^{\alpha\beta} = \partial^\alpha A^\beta - \partial^\beta A^\alpha \quad (1.5)$$

Defining a four-current as $J_\mu = (q, \vec{J})$, with q standard electric charge, $\vec{J}$ standard electric current, conservation of charge may be expressed via the continuity equation

$$\partial_\mu J^\mu = 0 \quad (1.6)$$

and all of classical electromagnetism may be packaged into the Lagrangian density:

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} - J^\mu A_\mu. \quad (1.7)$$

This gets us partway to our goal, but is entirely classical - the description is of classical fields and point charges, not of quantum fields and particles. To reframe this, let us go back to the zoomed out view of the particles of the Standard Model. Two of the most familiar objects associated with electromagnetism are electrons: spin-1/2 particles with charge e , mass m , and photons: massless spin-1 particles which are the "pieces" of electromagnetic radiation.

We know that electrons experience electromagnetic interactions with other objects. Given this, and the fact that such interactions must be transmitted *somehow* between e.g. two electrons, it seems natural that these interactions are facilitated by electromagnetic radiation. More specifically, we may think of photons as *mediators* of the electromagnetic force. It follows, then, that a description of electromagnetism on the level of particles must involve a description of both the "source" particles (e.g. electrons), the mediators (photons), and their interactions. Further, this description must be (1) relativistic and (2) consistent with the classically derived dynamics described above.

The beginnings of a relativistic description of spin-1/2 particles is due to Paul Dirac, with the famous Dirac equation:

$$(i\gamma^\mu\partial_\mu - m)\psi = 0 \quad (1.8)$$

where ∂_μ is as defined above, ψ is a Dirac *spinor*, i.e. a four-component wavefunction, m is the mass of the particle, and γ^μ are the Dirac gamma matrices, which define the algebraic structure of the theory. For the following, we also define a conjugate spinor,

$$\bar{\psi} = \psi^\dagger\gamma^0 \quad (1.9)$$

which satisfies the conjugate Dirac equation

$$\bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu\partial_\mu - m) = 0 \quad (1.10)$$

where the derivative acts to the left.

The Dirac equation is the dynamical equation for spin-1/2, but we'd like to express these dynamics via a Lagrangian density. Further, to have a relativistic description, we'd like to

have this density be Lorentz invariant. These constraints lead to a Lagrangian of the form

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu - m)\psi \quad (1.11)$$

where the Euler-Lagrange equation exactly recovers the Dirac equation.

The question now becomes how to marry the two Lagrangian descriptions that we have developed. Returning for a moment to classical electrodynamics, we know that the Hamiltonian for a charged particle in an electromagnetic field is described by

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}(\vec{p} - q\vec{A})^2 + q\phi. \quad (1.12)$$

Comparing this to the Hamiltonian for a free particle, we see that the modifications required are $\vec{p} \rightarrow \vec{p} - q\vec{A}$ and $E \rightarrow E - q\phi$. Using the canonical quantization trick of identifying $\vec{p}$ with operator $-i\nabla$ and E with operator $i\frac{\partial}{\partial t}$, this identification becomes

$$i\partial_\mu \rightarrow i\partial_\mu - qA_\mu \quad (1.13)$$

Allowing for the naive substitution in the Dirac Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iqA_\mu) - m)\psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.14)$$

where the source term may be interpreted as coming from the Dirac fields themselves, namely, $-q\bar{\psi}\gamma^\mu\psi A_\mu$.

Setting $q = e$ here (as appropriate for the case of an electron), and defining $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ieA_\mu$, this may then be written in the form

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu D_\mu - m)\psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.15)$$

which is exactly the quantum electrodynamics Lagrangian.

We have swept a few things under the rug here, however. Recall that the general form of a Lagrangian is conventionally $\mathcal{L} = T - V$, where T is the kinetic term, and thus ought to contain a derivative with respect to time (c.f. the standard $\frac{1}{2}m\frac{\partial x}{\partial t}$ familiar from basic kinematics). More particularly, given the definition of conjugate momentum as $\partial\mathcal{L}/\partial\dot{q}$ for

$\mathcal{L}(q, \dot{q}, t)$ and $\dot{q} = \frac{\partial q}{\partial t}$, any field q which has no time derivative in the Lagrangian has 0 conjugate momentum, and thus no dynamics.

Looking at this final form, there is an easily identifiable kinetic term for the spinor fields (just applying the D_μ operator). However trying to identify something similar for the A fields, one comes up short – the antisymmetric nature of $F^{\mu\nu}$ term means that there is no time derivative applied to A^0 .

What does this mean? A^μ is a four component object, but it would appear that only three of the components have dynamics: we have too many degrees of freedom in the theory. This is the principle behind *gauge symmetry* – an extra constraint on A^μ (a *gauge condition*) must be defined such that a unique A^μ defines the theory and satisfies the condition. However, we are free to choose this extra condition – the physics content of the theory should be independent of this choice (that is, it should be *gauge invariant*).

To ground this a bit, let us return to basic electric and magnetic fields. These are physical quantities that can be measured, and are defined in terms of potentials as

$$\vec{E} = -\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t} \quad (1.16)$$

$$\vec{B} = \nabla \times \vec{A}. \quad (1.17)$$

It is easy to show, for any scalar function λ , that $\nabla \times \nabla\lambda = 0$. This implies that the physical $\vec{B}$ field is invariant under the transformation $\vec{A} \rightarrow \vec{A} + \nabla\lambda$ for any scalar function λ .

Under the same transformation of $\vec{A}$, the electric field $\vec{E}$ becomes $-\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial\nabla\lambda}{\partial t} = -\nabla(\phi + \frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}) - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t}$, such that, for the $\vec{E}$ field to be unchanged, we must additionally apply the transformation $\phi \rightarrow \phi - \frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}$.

This set of transformations to the potentials that leave the physical degrees of freedom invariant is expressed in our four vector notation naturally as

$$A_\mu \rightarrow A_\mu - \partial_\mu\lambda \quad (1.18)$$

where $A_\mu = (\phi, -\vec{A})$ with our sign convention. It should be noted that this function λ is an arbitrary function of *local* spacetime, and thus expresses invariance of the physics content

under a local transformation.

Let us return to the Lagrangian for QED. In particular, focusing on the free Dirac piece

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu\partial_\mu - m)\psi \quad (1.19)$$

we note that if we apply a local transformation of the form $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$ (and correspondingly $\bar{\psi} \rightarrow \bar{\psi}e^{-iq\lambda(x)}$, by definition), the Lagrangian becomes

$$\bar{\psi}e^{-iq\lambda(x)}(i\gamma^\mu\partial_\mu - m)e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi = \bar{\psi}e^{-iq\lambda(x)}(i\gamma^\mu\partial_\mu)e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi - m\bar{\psi}\psi. \quad (1.20)$$

As $\partial_\mu(e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi) = iq\partial_\mu\lambda(x)\psi + e^{iq\lambda(x)}\partial_\mu\psi$, this becomes

$$\bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iq\partial_\mu\lambda(x)) - m)\psi. \quad (1.21)$$

Thus, the free Dirac Lagrangian on its own is not invariant under this transformation. We may note, however, that on interaction with an electromagnetic field, as described above, this transformed Lagrangian may be packaged as:

$$\bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iq\partial_\mu\lambda(x) + iqA_\mu) - m)\psi = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iq(A_\mu + \partial_\mu\lambda(x))) - m)\psi. \quad (1.22)$$

since by the arguments above, the physics content of the Lagrangian is invariant under the transformation $A_\mu \rightarrow A_\mu - \partial_\mu\lambda$, we may directly make this transformation, and remove this extra $\partial_\mu\lambda(x)$ term. It is straightforward to verify that the $\frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}$ term is invariant under this same transformation of A_μ , so we may say that the QED Lagrangian is invariant under local transformations of the form $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$.

These arguments illuminate some important concepts which will serve us well going forward. First, while we have remained grounded in the “familiar” physics of electromagnetism for the above, arguments of the “top down” variety would lead us to the exact same conclusions. That is, suppose we wanted to construct a theory of spin-1/2 particles that was invariant under local transformations of the form $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$. More broadly, we could say that we desire this theory to be invariant under local $U(1)$ transformations, where $U(1)$ is exactly this group, under multiplication, of complex numbers with absolute value 1. By very similar

arguments as above, we would see that, to achieve invariance, this theory would necessitate an additional degree of freedom, A_μ , with the exact properties that are familiar to us from electrodynamics. These arguments based on symmetries are extremely powerful in building theories with a less familiar grounding, as we will see in the following.

Second, we defined this quantity $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ieA_\mu$ above, seemingly as a matter of notational convenience. However, from the latter set of arguments, such a packaging takes on a new power: by explicitly including this gauge field A_μ which transforms in such a way as to keep invariance under a given transformation, the invariance is immediately more manifest. That is, to pose the $U(1)$ invariance in a more zoomed out way, under the transformation $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$, while

$$\bar{\psi}\partial_\mu\psi \rightarrow \bar{\psi}(\partial_\mu + iq\partial_\mu\lambda(x))\psi \quad (1.23)$$

with the extra term that gets canceled out by the gauge transformation of A_μ ,

$$\bar{\psi}D_\mu\psi \rightarrow \bar{\psi}D_\mu\psi \quad (1.24)$$

where this transformation is already folded in. This repackaging, called a *gauge covariant derivative* is much more immediately expressive of the symmetries of the theory.

Finally, to emphasize how fundamental these gauge symmetries are to the corresponding theory, let us examine the additional term needed for $U(1)$ invariance, $q\bar{\psi}\gamma^\mu A_\mu\psi$. While a first principles examination of Feynman rules is beyond the scope of this thesis, it is powerful to note that this is expressive of a QED vertex: the $U(1)$ invariance of the theory and the interaction between photons and electrons are inextricably tied together.

1.3 An Aside on Group Theory

Quantum electrodynamics is very familiar and well covered, and provides (both historically and in this thesis) a nice bridge between “standard” physics and the language of symmetries and quantum field theory. However, now that we are acquainted with the language, we may set up to dive a bit deeper. To begin, let us look again at the $U(1)$ group that is so fundamental to QED. We have expressed this via a set of transformations on our Dirac spinor

objects, ψ , of the form $e^{iq\lambda(x)}$. Note that such transformations, though they are local (i.e. a function of spacetime) are purely *phase* transformations. Relatedly, $U(1)$ is an Abelian group, meaning that group elements commute.

To set up language to generalize beyond $U(1)$, note that we may equivalently write $U(1)$ elements as $e^{ig\vec{\alpha}(x)\cdot\vec{T}}$, $\vec{\alpha}(x)$ and $\vec{T}$ and are vectors in the space of *generators* of the group, with each $\alpha^a(x)$ an associated scalar function to generator t^a , and g is some scalar strength parameter. Of course this is a bit silly for $U(1)$, which has a single generator, and thus reduces to the transformation we discussed above. However, this becomes much more useful for groups of higher degree, with more generators and degrees of freedom.

To discuss these groups in a bit more detail, note that $U(n)$ is the unitary group of degree n , and corresponds to the group of $n \times n$ unitary matrices (that is, $U^\dagger U = U U^\dagger = 1$). Given that group elements are $n \times n$, this means that there are n^2 degrees of freedom: n^2 generators are needed to characterize the group.

For $U(1)$, this is all consistent with what we have said above – the group of 1×1 unitary matrices have a single generator, and the phases we identify above clearly satisfy unitarity. Note that these degrees of freedom for the gauge group also characterize the number of gauge bosons we need to satisfy the local symmetry: for $U(1)$, we need one gauge boson, the photon.

Of relevance for the Standard Model are also the special unitary groups $SU(n)$. These are defined similarly to the unitary groups, with the additional requirement that group elements have determinant 1. This extra constraint removes 1 degree of freedom: groups are characterized by $n^2 - 1$ generators.

In particular, we will examine the groups $SU(2)$ in the context of the weak interaction, with an associated $2^2 - 1 = 3$ gauge bosons (cf. the $W^\pm$ and Z bosons), and $SU(3)$, with an associated $3^2 - 1 = 8$ gauge bosons (cf. gluons of different flavors). Note that these groups are non-Abelian (2×2 or 3×3 matrices do not, in general, commute), leading to a variety of complications. However, both of these theories feature interactions with spin-1/2 particles, with transformations of a very similar form: $\psi \rightarrow e^{ig\vec{\alpha}(x)\cdot\vec{T}}\psi$, and the general framing of the arguments for QED will serve us well in the following.

1.4 Quantum Chromodynamics

In some sense, the simplest extension of the development of QED is quantum chromodynamics (QCD). QCD is a theory in which, once the basic dynamics are framed (a non-trivial task!) the group structure becomes apparent. The quark model, developed by Murray Gell-Mann [10] and George Zweig [11], provided the fundamental particles involved in the theory, and had great success in explaining the expanding zoo of experimentally observed hadronic states.

Some puzzles were still apparent – the Δ^{++} baryon, e.g., is composed of three up quarks, u , with aligned spins. As quarks are fermions, such a state should not be allowed by the Pauli exclusion principle. The existence of such a state in nature implies the existence of another quantum number, and a triplet of values, called *color charge* was proposed by Oscar Greenberg [12]. With these pieces in place, the structure becomes more apparent, as elucidated by Han and Nambu [13].

Let us reason our way to the symmetries using color charge. Experimentally, we know that there is this triplet of color charge values r, g, b (the “plus” values, cf. electric charge) and correspondingly anti-color charge $\bar{r}, \bar{g}, \bar{b}$ (the “minus” values). Supposing that the force behind QCD (the *strong force*) is, similar to QED, interactions between fermions mediated by gauge bosons (quarks and gluons respectively), we can start to line up the pieces.

What color charge does a gluon have? Similarly to electric charge, we may associate particles with color charge, anti-particles with anti-color charge. Notably, free particles observed experimentally are colorless (have no color charge). Thus, in order for charge to be conserved throughout such processes, this already implies that there are charged gluons. Further, examining color flow diagrams, it is apparent first that a gluon has not one but two associated color charges and second that these two must be one color charge and one anti-color charge.

Counting up the available types of gluons, then, we come up with nine. Six of mixed color type: $r\bar{b}, r\bar{g}, b\bar{r}, b\bar{g}, g\bar{b}$, and $g\bar{r}$, and three of same color type: $r\bar{r}, g\bar{g}$, and $b\bar{b}$. In practice, however, these latter three are a bit redundant: all express a colorless gluon, which, if we

could observe this as a free particle, would be indistinguishable from each other. The *color singlet* state is then a mix of these, $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(r\bar{r} + g\bar{g} + b\bar{b})$, leaving two unclaimed degrees of freedom, which may be satisfied by the linearly independent combinations $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(r\bar{r} - g\bar{g})$ and $\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}(r\bar{r} + g\bar{g} - 2b\bar{b})$.

We thus have an octet of color states plus a colorless singlet state. If this colorless singlet state existed, however, we would be able to observe it, not only via interactions with quarks, but as a free particle. Since do not observe this in nature, this restricts us to 8 gluons. The simplest group with a corresponding 8 generators is $SU(3)$. Under the assumption that $SU(3)$ is the local gauge symmetry of the strong interaction, we may proceed in a similar way as we did for QED. The gauge transformation is $\psi \rightarrow e^{ig_S \vec{\alpha}(x) \cdot \vec{T}} \psi$, where $\vec{T}$ is an eight component vector of the generators of $SU(3)$, often expressed via the Gell-Mann matrices, λ^a , as $t^a = \frac{1}{2}\lambda^a$, and the spinor ψ represents the fields corresponding to quarks.

This $SU(3)$ symmetry exactly expresses the color structure elucidated above – the Gell-Mann matrices are an equivalent presentation of the color combinations described above. Proceeding by analogy to QED, gauge invariance is achieved by introducing eight new degrees of freedom, G_μ^a , which are the gauge fields corresponding to the gluons, with the gauge covariant derivative then analogously taking the form $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ig_S G_\mu^a t^a$.

Recall from the QED derivation that the field strength tensor, $F^{\mu\nu}$ is a rank two antisymmetric tensor which is manifestly gauge invariant and which describes the physical dynamics of the A_μ field. We would like to analogously define a term for the gluon fields. Repackaging this QED tensor, it is apparent that

$$[D_\mu, D_\nu] = D_\mu D_\nu - D_\nu D_\mu \quad (1.25)$$

$$= (\partial_\mu + iqA_\mu)(\partial_\nu + iqA_\nu) - (\partial_\nu + iqA_\nu)(\partial_\mu + iqA_\mu) \quad (1.26)$$

$$= \partial_\mu \partial_\nu + iq\partial_\mu A_\nu + iqA_\mu \partial_\nu + (iq)^2 A_\mu A_\nu - (\partial_\nu \partial_\mu + iq\partial_\nu A_\mu + iqA_\nu \partial_\mu + (iq)^2 A_\nu A_\mu) \quad (1.27)$$

$$= iq(\partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu) + (iq)^2 (A_\mu A_\nu - A_\nu A_\mu) \quad (1.28)$$

$$= iq(\partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu) + (iq)^2 [A_\mu, A_\nu]. \quad (1.29)$$

We proceed through this derivation to highlight that, in the specific case of QED, with its Abelian $U(1)$ gauge symmetry, the field commutator vanishes, leaving exactly the definition of $F_{\mu\nu}$ as described above, i.e.,

$$F_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{iq}[D_\mu, D_\nu]. \quad (1.30)$$

We may proceed to define an analogous field strength term for G_μ^a in a similar way:

$$G_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{ig_S}[D_\mu, D_\nu] \quad (1.31)$$

This has an extremely nice correspondence, but is complicated by the non-Abelian nature of $SU(3)$, with

$$G_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu(G_\nu^a t^a) - \partial_\nu(G_\mu^a t^a) + ig_S[G_\mu^a t^a, G_\nu^a t^a]. \quad (1.32)$$

in which the field commutator term is non-zero. In particular (since each term is summing over a , so we may relabel) as

$$[G_\mu^a t^a, G_\nu^b t^b] = [t^a, t^b] G_\mu^a G_\nu^b \quad (1.33)$$

and as $[t^a, t^b] = if^{abc}t^c$ for the Gell-Mann matrices, where f^{abc} are the structure constants of $SU(3)$, we have

$$G_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu(G_\nu^a t^a) - \partial_\nu(G_\mu^a t^a) - g_S f^{abc} t^c G_\mu^a G_\nu^b \quad (1.34)$$

$$= t^a (\partial_\mu G_\nu^a - \partial_\nu G_\mu^a - f^{bca} G_\mu^b G_\nu^c) \quad (1.35)$$

$$= t^a G_{\mu\nu}^a \quad (1.36)$$

for $G_{\mu\nu}^a = \partial_\mu G_\nu^a - \partial_\nu G_\mu^a - f^{abc} G_\mu^b G_\nu^c$.

This gives the component of the field strength corresponding to a particular gauge field a , where the first two terms have the familiar form of the QED field strength, while the last term is new, and explicitly related to the group structure via the f^{abc} constants. In terms of the physics content of the theory, this latter term gives rise to a gluon *self-interaction*, a distinguishing feature of QCD.

Similarly as in QED, a Lorentz invariant combination of field strength tensors may be made as $G_{\mu\nu} G^{\mu\nu}$. However, this is not manifestly gauge invariant. Under a gauge transformation

U , the covariant derivative behaves as $D^\mu \rightarrow U D^\mu U^{-1}$, corresponding to $G^{\mu\nu} \rightarrow U G^{\mu\nu} U^{-1}$. The cyclic property of the trace thus ensures the gauge invariance of $\text{tr}(G_{\mu\nu} G^{\mu\nu})$, which we will write as $G_{\mu\nu}^a G_a^{\mu\nu}$ with the implied sum over generators a .

Packaging up the theory, it is tempting to copy the form of the QED Lagrangian, with the identifications we have made above:

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu D_\mu - m)\psi - \frac{1}{4}G_{\mu\nu}^a G_a^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.37)$$

However this is not quite correct due to the $SU(3)$ nature of the theory. In terms of the physics, the Dirac fields ψ have associated color charge, which must interact appropriately with the G_μ fields. Mathematically, the generators t^a are 3×3 matrices, while the ψ are four component spinors. Adding a color index to the Dirac fields, i.e., ψ_i where i runs over the three color charges, and similarly indexing the generators t_{ij}^a , we may then express the $SU(3)$ gauge covariant derivative component-wise as

$$(D_\mu)_{ij} = \partial_\mu \delta_{ij} + ig_S G_\mu^a t_{ij}^a \quad (1.38)$$

where δ_{ij} is the Kronecker delta, as ∂_μ does not participate in the $SU(3)$ structure.

The Lagrangian then becomes

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}_i(i(\gamma^\mu D_\mu)_{ij} - m\delta_{ij})\psi_j - \frac{1}{4}G_{\mu\nu}^a G_a^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.39)$$

and we have constructed QCD.

1.5 The Weak Interaction

One of the first theories of the weak interaction was from Enrico Fermi [14], in an effort to explain beta decay, a process in which an electron or positron is emitted from an atomic nucleus, resulting in the conversion of a neutron to a proton or proton to a neutron respectively. Fermi's hypothesis was of a direct interaction between four fermions. However, in the advent of QED, it is natural to wonder if a theory of based on mediator particles and gauge symmetries applies to the weak force as well. The modern formulation of such a theory is due to Sheldon

Glashow, Steven Weinberg, and Abdus Salam [15], and is what we will describe in the following.

Considering emission of an electron, Fermi's theory involves an initial state neutron that transitions to a proton with the emission of an electron and a neutrino. This transition gives a hint that something slightly more complicated is happening than in QED: there is an apparent mixing between particle types.

Now, with the assumption there are mediators for such an interaction, we further know from beta decay and charge conservation that there must be at least two such degrees of freedom: e.g. one that decays to an electron and neutrino (W^-) and one that decays to a positron and neutrino (W^+). From consideration of the process $e^+e^- \rightarrow W^+W^-$, it turns out that with just these two degrees of freedom, the cross section for this process increases without limit as a function of center-of-mass energy, ultimately violating unitarity (more W^+W^- pairs come out than e^+e^- pairs go in). This is resolved with a third, neutral degree of freedom, the Z boson, whose contribution interferes negatively, regulating this process.

This leads to three degrees of freedom for the gauge symmetry of the weak interactions, so we thus need a theory which is locally invariant under transformations of a group with three generators. The simplest such choice is $SU(2)$. We may follow a very similar prescription as for QED and QCD: $SU(2)$ has three generators, which implies the existence of three gauge bosons, call them W_μ^k . The gauge transformation may be expressed as $\psi \rightarrow e^{ig_W \vec{\alpha}(x) \cdot \vec{T}} \psi$, where in this case the generators are for $SU(2)$, which may be written in terms of the familiar Pauli matrices: $\vec{T} = \frac{1}{2} \vec{\sigma}$. The structure constants for $SU(2)$ are the antisymmetric Levi-Civita tensor, so the corresponding gauge covariant derivative is $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^k t^k$, and the field strength tensor is $W_{\mu\nu}^k = \partial_\mu W_\nu^k - \partial_\nu W_\mu^k - \epsilon^{ijk} W_\mu^j W_\nu^k$.

The corresponding Lagrangian would thus be

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}_i (i(\gamma^\mu D_\mu)_{ij} - m\delta_{ij}) \psi_j - \frac{1}{4} W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu} \quad (1.40)$$

where indices i and j run over $SU(2)$ charges.

On considering some of the details, the universe unfortunately turns out to be a bit

more complicated. However, this still provides a useful starting place for elucidating the theory of weak interactions. First off, let us consider the particle content, namely, what do the Dirac fields correspond to? This is still a theory of fermionic interactions with gauge bosons. However, we might notice that the fermion content of this theory is both a) broader than QCD, as we know experimentally (cf. beta decay) that both quarks and leptons (e.g. electrons) participate in the weak interaction and b) this fermion content seemingly has a large overlap with QED. In terms of the gauge bosons, we know that at both W^+ and W^- are electrically charged – this means that we expect some interaction of the weak theory with electromagnetism.

However, before diving deeper into this apparent connection between the weak interaction and QED, let us focus on the gauge symmetry. In QCD, the $SU(3)$ content of the theory is expressed via a contraction of color indices – the theory allows for transitions between quarks of one color and quarks of another. Thinking similarly in terms of $SU(2)$ transitions, the beta decay example is already fruitful – there is a transition between an electron and its corresponding neutrino, as well as between two types of quark. In particular, for the case of a neutron (with quark content udd) and a proton (with quark content udu), the weak interaction provides for a transition from down to up quark.

Such $SU(2)$ dynamics are described via a quantity called *weak isospin*, denoted I_W with third component $I_W^{(3)}$, and can be thought of in a very similar way as color charge in QCD (i.e. as the charge corresponding to the weak interaction). Since $SU(2)$ is 2×2 , there are two such charge states for the fermions, denoted as $I_W^{(3)} = \pm \frac{1}{2}$. This means that the bosons must have $I_W = 1$ such that, by sign convention corresponding to electric charge, the W^+ boson has $I_W^{(3)} = +1$, the Z boson has $I_W^{(3)} = 0$, and the W^- boson has $I_W^{(3)} = -1$.

From conservation of electric charge, this means that transitions involving a $W^\pm$ are between particles that differ by ± 1 in both weak isospin $I_W^{(3)}$ and electric charge. We may thus line up all such doublets as:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \nu_e \\ e^- \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\mu \\ \mu^- \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\tau \\ \tau^- \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} u \\ d' \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} c \\ s' \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} t \\ b' \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.41)$$

with the top corresponding to the lower weak isospin and electric charge particles, and the lower quark entries (d' , etc) corresponding to the weak quark eigenstates (which are related to the mass eigenstates via the CKM matrix). Similar doublets may be constructed for the corresponding anti-particles.

The fundamental structuring of these transitions around both electric and weak charge is again indicative of a natural connection. However, nature is again a bit more complicated than we have described. This is because the weak interaction is a *chiral* theory. For massless particles, chirality is the same as the perhaps more intuitive *helicity*. This describes the relationship between a particle's spin and momentum: if the spin vector points in the same direction as the momentum vector, helicity is positive (the particle is “right-handed”), and if the two point in opposite directions, the helicity is negative (the particle is “left-handed”). More concretely:

$$H = \frac{\vec{s} \cdot \vec{p}}{|\vec{s} \cdot \vec{p}|}. \quad (1.42)$$

For massive particles, this generalizes a bit – in the language of Dirac fermions that we have developed, we define projection operators

$$P_R = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \gamma^5) \quad \text{and} \quad P_L = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \gamma^5) \quad (1.43)$$

for right and left-handed chiralities respectively – acting on a Dirac field with such operators projects the field onto the corresponding chiral state.

Experimentally, this pops up via parity violation and the famous $V - A$ theory. For the scope of this thesis, it is sufficient to say that the weak interaction is only observed to take place for left-handed particles (and correspondingly, right-handed anti-particles). We therefore modify the theory stated above by projecting all fermions participating in the weak interaction onto respective chiral states – in particular, the $SU(2)$ gauge symmetry only acts on left-handed particles and right-handed anti-particles. We therefore modify the theory appropriately, denoting the chiral projected gauge symmetry as $SU(2)_L$, and similarly for the

Dirac fields. In particular, the weak isospin doublets listed above must now be left-handed:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \nu_e \\ e^- \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\mu \\ \mu^- \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\tau \\ \tau^- \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} u \\ d' \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} c \\ s' \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} t \\ b' \end{pmatrix}_L \quad (1.44)$$

and right-handed particle states are placed in singlets and assigned 0 charge under $SU(2)_L$ ($I_W = I_W^{(3)} = 0$).

With all of these assignments, let us revisit our guess at the form of the weak interaction Lagrangian. First, dwelling on the kinetic term $\bar{\psi}_i(i(\gamma^\mu D_\mu)_{ij}\psi_j)$, we note that the assigning of left-handed fermions to isospin doublets and right-handed fermions to isospin singlets allows us to remove explicit $SU(2)$ indices by treating these as the fundamental objects, that is, for a single *generation* of fermions, we may write:

$$\bar{Q}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu Q + \bar{u}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu u + \bar{d}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu d + \bar{L}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu L + \bar{e}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu e \quad (1.45)$$

for left-handed doublets Q and L for quarks and electron fields respectively and right-handed singlets u and d for up and down quark fields and e for electrons.

More concisely, and summing over the three generations of fermions, we may write

$$\sum_f \bar{f}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu f \quad (1.46)$$

where the f are understood to run over the fermion chiral doublets and singlets as above.

This then leaves our Lagrangian as

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_f \bar{f}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu f - \frac{1}{4}W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu} \quad (1.47)$$

$$= \sum_f \bar{f}\gamma^\mu (i\partial_\mu - \frac{1}{2}g_W W_\mu^k \sigma_k) f - \frac{1}{4}W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu}, \quad (1.48)$$

where we have expanded the covariant derivative for clarity. You may note that we have dropped the mass term in the equation above – we will discuss this in detail in just a moment.

First, however, we return to the above comment about fermion content – we neglected to include the sum over fermions in our QED derivation for simplicity. However, all of the

fermions considered in the discussion of the weak interaction have an electric charge (except for the neutrinos). It would be nice to repackage the theory into a coherent *electroweak* theory. This is fairly straightforward when considering the gauge approach – from the discussion above we should expect the electroweak gauge group to be something like $SU(2) \times U(1)$, with four corresponding gauge bosons. Consider a gauge theory with group $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ – that is, the same weak interaction as discussed previously, but a new $U(1)_Y$ gauge group for electromagnetism, with transformations defined as

$$\psi \rightarrow e^{ig' \frac{Y}{2} \lambda(x)} \psi \quad (1.49)$$

with *weak hypercharge* Y .

Similarly to our discussion of QED, we may write the $U(1)_Y$ gauge field as B_μ , and interactions with the Dirac fields take the form $g' \frac{Y}{2} \gamma^\mu B_\mu \psi$. The relationship between this hypercharge and new B_μ field and classical electrodynamics is not so obvious – however it is convenient to parametrize as

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_\mu \\ Z_\mu \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_W & \sin \theta_W \\ -\sin \theta_W & \cos \theta_W \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} B_\mu \\ W_\mu^3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.50)$$

where A_μ and Z_μ are the physical fields, and we pick W_μ^3 as the neutral weak boson.

Note that in the $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ theory, the Lagrangian must be invariant under all of the local gauge transformations. In particular, this means that the hypercharge must be the same for fermion fields in each weak doublet to preserve $U(1)_Y$ invariance. This gives insight into the relation between the charges of $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ and electric charge. In particular we know that the hypercharge, Y , of e^- ($I_W^{(3)} = -\frac{1}{2}$) and ν_e ($I_W^{(3)} = +\frac{1}{2}$) is the same.

Supposing that $Y = \alpha I_W^{(3)} + \beta Q$, we must have $-\alpha \frac{1}{2} - \beta = \alpha \frac{1}{2} \implies \beta = -\alpha$. Therefore, choosing an overall scaling from convention,

$$Y = 2(Q - I_W^{(3)}). \quad (1.51)$$

Some of these particular forms are best understood in the context of the Higgs mechanism – we will return to this discussion below.

1.6 The Higgs Potential and the SM

In the above, we have neglected a discussion of masses. However there are several things to sort out here. In the first place, we know experimentally that the weak interactions occur over very short ranges at low energies (e.g., why Fermi's effective four fermion interaction was such a good description). This is consistent with massive $W^\pm$ and Z bosons (and indeed, this is seen experimentally). However, requiring local gauge invariance forbids mass terms in the Lagrangian. In the simple $U(1)$ QED example, such a term would have the form $\frac{1}{2}m_\gamma^2 A_\mu A^\mu$, which is not invariant under the transformation $A_\mu \rightarrow A_\mu - \partial_\mu \lambda$, and similar arguments hold for gauge bosons in the electroweak theory and QCD.

Similar issues are encountered with fermions – in the electroweak theory above, the gauge symmetries are separated into left and right-handed chirality via doublet and singlet states. This means that a mass term would need to be separated as well. Such a term would have the form:

$$m\bar{f}f = m(\bar{f}_L + \bar{f}_R)(f_L + f_R) \quad (1.52)$$

$$= m(\bar{f}_L f_L + \bar{f}_L f_R + \bar{f}_R f_L + \bar{f}_R f_R) \quad (1.53)$$

$$= m(\bar{f}_L f_R + \bar{f}_R f_L) \quad (1.54)$$

where we have used that $f_{L,R} = P_{L,R}f$, $\bar{f}_{L,R} = \bar{f}P_{R,L}$, and $P_R P_L = P_L P_R = 0$. As left and right-handed particles transform differently under $SU(2)_L$, this is manifestly not gauge invariant.

The question then becomes: how do we include particle masses while preserving the gauge properties of our theory? The answer, due to Robert Brout and François Englert [16], Peter Higgs [17], and Gerald Guralnik, Richard Hagen, and Tom Kibble [18] comes via the Higgs mechanism, which we will describe in the following. Importantly for this thesis, this mechanism predicts the existence of a physical particle, the Higgs boson, and a particle consistent with the Higgs boson was seen by both ATLAS [19] and CMS [20] in 2012.

To explain the Higgs, we focus first on generating masses for the electroweak gauge bosons.

Consider adding two complex scalar fields ϕ^+ and ϕ^0 to the Standard Model embedded in a weak isospin doublet ϕ . We may write the doublet as

$$\phi = \begin{pmatrix} \phi^+ \\ \phi^0 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} \phi_1 + i\phi_2 \\ \phi_3 + i\phi_4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.55)$$

where we explicitly note the four available degrees of freedom.

The Lagrangian for such a doublet takes the form

$$\mathcal{L} = (\partial_\mu \phi)^\dagger (\partial^\mu \phi) - V(\phi) \quad (1.56)$$

where V is the corresponding potential. Considering the particular form

$$V(\phi) = \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi + \lambda (\phi^\dagger \phi)^2 \quad (1.57)$$

we may notice that this has some interesting properties. Considering, as illustration, a similar potential for a real scalar field, $\mu^2 \chi^2 + \lambda \chi^4$, taking the derivative and setting it equal to 0 yields extrema when $\chi = 0$ and $(\mu^2 + 2\lambda \chi^2) = 0 \implies \chi^2 = -\frac{\mu^2}{2\lambda}$. For $\mu^2 > 0$, there is a unique minimum at $\chi = 0$, and for $\mu^2 < 0$ there are degenerate minima at $\chi = \pm \sqrt{-\frac{\mu^2}{2\lambda}}$. Note that we take $\lambda > 0$, otherwise the only minima in the theory are trivial.

The same simple calculus for the complex Higgs doublet above yields degenerate minima for $\mu^2 < 0$ at

$$\phi^\dagger \phi = \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1^2 + \phi_2^2 + \phi_3^2 + \phi_4^2) = \frac{v}{2} = -\frac{\mu^2}{2\lambda} \quad (1.58)$$

However, though there is this degenerate set of minima, there can only be a single *physical* vacuum state (we say that the symmetry is *spontaneously broken*). Without loss of generality, we may align our axes such that the physical vacuum state is at

$$\langle 0 | \phi | 0 \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.59)$$

where we have explicitly chosen a real, non-zero vacuum expectation value for the neutral component of the Higgs doublet to maintain a massless photon, as we shall see. Physically, however, this makes sense - the vacuum is not electrically charged.

The vacuum is a classical state – we want a quantum one. We may express fluctuations about this nonzero expectation value via an expansion as $v + \eta(x) + i\xi(x)$. However, renaming of fields is only meaningful for the non-zero vacuum component - we thus have:

$$\phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} \phi_1 + i\phi_2 \\ v + \eta(x) + i\phi_4 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (1.60)$$

where we may expand the Lagrangian listed above:

$$\mathcal{L} = (\partial_\mu \phi)^\dagger (\partial^\mu \phi) - \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi - \lambda (\phi^\dagger \phi)^2. \quad (1.61)$$

It is an exercise in algebra to plug in the expansion about v into this Lagrangian: first expanding the potential

$$V(\phi) = \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi + \lambda (\phi^\dagger \phi)^2 \quad (1.62)$$

$$= \mu^2 \left(\sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + (v + \eta(x))^2 \right) + \lambda \left(\sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + (v + \eta(x))^2 \right)^2 \quad (1.63)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{4} \lambda v^4 + \lambda v^2 \eta^2 + \lambda v \eta^3 + \frac{1}{4} \lambda \eta^4 \quad (1.64)$$

$$+ \frac{1}{2} \lambda \sum_{i \neq j} \phi_i^2 \phi_j^2 + \lambda v \eta \sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + \frac{1}{2} \lambda \eta^2 \sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + \frac{1}{4} \sum_i \phi_i(x)^4 \quad (1.65)$$

where the sums are over the $i \in 1, 2, 4$, that is, the fields with 0 vacuum expectation, and we have used the definition $\mu^2 = -\lambda v^2$.

Within this potential, we note a quadratic term in $\eta(x)$ which we may identify with a mass, namely $m_\eta = \sqrt{2\lambda v^2}$, whereas the ϕ_i are massless. These ϕ_i are known as *Goldstone bosons*, and correspond to quantum fluctuations along the minimum of the potential. Of particular note for this thesis are the interaction terms $\lambda v \eta^3$ and $\frac{1}{4} \lambda \eta^4$, expressing trilinear and quartic self-interactions of the η field.

Expanding the kinetic term

$$(\partial_\mu \phi)^\dagger (\partial^\mu \phi) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i (\partial_\mu \phi_i) (\partial^\mu \phi_i) + \frac{1}{2} (\partial_\mu (v + \eta(x))) (\partial^\mu (v + \eta(x))) \quad (1.66)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \sum_i (\partial_\mu \phi_i) (\partial^\mu \phi_i) + \frac{1}{2} (\partial_\mu \eta) (\partial^\mu \eta) \quad (1.67)$$

in a similar way completes the story of three massless degrees of freedom (Goldstone bosons) and one massive one.

Now, this doublet is embedded in an $SU(2)_L \times U(1)$ theory, so we would like to preserve that gauge invariance. This is achieved in the same way as for the Dirac fields, with the introduction of the electroweak gauge covariant derivative such that the Lagrangian for the Higgs doublet and the electroweak bosons is just

$$\mathcal{L} = (D_\mu \phi)^\dagger (D^\mu \phi) - \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi - \lambda (\phi^\dagger \phi)^2 - \frac{1}{4} W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu} - \frac{1}{4} F_{\mu\nu} F^{\mu\nu} \quad (1.68)$$

with $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^k t^k + ig' \frac{Y}{2} B_\mu$.

We note that it is convenient to pick a gauge such that the Goldstone fields do not appear in the Lagrangian, upon which we may identify the field $\eta(x)$ with the physical Higgs field, $h(x)$. The field mass terms then very apparently come via the covariant derivative, namely, as

$$W_\mu^k \sigma^k + B_\mu = \begin{pmatrix} W_\mu^3 + B_\mu & W_\mu^1 - iW_\mu^2 \\ W_\mu^1 + iW_\mu^2 & -W_\mu^3 + B_\mu \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.69)$$

we may then write

$$D_\mu \phi = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 2\partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^3 + ig' Y B_\mu & ig_W W_\mu^1 + \frac{1}{2} g_W W_\mu^2 \\ ig_W W_\mu^1 - g_W W_\mu^2 & 2\partial_\mu - ig_W W_\mu^3 + ig' Y B_\mu \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v + h \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.70)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} ig_W (W_\mu^1 - iW_\mu^2)(v + h) \\ (2\partial_\mu - ig_W W_\mu^3 + ig' Y B_\mu)(v + h) \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.71)$$

As identified above, $Y = 2(Q - I_W^{(3)})$. The Higgs has 0 electric charge, and the lower doublet component has $I_W^{(3)} = -\frac{1}{2}$, yielding $Y = 1$.

Computing $(D_\mu \phi)^\dagger (D^\mu \phi)$, then, yields

$$\frac{1}{8} g_W^2 (W_\mu^1 + iW_\mu^2)(W^{\mu 1} - iW^{\mu 2})(v + h)^2 + \frac{1}{8} (2\partial_\mu + ig_W W_{\mu 3} - ig' B_\mu)(2\partial^\mu - ig_W W^{\mu 3} + ig' B^\mu)(v + h)^2 \quad (1.72)$$

and extracting terms quadratic in the fields gives

$$\frac{1}{8} g_W^2 v^2 (W_{\mu 1} W^{\mu 1} + W_{\mu 2} W^{\mu 2}) + \frac{1}{8} v^2 (g_W W_\mu^3 - g' B_\mu)(g_W W^{\mu 3} - g' B^\mu) \quad (1.73)$$

meaning that W_μ^1 and W_μ^2 have masses $m_W = \frac{1}{2}g_W v$. The neutral boson case is a bit more complicated. Writing the corresponding term as

$$\frac{1}{8}v^2 \begin{pmatrix} W_\mu^3 & B_\mu \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} g_W^2 & -g_W g' \\ -g_W g' & g'^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} W^{\mu 3} \\ B^\mu \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.74)$$

we note that we must diagonalize this mass matrix to get the physical mass eigenstates. Doing so in the usual way yields eigenvalues 0, $g'^2 + g_W^2$, thus corresponding to $m_\gamma = 0$ and $m_Z = \frac{1}{2}v\sqrt{g'^2 + g_W^2}$, with physical fields as the (normalized) eigenvectors

$$A_\mu = \frac{g'W_\mu^3 + g_W B_\mu}{\sqrt{g_W^2 + g'^2}} \quad (1.75)$$

$$Z_\mu = \frac{g_W W_\mu^3 - g' B_\mu}{\sqrt{g_W^2 + g'^2}} \quad (1.76)$$

From this form, the angular parametrization of the physical fields is very apparent, namely, defining

$$\tan \theta_W = \frac{g'}{g_W}, \quad (1.77)$$

these equations may be written in terms of the single parameter θ_W as

$$A_\mu = \cos \theta_W B_\mu + \sin \theta_W W_\mu^3 \quad (1.78)$$

$$Z_\mu = -\sin \theta_W B_\mu + \cos \theta_W W_\mu^3 \quad (1.79)$$

and, notably, from the above equations,

$$\frac{m_W}{m_Z} = \cos \theta_W. \quad (1.80)$$

To get the mass terms from Equation 1.72, we extracted those terms quadratic in fields, i.e., the v^2 terms within $(v + h)^2$. However there are also terms of the form VVh and $VVhh$ that arise, which describe the Higgs interactions with the corresponding vector bosons $V = W^\pm, Z$. Namely, identifying physical W bosons as

$$W^\pm = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(W^1 \mp iW^2) \quad (1.81)$$

we may express the first term of Equation 1.72 as

$$\frac{1}{4}g_W^2 W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} (v + h)^2 = \frac{1}{4}g_W^2 v^2 W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} + \frac{1}{2}g_W^2 v W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} h + \frac{1}{4}g_W^2 W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} h^2 \quad (1.82)$$

with the first term corresponding to the mass term $m_W = \frac{1}{2}g_W v$, and the second two terms corresponding to hW^+W^- and hhW^+W^- vertices. Of particular note is the coupling strength

$$g_{HWW} = \frac{1}{2}g_W^2 v = g_W m_W \quad (1.83)$$

which is proportional to the W mass. A similar analysis with the form of the physical Z boson finds that the corresponding coupling, g_{HZZ} , is proportional to the Z mass.

The Higgs coupling to fermions (in particular to quarks) is of particular interest for this thesis. We showed above that a naive introduction of a mass term

$$m\bar{f}f = m(\bar{f}_L f_R + \bar{f}_R f_L) \quad (1.84)$$

is manifestly not gauge invariant because right and left handed particles transform differently under $SU(2)_L$. However, because the Higgs is constructed via an $SU(2)_L$ doublet, ϕ , writing a fermion doublet as L and conjugate $\bar{L}$, it is apparent that $\bar{L}\phi$ is invariant under $SU(2)_L$.

Combining with the right-handed singlet, R , creates a term invariant under $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$, $\bar{L}\phi R$ (and correspondingly $(\bar{L}\phi R)^\dagger$), such that we may include Yukawa [21] terms

$$\mathcal{L}_{Yukawa} = -g_f \left[\begin{pmatrix} \bar{f}_1 & \bar{f}_2 \end{pmatrix}_L \begin{pmatrix} \phi^+ \\ \phi^0 \end{pmatrix} f_R + \bar{f}_R \begin{pmatrix} \phi^{+*} & \phi^{0*} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} f_1 \\ f_2 \end{pmatrix}_L \right] \quad (1.85)$$

where g_f is a corresponding Yukawa coupling, f_1 and f_2 have been used to denote components of the left-handed doublet and f_R the corresponding right-handed singlet.

After spontaneous symmetry breaking, with the gauge as described above to remove the Goldstone fields, the Higgs doublet becomes

$$\phi(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v + h(x) \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.86)$$

giving rise to terms such as

$$-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}g_f v(\bar{f}_{2L}\bar{f}_R + \bar{f}_R f_{2L}) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}g_f h(\bar{f}_{2L}\bar{f}_R + \bar{f}_R f_{2L}) \quad (1.87)$$

where we have kept the subscript f_{2L} to emphasize that these terms *only* impact the lower component of the left-handed doublet because of the 0 in the upper component of the Higgs doublet. Leaving this aside for a second, we note that the first term has the form of the desired mass term above (identifying f_{2L} to f_L) while the second term describes the coupling of the fermion to the physical Higgs field. The corresponding Yukawa coupling may be chosen to be consistent with the observed fermion mass, namely

$$g_f = \sqrt{2}\frac{m_f}{v} \quad (1.88)$$

such that

$$\mathcal{L}_f = -m_f \bar{f}f - \frac{m_f}{v} \bar{f}fh. \quad (1.89)$$

Notably here, the fermion coupling to the Higgs boson scales with the mass of the fermion, a fact that is extremely relevant for this thesis analysis.

As we said above, these terms *only* impact the lower component of the left-handed doublet. The inclusion of terms for the upper component is accomplished via the introduction of a Higgs conjugate doublet, defined as

$$\phi_c = -i\sigma_2\phi^* = \begin{pmatrix} -\phi^{0*} \\ \phi^- \end{pmatrix}. \quad (1.90)$$

The argument proceeds similarly to the above, with similar results for couplings and masses of upper components.

1.7 The Standard Model: A Summary

After all of the above, we may write the Standard Model as a theory with a local $SU(3) \times SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ gauge symmetry, described by the Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_f \bar{f}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu f - \frac{1}{4} \sum_{gauges} F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} + (D_\mu\phi)^\dagger(D^\mu\phi) - \mu^2\phi^\dagger\phi - \lambda(\phi^\dagger\phi)^2 \quad (1.91)$$

where $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^k t^k + ig' \frac{Y}{2} B_\mu + ig_S G_\mu^a t^a$, in addition to the Yukawa terms, which we write generally as

$$\mathcal{L}_{Yukawa} = - \sum_{f, \phi=\phi, -\phi_c} y_f (\bar{f}\phi f + (\bar{f}\phi f)^\dagger) \quad (1.92)$$

with the sum running over running over appropriate chiral fermion and Higgs doublets.

The $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ subgroup is spontaneously broken to a $U(1)$ symmetry, lending mass to the associated gauge bosons and fermions. Of relevance for this thesis is the resulting physical Higgs field, with a predicted trilinear self-interaction and associated coupling λv , related to the experimentally observed Higgs boson mass by $m_H = \sqrt{2\lambda v^2}$, as well as the fact that the strength of the Higgs coupling to fermions scales proportionally with the fermion mass.

1.8 Experimental Review and Outlook

The Standard Model has been monumentally successful: as listed in Figure [6], there are 17 particles in the Standard Model. For each, there is a large body of experimental observations and verifications. We here briefly describe the initial observations of these particles, and note that, while there is physics that is not explained by the Standard Model, experimental results for physics within the Standard Model have so far demonstrated beautiful consistency with the theory.

Indicative of the importance and strength of electromagnetism in the everyday world, the electron and photon were foundational discoveries that began the theoretical flurry which resulted in the Standard Model. While electric charge was observed by even the ancient Greeks (and, in fact, the word electric is derived from the Greek word for amber, which picks up a charge when rubbed with fur), the connection of this charge to a subatomic particle came later, with J.J. Thompson the first (in 1897) to definitively show the existence of electrons, using cathode ray tubes to demonstrate a particle with a mass much smaller than hydrogen and with a charge to mass ratio independent the of material used in the cathode.

The discovery of the photon is much talked about in any introductory quantum mechanics

course via the dual wave/particle nature of light. The assumption in 1900 of Max Planck that electromagnetic radiation could only be emitted or absorbed in discrete quantities (“quanta”) resolved the ultraviolet catastrophe, a classical prediction that energy emitted by a black body diverges for high frequencies. Soon after, in 1905, Einstein postulated that such quanta corresponded to physical particles, explaining, for instance, the photoelectric effect.

These two foundational particles led to the development of both atomic theory and quantum mechanics. In 1936, Carl D. Anderson and Seth Neddermeyer, while studying cosmic radiation, observed a particle that behaved similarly to an electron but had a shallower curvature in a magnetic field (though a sharper curvature than protons). With an assumption of the same electric charge, this difference is indicative of a particle with mass in between that of an electron and a proton, and this was the first observation of the muon.

The completion of the set of leptons did not come till much later, with SPEAR, an electron-positron collider at SLAC, which was used for the discovery of the tau by Martin Lewis Perl in experiments between 1974 and 1977. This was done via the detection of anomalous events, which required the production and decay of a new particle pair $\tau^+\tau^-$.

Though Fermi first proposed a theory of beta decay involving a neutrino in 1934, and hints of its existence were present in cloud chamber experiments via nuclear recoil, the electron neutrino was first directly observed in 1956, via inverse beta decay in a nuclear reactor by Clyde Cowan and Frederick Reines, in which an electron anti-neutrino interacts with a proton to produce neutrons and positrons. This confirmed the existence of neutrinos – the fact that there are different types of neutrinos was seen soon after, in 1962, by Leon Lederman, Melvin Schwartz, and Jack Steinberger, who demonstrated, via pion decay, the existence of the muon neutrino. Given these two flavors of neutrino, after the discovery of the τ , the existence of a τ neutrino was also expected – this was confirmed in 2000 by the DONUT collaboration at Fermilab.

In 1968, deep inelastic scattering experiments at SLAC, in which a beam of electrons is fired at atomic nuclei to probe internal structure of protons and neutrons, confirmed the existence of internal proton structure. These constituents of the proton would eventually be

identified as quarks, which had been proposed by Gell-Mann and Zweig in 1964. The proton contains two up quarks and a down quark – however the existence of up and down quarks, in conjunction with the observation of kaons and pions and the “eightfold way” particle classification of Gell-Mann, indirectly confirmed the existence of the strange quark.

The charm quark was discovered via the observation of a charm anti-charm meson, called J/ψ , by Burton Richter and Samuel Ting in 1974, with the dual name a consequence of the shared, but independent, discovery. Richter’s group at SLAC made the discovery with SPEAR, whereas Ting’s group utilized fixed target collisions of a proton beam. Both observed a new resonance near 3 GeV.

In 1977, the bottom quark was discovered at Fermilab by Leon Lederman via the observation of a resonance near 9.5 GeV produced by fixed target proton beam collisions. This resonance, the Υ meson, consists of a bottom quark and an anti-bottom quark, and was observed in the di-muon decay channel.

As the heaviest of the quarks, the top quark was not discovered until 1995. This was done at the Tevatron at Fermilab, a proton anti-proton collider, offering a center of mass energy of 1.8 TeV, with observations by the CDF and DØ experiments.

The Υ meson used for the b -quark discovery was also important in the discovery of the gluon, observed via electron-positron collisions, first by the PLUTO detector at DORIS (DESY) in 1978 and then by the TASSO, MARK-J, JADE, and PLUTO experiments at PETRA (DESY) in 1979. The 1978 observation demonstrated excellent consistency with a three-gluon decay topology for the $\Upsilon(9.46 \text{ GeV})$ decay, but the mass of the $\Upsilon(9.46 \text{ GeV})$ is not high enough to resolve three distinct jets. Operating at $\sqrt{s} = 27.4 \text{ GeV}$, the experiments in 1979 demonstrated a three jet topology consistent (at these higher energies) with gluon bremsstrahlung, that is $e^+e^- \rightarrow q\bar{q}g$, providing the first evidence for the existence of the gluon.

To complete the picture are the massive bosons, all discovered at CERN. In 1983 the W and Z bosons were observed, via proton-antiproton collisions and the UA1 and UA2 experiments. Carlo Rubbia and Simon van der Meer received the Nobel Prize for this discovery

in 1984. Most recently, in 2012, a particle consistent with the Higgs boson was discovered by ATLAS and CMS at the Large Hadron Collider.

Note the careful phrasing for the Higgs boson – although all tests so far have demonstrated consistency with the particle predicted by the Standard Model, this thesis work probes the trilinear Higgs coupling, which is directly sensitive to the structure of the Higgs potential. Agreement of this coupling with the Standard Model prediction is a crucial part of confirming that this particle is indeed the Standard Model Higgs boson, and therefore is a very important piece of the physics goals of the Large Hadron Collider.

The Standard Model, for all of its power, is notably not a complete theory of the universe – there is no inclusion of gravity, for instance, though a consistent description may be provided with the introduction of a spin-2 particle. Neutrino oscillations demonstrate that neutrinos have mass, but right-handed neutrinos do not participate in the Standard Model and have not been observed, leading to questions about whether there is a different mechanism to provide neutrinos with mass than that described above. Cosmology tells us that dark matter exists, but there is no corresponding particle within the Standard Model. This thesis therefore also participates in searches for physics beyond the Standard Model. We will provide a sketch of the relevant theories in the following chapter, though a detailed theoretical discussion is beyond the scope of this work.

Chapter 2

DI-HIGGS PHENOMENOLOGY AND PHYSICS BEYOND THE STANDARD MODEL

This thesis focuses on searches for di-Higgs production in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state. In this chapter, we will provide a brief overview of the practical theoretical information motivating such searches. Though the searches test for physics beyond the Standard Model, particularly in the search for resonances, the goal of the experimental results is to be somewhat agnostic to particular theoretical frameworks. An in depth treatment of such models is therefore beyond the scope of this thesis, though we will attempt to provide a grounding for the models that we consider.

2.1 Intro to Di-Higgs

Di-Higgs searches can be split into two major theoretical categories: *resonant searches*, in which a physical resonance is produced that subsequently decays into two Higgs bosons, and *non-resonant searches* in which no physical resonance is produced, but where the HH production cross section has a contribution from an exchange of a *virtual* or *off-shell* particle.

The focus of this thesis is gluon initiated processes – in the case of di-Higgs this is termed gluon-gluon fusion (ggF). HH production may also occur via vector boson fusion [22]. However the cross section for such production is significantly smaller. Representative Feynman diagrams are shown for gluon-gluon fusion resonant production in Figure 2.1 and for non-resonant production in Figure 2.2.

As shown in Chapter 1, the Higgs coupling to fermions scales with particle mass. As the top quark has a mass of 173 GeV, whereas the H has a mass of 125 GeV, such that $H \rightarrow t\bar{t}$ is kinematically disfavored, $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ is the dominant fermionic Higgs decay mode, and, in fact,

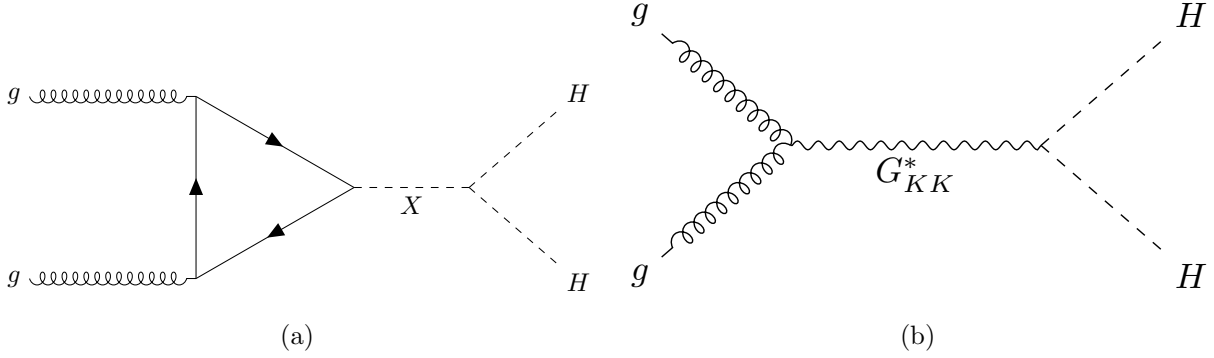


Figure 2.1: Representative diagrams for the gluon-gluon fusion production of spin-0 (X) and spin-2 (G_{KK}^*) resonances which decay to two Standard Model Higgs bosons. The spin-0 resonance considered for this thesis is a generic narrow width resonance which may be interpreted in the context of two Higgs doublet models [23], whereas the spin-2 resonance is considered as a Kaluza-Klein graviton within the bulk Randall-Sundrum (RS) model [24, 25].

the dominant overall decay mode, with a branching fraction of around 58 %. The dominant top quark Yukawa coupling to the H does play a role in H production, however – gluon-gluon fusion is dominated by processes including a top loop.

The single H properties translate to HH production, with $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ accounting for around 34 % of all HH decays. The HH branching fractions are shown in Figure 2.3.

2.2 Resonant HH Searches

Resonant di-Higgs production is predicted in a variety of extensions to the Standard Model. In particular, this thesis presents searches for both spin-0 and spin-2 resonances. The decay of spin-1 resonances to two identical spin-0 bosons is prohibited, as the final state must correspondingly be symmetric under particle exchange, but this process would require orbital angular momentum $\ell = 1$, and thus an anti-symmetric final state. Each model considered here is implemented in a particular theoretical context, but set up experimental results for generic searches.

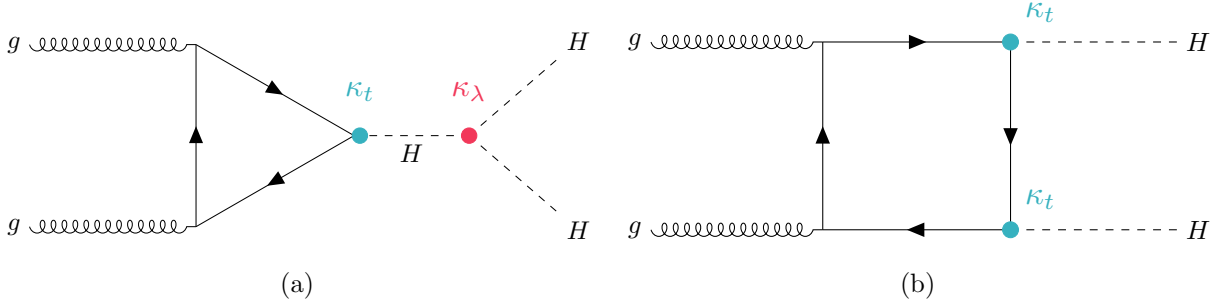


Figure 2.2: Dominant contributing diagrams for non-resonant gluon-gluon fusion production of HH . κ_λ and κ_t represent ratios of the Higgs self-coupling and coupling to top quarks respectively, relative to the values predicted by the Standard Model.

The spin-2 signal considered is implemented within the bulk Randall-Sundrum (RS) model [24, 25], which features spin-2 Kaluza-Klein gravitons, G_{KK}^* , that are produced via gluon-fusion and which may decay to a pair of Higgs bosons. The model predicts such gravitons as a consequence of warped extra dimensions, and is correspondingly parametrized by a value $c = k/\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$, where k describes a curvature scale for the extra dimension and $\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}}$ is the Planck mass. The model considered here has $c = 1.0$. However, this model was considered in the early Run 2 HH analyses [26], and was excluded across much of the relevant mass range.

The primary theoretical focus of this work is therefore the spin-0 result, which is implemented as a generic resonance with width below detector resolution. Scalar resonances are interesting, for instance, in the context of two Higgs doublet models [23], which posit the existence of a second Higgs doublet. This leads to the existence of five scalar particles in the Higgs sector – roughly, two complex doublets provide eight degrees of freedom, three of which are “eaten” by the electroweak bosons, leaving five degrees of freedom which may correspond to physical fields.

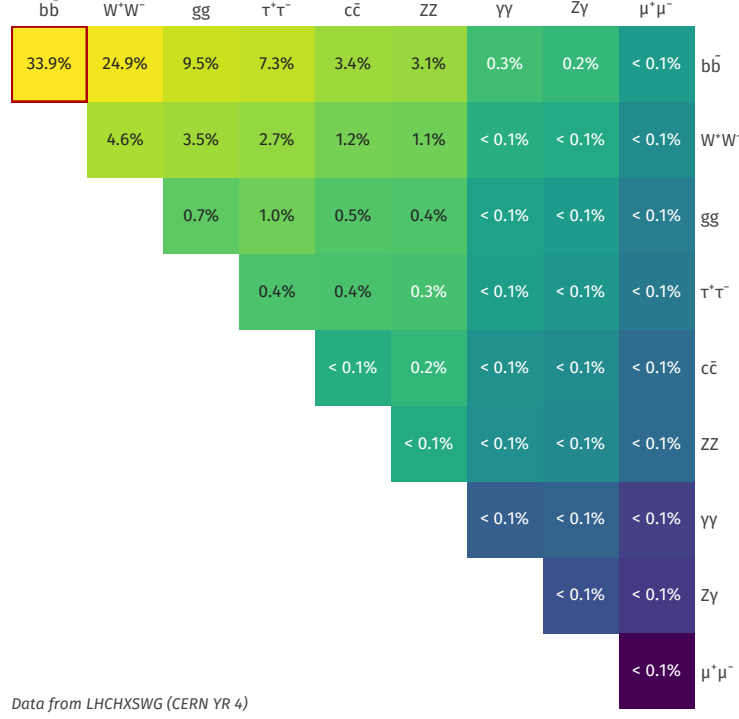


Figure 2.3: Illustration of dominant HH branching ratios. $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ is the most common decay mode, representing 34 % of all HH events produced at the LHC.

2.3 Non-resonant HH Searches

Non-resonant HH production is predicted by the Standard Model via the trilinear coupling discussed above, as well as via production in a fermion loop. More explicitly, after electroweak symmetry breaking, we have

$$\mathcal{L}_{SM} \supset -\lambda v^2 h^2 - \lambda v h^3 - \frac{1}{4} \lambda h^4 \quad (2.1)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} m_H^2 - \lambda_{HHH}^{SM} v h^3 - \lambda_{HHHH}^{SM} h^4 \quad (2.2)$$

where $m_H = \sqrt{2\lambda v^2}$ so that

$$\lambda_{HHH}^{SM} = \frac{m_H^2}{2v^2}. \quad (2.3)$$

The mass of the SM Higgs boson has been experimentally measured to be 125 GeV [27], and the vacuum expectation value $v = 246$ GeV has a precise determination from the muon lifetime [28]. This coupling is therefore precisely predicted in the Standard Model, such that an observed deviation from this prediction would be a clear sign of new physics.

The relevant diagrams for non-resonant HH production are shown in Figure 2.2. Notably, the diagrams *interfere* with each other, which can be easily seen by counting the fermion lines. A detailed theoretical discussion is provided by, e.g. [29].

For the searches presented here, the quark couplings to the Higgs are considered to be consistent with the Standard Model value, with measurements of the dominant top Yukawa coupling left to more sensitive direct measurements, e.g. from $t\bar{t}$ final states [30]. Variations of the trilinear coupling away from the Standard Model are considered, however. Such variations are parametrized via

$$\kappa_\lambda = \frac{\lambda_{HHH}}{\lambda_{HHH}^{SM}} \quad (2.4)$$

where λ_{HHH} is a varied coupling and λ_{HHH}^{SM} is the Standard Model prediction. As this variation comes as a prefactor only with the *triangle* diagram, significant and interesting effects are observed due to the interference. Examples of the impact of this tradeoff on the di-Higgs invariant mass are shown in Figure 2.4. Generally speaking, the triangle diagram contributes more at low mass, while the box diagram contributes more at high mass.

From a quick analysis of Figure 2.2, one may see that, at leading order, the box diagram, B has amplitude proportional to κ_t^2 , defined as the ratio of the top Yukawa coupling to the value predicted by the Standard Model, whereas the triangle diagram, T has amplitude proportional to $\kappa_t \kappa_\lambda$. Therefore, the cross section is proportional to

$$\sigma(\kappa_t, \kappa_\lambda) = |A(\kappa_t, \kappa_\lambda)|^2 \quad (2.5)$$

$$\sim |\kappa_t^2 B + \kappa_t \kappa_\lambda T|^2 \quad (2.6)$$

$$= \kappa_t^4 |B|^2 + \kappa_t^3 \kappa_\lambda (BT + TB) + \kappa_t^2 \kappa_\lambda^2 |T|^2, \quad (2.7)$$

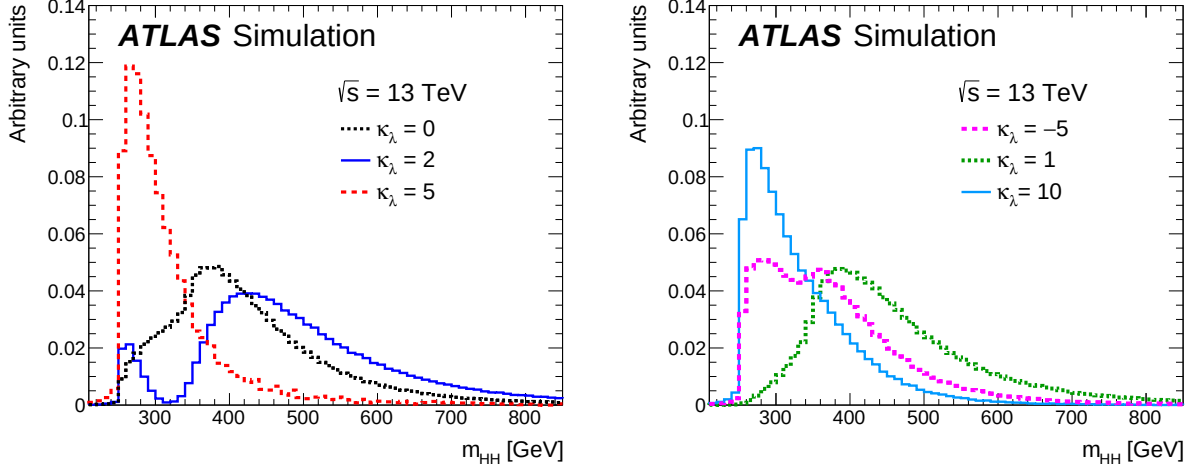


Figure 2.4: Monte Carlo generator level m_{HH} distributions for various values of κ_λ , demonstrating the impact of the interference between the two diagrams of Figure 2.2 on the resulting m_{HH} distribution. For $\kappa_\lambda = 0$ there is no triangle diagram contribution, demonstrating the shape of the box diagram contribution, whereas for $\kappa_\lambda = 10$, the triangle diagram dominates, with a strong low mass peak. The interplay between the two is quite evident for other values, resulting in, e.g., the double peaked structure present for $\kappa_\lambda = 2$ (near maximal destructive interference) and $\kappa_\lambda = -5$. At $\kappa_\lambda = 5$, the interference leads to a deficit at high m_{HH} , resulting in a narrower distribution (and thus a more pronounced low mass peak) than the $\kappa_\lambda = 10$ case. [26]

and thus non-resonant HH production cross section may be parametrized as a second order polynomial in κ_λ .

For positive values of κ_λ , due to the relative minus sign between the triangle and box diagrams, the interference between the two diagrams is *destructive*, with a maximum interference near $\kappa_\lambda = 2.3$, corresponding to the minimum cross section prediction. One may note that the Standard Model value of $\kappa_\lambda = 1$ is not far away from this minimum – correspondingly the Standard Model cross section for HH production is quite small, namely

31.05 fb at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV for production via gluon-gluon fusion [31–38] compared to, e.g. single Higgs production, with a gluon-gluon fusion production cross section of 46.86 pb at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV [39] roughly 1500 times larger! For negative values of κ_λ , the interference is constructive.

ATLAS projections [40] of $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$, $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, and $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ predict an expected signal strength for Standard Model HH of 3.5σ with no systematic uncertainties and 3.0σ with systematic uncertainties using the 3000fb^{-1} of data from the HL-LHC (around $20\times$ the full Run 2 dataset considered in this thesis), constituting an *observation* of HH . As the cross section for Standard Model HHH production, corresponding to the quartic Higgs interaction, is much smaller (around 0.1 fb at $\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV [41]), observation of triple Higgs production is even farther in the future, and so is not considered here. However this may be interesting for future work in a variety of Beyond the Standard Model scenarios (e.g. [42–44]).

Chapter 3

EXPERIMENTAL APPARATUS

What machines must be built to examine the smallest pieces of the universe? The famous equation $E = mc^2$ provides that to create massive particles, enough energy must be provided. In order to give kinematic phase space to the types of processes that are examined in this thesis (and many others besides), a system must be created in which there is enough energy to (at bare minimum), overcome kinematic thresholds: if you want to search for HH decays, you should have at least 250 GeV ($= 2 \times m_H$) to work with. It is not enough to simply induce such processes, however. These processes need to be captured in some way, emitted energy and particles must be characterized and identified, and in the end all of this information must be put into a useful and usable form such that selections can be made, statistics can be run, and a meaningful statement can be made about the universe. This chapter describes the machines behind the physics, namely the Large Hadron Collider and the ATLAS experiment.

3.1 The Large Hadron Collider

The Large Hadron Collider is a particle accelerator near Geneva, Switzerland. In broad scope, it is a ring with a 27 kilometer circumference. Hadrons (usually protons or heavy ions) move in two counter-circulating beams, which are made to collide at four collision points at various points on the ring. These four collision points correspond to the four detectors placed around the ring: two “general purpose” experiments: ATLAS and CMS; LHCb, focused primarily on flavor physics; and ALICE, focused primarily on heavy ions.

The focus of this thesis is proton-proton collisions at center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$. The process to achieve such collisions proceeds as follows: first, an electric field strips hydrogen of its electrons, creating protons. A linear accelerator, LINAC 2, accelerates protons to

50 MeV. The resulting beam is injected into the Proton Synchrotron Booster (PSB), which pushes the protons to 1.4 GeV, and then the Proton Synchrotron, which brings the beam to 25 GeV.

Protons are then transferred to the Super Proton Synchrotron (SPS), which ramps up the energy to 450 GeV. Finally, the protons enter the LHC itself, bringing the beam up to 6.5 TeV [45].

While there is, of course, much that goes into the Large Hadron Collider development and operation, perhaps two of the most fundamental ideas are (1) how are the beams directed and manipulated and (2) what is meant by “protons are accelerated”. These questions both are directly answered by pieces of hardware, namely (1) magnets and (2) radiofrequency (RF) cavities.

One of fundamental components of the LHC is a large set of superconducting niobium-titanium magnets. These are cooled by liquid helium to achieve superconducting temperatures, and there are several types with very specific purposes. The obvious first question with a circular accelerator is how to keep the particle beam moving around in that circle. This job is done via a set of dipole magnets placed around the *beam pipes*: the tubes containing the beam. These are designed such that the magnetic field in the center of the beam pipe runs perpendicular to the velocity of the charged particles, providing the necessary centripetal force for the synchrotron motion.

A proton beam is not made of a single proton, however, but of many protons, grouped into a series of *bunches*. As all of these are positively charged, if unchecked, these bunches would become diffuse and break apart. What is desired is a stable beam with tightly clustered protons to maximize the chance of a high energy collision. Such clustering is done via a series of quadrupole magnets, with alternating sets of quadrupoles providing the necessary forces for a tight, stable beam. While these are the two major components of the LHC magnet system, it is not the full story – higher order magnets are used to correct for small imperfections in the beam.

Magnetic fields do no work, however, so the magnet system is unable to do the job of the

actual acceleration. This is accomplished via a set of radiofrequency (RF) cavities. Within these cavities, an electric field is made to oscillate (switch direction) at a precise rate. This oscillation creates RF *buckets*, with bunches corresponding to groups of protons that fill a given bucket. The timing is such that protons will always experience an accelerating voltage, corresponding to the 25 ns bunch spacing used at the LHC.

A nice property of this bucket/bunch configuration is that there is some self-correction. There is some finite spread in the grouping of particles. However, if a particle arrives too early, it will experience a decelerating voltage; if too late, it will experience a higher accelerating voltage.

3.1.1 The LHC Schedule

The physics program at the Large Hadron Collider is split into a variety of data taking periods called *runs*. these runs correspond to various detector/accelerator configurations, and are interspersed with *long shutdowns* – periods used for detector/accelerator upgrades in preparation for the next run. The LHC timeline is as follows [46, 47]:

1. Run 1 (2010–2013): First run of the LHC, operating at center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV, increased to 8 TeV in 2012. ATLAS recorded 4.57 fb^{-1} and 20.3 fb^{-1} of data usable for physics at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV and 8 TeV respectively.
2. Long Shutdown 1 (LS1; 2013–2015): Upgrades to accelerator complex, magnet system, to allow for increase in energy. Design energy was $\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV, delays in “training” of superconducting magnets led to decrease to $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV.
3. Run 2 (2015–2018): Second run of the LHC, operating at center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV. Data from this run is used in this thesis, with 139 fb^{-1} of data available for physics from the ATLAS experiment.
4. Long Shutdown 2 (LS2; 2019–2021): Upgrades to ATLAS muon spectrometer (New

Small Wheel), liquid argon calorimeter; upgrades in preparation for the High Luminosity LHC (HL-LHC).

5. Run 3 (2021–2023?): Third run of the LHC, target center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} = 13 - 14 \text{ TeV}$, total target luminosity 300 fb^{-1} .
6. Long Shutdown 3 (LS3; 2024?–2026?): Further upgrades for the HL-LHC.
7. Run 4, 5, ... (2026? onward): High Luminosity LHC – goal is to achieve instantaneous luminosities by a factor of five, massively enlarging available statistics for physics. Projected $3000 \text{ to } 4000 \text{ fb}^{-1}$, > 20 times the full Run 2 ATLAS dataset.

3.2 The ATLAS Experiment

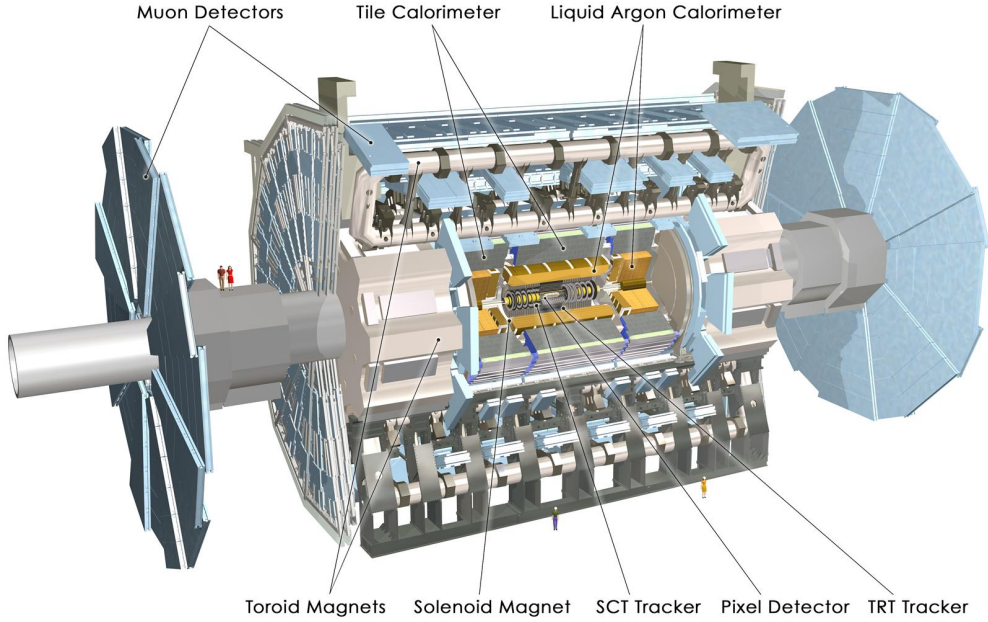


Figure 3.1: Diagram of the ATLAS detector [48]

This thesis focuses on searches done with the ATLAS experiment. As mentioned, this is

one of two “general purpose” experiments at the LHC, meaning that there is a very large and broad variety of physics done within the experimental collaboration. This broad physics focus has a direct relation to the design of the ATLAS detector [49], pictured in Figure 3.1, which is composed of a sophisticated set of subsystems designed to fully characterize the physics of a given high energy particle collision. It consists of an inner tracking detector surrounded by a thin superconducting solenoid, electromagnetic and hadronic calorimeters, and a muon spectrometer incorporating three large superconducting toroidal magnets. The ATLAS detector covers nearly the entire solid angle around the collision point, fully characterizing the “visible” components of a collision and allowing for indirect sensitivity to particles that do not interact with the detector (e.g. neutrinos) via “missing” energy (roughly momentum balance). The design and physics contribution of each of the detector components is described in the following. A schematic of how various particles interact with the detector is shown in Figure 3.2.

3.2.1 ATLAS Coordinate System

Of relevance for the following discussion, as well as for the analysis presented in Chapters 6 through 10, is the ATLAS coordinate system. ATLAS uses a right-handed coordinate system with its origin at the nominal interaction point (IP) in the center of the detector and the z -axis along the beam pipe. The x -axis points from the IP to the center of the LHC ring, and the y -axis points upwards. Cylindrical coordinates (r, ϕ) are used in the transverse plane, ϕ being the azimuthal angle around the z -axis. The pseudorapidity is defined in terms of the polar angle θ as $\eta = -\ln \tan(\theta/2)$. Angular distance is measured in units of $\Delta R \equiv \sqrt{(\Delta\eta)^2 + (\Delta\phi)^2}$. These coordinates are shown in Figure 3.3.

3.2.2 Inner Detector

The purpose of the inner detector is the reconstruction of the trajectory of charged particles, called *tracking*. This is accomplished primarily through the collection of electrons displaced when a charged particle passes through a tracking detector. By setting up multiple layers of

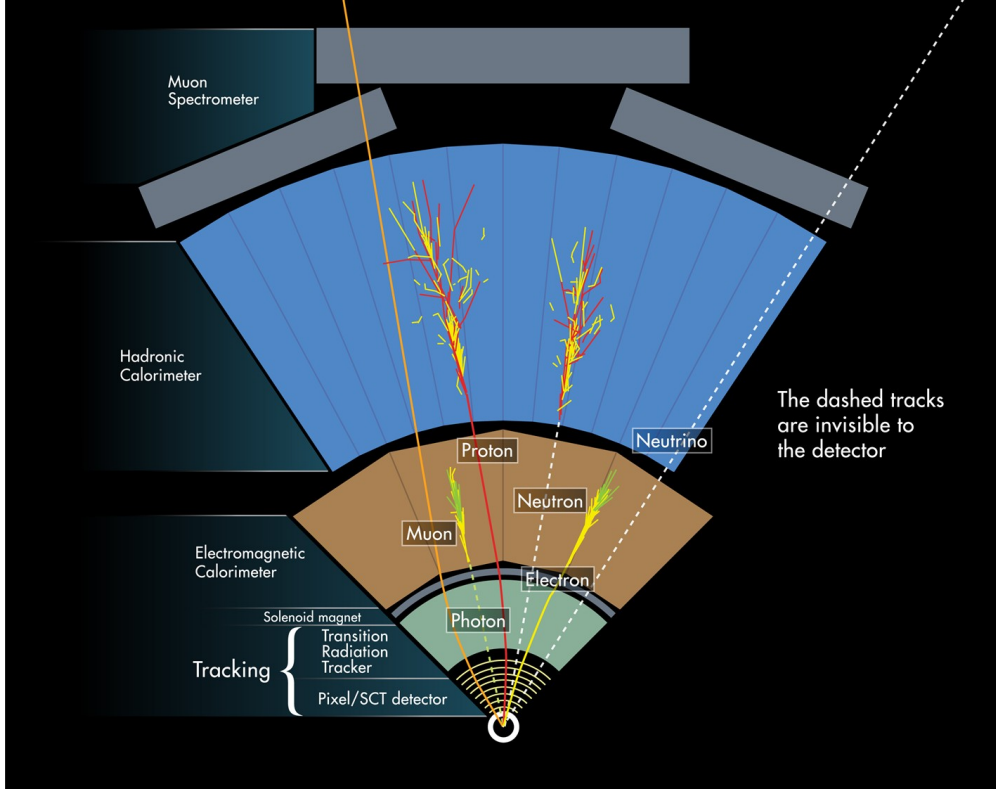


Figure 3.2: Cross section of the ATLAS detector showing how particles interact with various detector components [50]

such detectors, such that a given particle leaves a signature, known as a “hit”, in each layer, the trajectory of the particle may be inferred via “connecting the dots” between these hits.

The raw trajectory of a particle only provides positional information. However, the trajectory of a charged particle in a known magnetic field additionally provides information on particle momentum and charge via the curvature of the corresponding track (cf. $\vec{F} = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$). The inner detector system is therefore surrounded by a solenoid magnet, providing a 2 T magnetic field along the z -axis (yielding curvature in the transverse $x - y$ plane).

The inner detector provides charged particle tracking in the range $|\eta| < 2.5$ via a series of detector layers. The innermost of these is the high-granularity silicon pixel detector which typically provides four measurements per track, with the first hit in the insertable B-layer

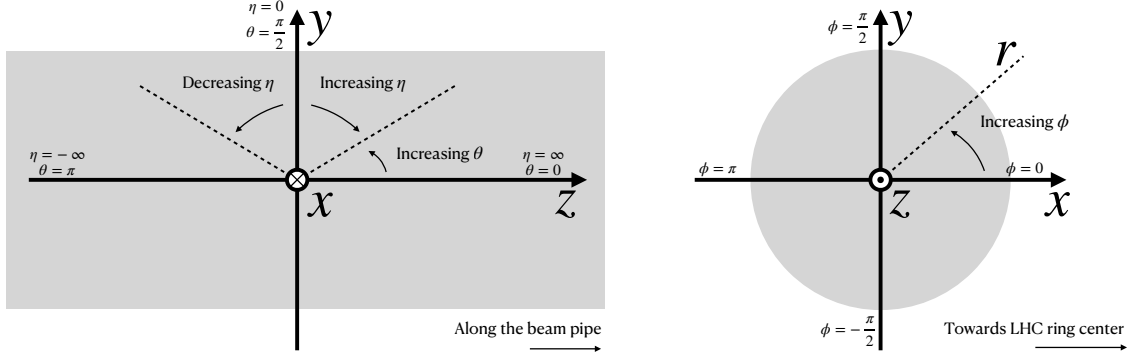


Figure 3.3: 2D projections of the ATLAS coordinate system

(IBL) installed before Run 2 [51, 52]. This is very close to the interaction point with a high degree of positional information, and is therefore very important for e.g. b -tagging (see Chapter 5). It is followed by the silicon microstrip tracker (SCT), which usually provides eight measurements per track. This is lower granularity, but similar in concept to the pixel detector.

Both of these silicon detectors are complemented by the transition radiation tracker (TRT), which extends the radial track reconstruction within the range $|\eta| < 2.0$. This is a different design, composed of *drift tubes*, i.e. straws filled with Xenon gas with a wire in the center, but similarly collects electrons displaced by ionizing particles. In addition, the TRT includes materials with widely varying indices of refraction, which leads to the production of transition radiation, namely radiation produced by a charged particle passing through an inhomogeneous medium. The energy loss on such a transition is proportional to the Lorentz factor $\gamma = E/m$ – correspondingly, lighter particles (e.g. electrons) tend to lose more energy and emit more photons compared to heavier particles (e.g. pions). In the detector, this corresponds to a larger fraction of hits (typically 30 in total) above a given

high energy-deposit threshold for electrons, providing particle identification information.

3.2.3 Calorimeter

Surrounding the inner detector in ATLAS is the calorimeter. The principle of the calorimeter is to completely absorb the energy of a produced particle in order to measure it. However, a pure block of absorber does not provide much information about the particle interaction with the material. The ATLAS calorimeter therefore has a *sampling calorimeter* structure, namely, layers of absorber interspersed with layers of sensitive material, giving the calorimeter “stopping power” while allowing detailed measurement of the resulting particle shower and corresponding deposited energy.

The ATLAS calorimeter system covers the pseudorapidity range $|\eta| < 4.9$, and is primarily composed of two components, an electromagnetic calorimeter, designed to measure particles which primarily interact via electromagnetism (e.g. photons and electrons), and a hadronic calorimeter, designed to measure particles which interact via the strong force (e.g. pions, other hadrons). These differences are further described in Section 3.2.6.

In ATLAS, the electromagnetic calorimeter covers the region of $|\eta| < 3.2$, and uses lead for the absorbers and liquid-argon for the sensitive material. It is high granularity and, geometrically, has two components: the “barrel”, which covers the cylindrical body of the detector volume and the “endcap”, covering the ends. An additional thin liquid-argon presampler covers $|\eta| < 1.8$ to correct for energy loss in material upstream of the calorimeters.

The hadronic calorimeter is composed of alternating steel and plastic scintillator tiles, segmented into three barrel structures within $|\eta| < 1.7$, in addition to two copper/liquid-argon endcap calorimeters.

The solid angle coverage is completed with forward copper/liquid-argon and tungsten/liquid-argon calorimeter modules optimized for electromagnetic and hadronic energy measurements respectively.

3.2.4 Muon Spectrometer

While muons interact electromagnetically, they are around 200 times heavier than electrons ($m_\mu = 106 \text{ MeV}$, while $m_e = 0.510 \text{ MeV}$). Therefore, electromagnetic interactions with absorbers in the calorimeter are not sufficient to stop them, and, as they do not interact via the strong force, hard scattering with nuclei is rare. A dedicated system for muon measurements is therefore required.

The muon spectrometer (MS) is the outermost layer of ATLAS and is designed for this purpose. It is composed of three parts: a set of triggering chambers, which detect if there is a muon and provide a coordinate measurement, in conjunction with high-precision tracking chambers, which measure the deflection of muons in a magnetic field to measure muon momentum, similar to the inner detector solenoid. The magnetic field is generated by the superconducting air-core toroidal magnets, with a field integral between 2.0 and 6.0 T m across most of the detector. The toroid magnetic field runs roughly in a circle in the $x - y$ plane around the beam line, leading to muon curvature along the z-axis.

The precision tracking system covers the region $|\eta| < 2.7$ via three layers of monitored drift tubes, and is complemented by cathode-strip chambers in the forward region, where the background is highest. The muon trigger system covers the range $|\eta| < 2.4$ with resistive-plate chambers in the barrel, and thin-gap chambers in the endcap regions.

3.2.5 Triggering

During a typical run of the LHC, there are roughly 1 billion collisions in ATLAS per second (1 GHz), corresponding to a 40 MHz bunch crossing rate [53]. Saving the information from all of them is not only unnecessary, but infeasible. The ATLAS trigger system provides a sophisticated set of selections to filter the collision data and only keep those collision events useful for downstream analysis.

These events are selected by the first-level trigger system, which is implemented in custom hardware, and accepts events at a rate below 100 kHz. Selections are then made by algorithms

implemented in software in the high-level trigger [54], reducing this further, and, in the end, events are recorded to disk at much more manageable rate of about 1 kHz.

An extensive set of ATLAS software [55] is open source, including the software used for real and simulated data reconstruction and analysis and that used in the trigger and data acquisition systems of the experiment.

3.2.6 Particle Showers and the Calorimeter

The design of the ATLAS detector is directly tied to the physics it is trying to detect. Of these, possibly the most non-trivial distinction is in the calorimeter design. It is therefore useful to discuss in more detail the various properties of electromagnetic and hadronic interactions with material, and how these correspond to the particle showers measured by the detector described above.

Electromagnetic showers in ATLAS predominantly occur via bremsstrahlung, or “braking radiation”, and electron-positron pair production. This proceeds roughly as follows: an electron entering a material is deflected by the electromagnetic field of a heavy nucleus. This results in the radiation of a photon. That photon produces an electron-positron pair, and the process repeats, resulting in a shower structure. At each step, characterized by *radiation length*, X_0 , the number of particles approximately doubles and the average particle energy decreases by approximately a factor of two. An illustration of this process is shown in Figure 3.4.

Note that bremsstrahlung and pair production only dominate in specific energy regimes, with other processes taking over depending on particle energy. For electrons, bremsstrahlung only dominates for higher energies, as low energy electrons will form ions with the atoms of the material. The point where the rates for the two processes are equal is called the *critical energy*, and is roughly

$$E_c \approx \frac{800 \text{ MeV}}{Z} \quad (3.1)$$

where Z is the nuclear charge. From a similar analysis of rates, it can be seen that the

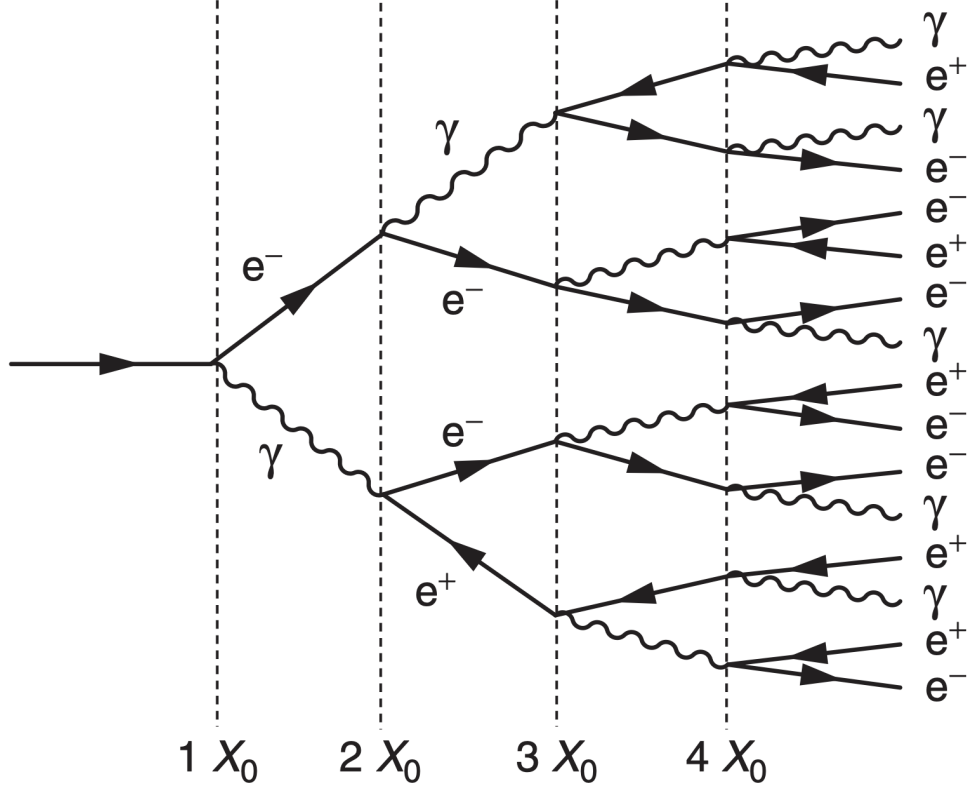


Figure 3.4: Illustration of electromagnetic showering. Repeated bremsstrahlung and electron-positron pair production result in a shower structure in which the number of particles approximately doubles every radiation length, X_0 . Figure taken from [8].

bremsstrahlung rate is inversely proportional to the square of the mass of the particle. This explains why muons do not shower in a similar way, as the rate of bremsstrahlung is suppressed by $(m_e/m_\mu)^2$ relative to electrons.

For lead, the absorber used for the ATLAS electromagnetic calorimeter, which has $Z = 82$, this critical energy is therefore around 10 MeV. Electrons resulting from LHC collisions are of a 1.3×10^3 GeV scale. With the approximation of a reduction in particle energy by a factor of two every radiation length, the number of radiation lengths before the critical energy is

reached is

$$x = \frac{\ln(E/E_c)}{\ln 2} \quad (3.2)$$

such that for a 100 GeV shower in lead, $x \sim 13$. The radiation length for lead is around 0.56 cm, such that an electromagnetic shower could be expected to be captured within 10 cm of lead.

Electromagnetic showers are therefore characterized by depositing much of their energy within a small region of space. As shown below (Chapter 4), though electromagnetic showering is not deterministic, the large number of particles and the restricted set of processes involved means that the shower development as a whole is very similar between individual electromagnetic showers of the same energy.

For completeness, note as well that pair production dominates for photons of energy greater than around 10 MeV, whereas for lower energies (below around 1 MeV), the photoelectric effect, namely atomic photon absorption and electron emission, dominates.

Hadronic showers are distinguished by the fact that they interact strongly with atomic nuclei. They are correspondingly more complex because (1) they involve a wider variety of processes than electromagnetic showers, and (2) these processes have a wide variety of associated length scales. Because these are heavier than electrons (e.g. protons and charged pions) bremsstrahlung is suppressed, but ionization interactions with the electrons will cause these particles to lose energy as they pass through the material. Hadronic showering occurs on interaction with atomic nuclei. This may lead to production of, e.g. both charged ($\pi^\pm$) and neutral (π^0) pions. The π^0 lifetime is much much shorter than that of the charged pions (around a factor of 10^8), and immediately decays to two photons, starting an electromagnetic shower, as described above. The longer lived $\pi^\pm$ travel further in the detector before experiencing another strong interaction with more particles produced, also with varying lifetimes and decay properties.

It is therefore immediately apparent that hadronic showers are more complex than electromagnetic ones (electromagnetic showers can be a subset of the hadronic!), and therefore much more variable from shower to shower. The length scales involved are also significantly

larger due to the reliance on nuclear interactions, characterized by length λ_I , which is around 17 cm for iron (used in the ATLAS hadronic calorimeter). This motivates the calorimeter design, and results in the properties demonstrated in Figure [3.2](#).

Chapter 4

SIMULATION

Simulated physics samples are a core piece of the physics output of the Large Hadron Collider, providing a map from a physics theory into what is observed in our detector. This is crucial for searches for new physics, where simulation is necessary to describe what a given signal model looks like, but also extremely valuable for describing the physics of the Standard Model, providing detailed predictions of background processes for use in everything from designing simple cuts to training multivariate discriminators. Broadly, simulation can be split into two stages: *event generation*, in which physics theory is used to generate a description of particles present after a proton-proton collision, and *detector simulation*, which passes this particle description through a simulation of the detector material, providing a view of the physics event as it would be seen in ATLAS data. Such simulation is often called Monte Carlo in reference to the underlying mathematical framework, which relies on random sampling.

4.1 Event Generation

A variety of tools are used to simulate various aspects of event generation. One such aspect is generation of the “hard scatter” event, i.e., two protons collide and some desired physics process happens. In practice, this is not quite as simple as two quarks or gluons interacting. Protons are composed of three “valence” quarks with various momenta interacting with each other via exchange of gluons, but also a sea of virtual gluons which may decay into other quarks. A hard scatter event is therefore characterized by the corresponding particle level diagrams, but additionally by a set of *parton distribution functions* (PDFs), which describe the probability to find constituent quarks or gluons at carrying various momenta at a given energy scale (often written Q^2). Such PDFs are measured experimentally (see, e.g. [56])

and the selection of a “PDF set” and a given physics process characterizes the hard scatter. Depending on the model being considered and the particular theoretical constraints, processes are often simulated at either leading (LO) or next to leading order (NLO), corresponding to the order of the perturbative expansion (i.e. tree level or 1 loop diagrams). Various additional tools are developed for such NLO calculations, including POWHEG BOX v2 [57–59], which is used for this thesis. MADGRAPH [60] is used in this thesis for leading order simulation.

The hard scatter is not the only component of a given collider event, however. Incoming and outgoing particles are themselves very energetic and may radiate particles along their trajectory. In particular, gluons, which have a self-interaction term as described in Chapter 1, may be radiated, which subsequently themselves radiate gluons or decay to quarks which can also radiate gluons, in a whole mess of QCD that both contributes to the particle content of a collider event and is not directly described by the hard scatter. This cascade, called a *parton shower*, has a dedicated set of simulation tools. For this thesis, HERWIG 7 [61][62] and PYTHIA 8 [63] are used, which interface with tools such as MADGRAPH for simulation.

Due to color confinement (Chapter 1), quarks and gluons cannot be observed free particles, but rather undergo a process called hadronization, in which they are grouped into colorless hadrons (e.g. *mesons*, consisting of one quark and one anti-quark). In simulation, this is also handled with tools such as HERWIG 7 or PYTHIA 8.

The physics of b -quarks is quite important for a variety of searches for new physics and measurements of the Standard Model, including this thesis work. Correspondingly, the decay of “heavy flavor” particles (e.g. B and D mesons, containing b and c quarks respectively) has been very well studied, and a dedicated simulation tool, EVTGEN [64], is used for such processes.

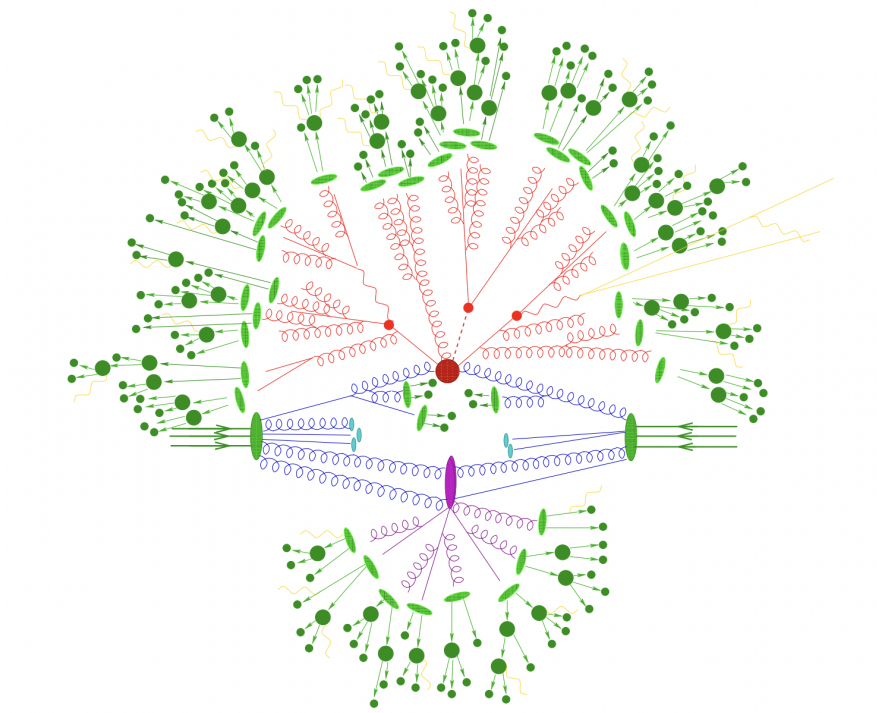


Figure 4.1: Schematic diagram of the Monte Carlo simulation of a hadron-hadron collision. The incoming hadrons are the green blobs with the arrows on the left and right, with the red blob in the center representing the hard scatter event, and the purple representing a secondary hard scatter. Radiation from both incoming and outgoing particles is shown, and the light green blobs represent hadronization, with the outermost dark green circles corresponding to the final state hadrons. Yellow lines are radiated photons. [65]

4.2 Detector Simulation

Event generation provides a full and exact description of the particle content of a given collider event. This description is useful, but is an artifact of the simulation – for real physics events, we must rely on the information collected by sophisticated detectors (Chapter 3) to make statements about the physics content of collider events. The simulation of how particles interact with the physical detector and of the corresponding information that is collected is therefore a necessary step of physics simulation at the LHC. The design and components of the ATLAS detector are described in Chapter 3. Simulation of this detector quickly becomes complicated – there are a variety of different materials and sub-detectors, each with particular configurations and resolutions. Interactions of particles with the detector materials can cause showering, and such showers must be simulated and characterized.

In ATLAS, the GEANT4 [66] simulation toolkit is used for detailed simulation of the ATLAS detector, often referred to as *full simulation*. The method can be thought of as proceeding step by step as a particle moves through the detector, simulating the interaction of the material at each stage, and following each branch of each resulting shower with a similarly detailed step by step simulation.

This type of simulation is very computationally intensive, especially in the calorimeter, which has a high density of material, leading to an extremely large set of material interactions to simulate. There is correspondingly a large effort within ATLAS to develop techniques to decrease the computational load – these techniques will be of increasing importance for Run 3 and the HL-LHC, which will have increased computational need due to the high complexity and large volume of collected physics events, along with the corresponding set of simulated physics events [67]. The divergence of the baseline computing model from the projected computing budget is shown in Figure 4.2.

The fast simulation used for this thesis, AtlFast-II [70], is one such technique, which uses a parametrized simulation of the calorimeter, called FastCaloSim, in conjunction with full simulation of the inner detector, to achieve an order of magnitude speed up in simulation

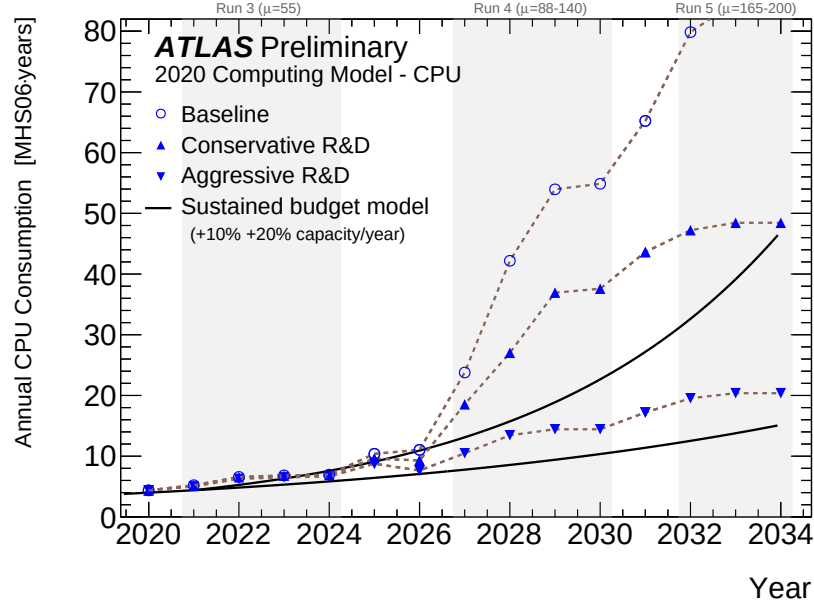


Figure 4.2: The projected ATLAS computational requirements for Run 3 and the HL-LHC relative to the projected computing budget. Aggressive R&D is required to keep resources within budget [68]. y -axis units are MHS06 $\cdot$ years, where HS06 is a high energy physics specific CPU performance benchmark [69].

time. This parametrized simulation uses a simplified detector geometry, in conjunction with a simulation of particle shower development based on statistical sampling of distributions from fully simulated events, to massively speed up simulation time and computational load.

Such a speed up comes at a bit of a cost in performance. In particular, the modeling of jet substructure (see Chapter 5) historically has been an issue for FastCaloSim. The ATLAS authorship qualification work supporting this thesis is an effort to improve such modeling, and is part of a suite of updates being considered for a new fast simulation targeting Run 3. This work is briefly described in the following.

4.3 Correlated Fluctuations in FastCaloSim

A variety of developments have been made to FastCaloSim, improving on the version used for AtlFast-II. This new fast calorimeter simulation [71] is largely based on two components: one which describes the *total energy* deposited in each calorimeter layer as a shower moves from the interaction point outward, and one which describes the *shape*, i.e., the pattern of energy deposits, of a shower in each respective calorimeter layer. Both methods are parametrizations of the full simulation, and therefore are considered to be performing well if they are able to reproduce corresponding full simulation distributions. Of course, directly sampling from a library of showers would identically reproduce such distributions – however a statistical sampling of various shower *properties* provides much more generality in the simulation.

For the simulation of total energy in each given layer, the primary challenge is that such energy deposits are highly correlated. The new FastCaloSim thus relies on a technique called Principal Component Analysis (PCA) [72] to de-correlate the layers, aiding parametrization.

The PCA chain transforms N energy inputs into N Gaussians and projects these Gaussians onto the eigenvectors of the corresponding covariance matrix. This results in N de-correlated components, as the eigenvectors are orthogonal. The component of the PCA decomposition with the largest corresponding eigenvalue is then used to define bins, in which showers demonstrate similar patterns of energy deposition across the calorimeter layers. To further de-correlate the inputs, the PCA chain is repeated on the showers within each such bin. This full process is reversed for the particle simulation. A full description of the method can be found in [71].

Modeling of the lateral shower shape makes use of 2D histograms filled with GEANT4 hit energies in each layer and PCA bin. Binned in polar $\alpha - R$ coordinates in a local plane tangential to the surface of the calorimeter system, these histograms represent the spatial distribution of energy deposits for a given particle shower. Such histograms are constructed for a number of GEANT4 events, and the histograms for each event are normalized to total energy deposited in the given layer. The average of these histograms is then taken (what is

called here the “average shape”).

In simulation, these average shape histograms are used as probability distributions, from which a finite number of equal energy hits are drawn. This finite drawing of hits induces a statistical fluctuation about the average shape which is tuned to match the expected calorimeter sampling uncertainty. An example such average shape is shown in Figure 4.3.

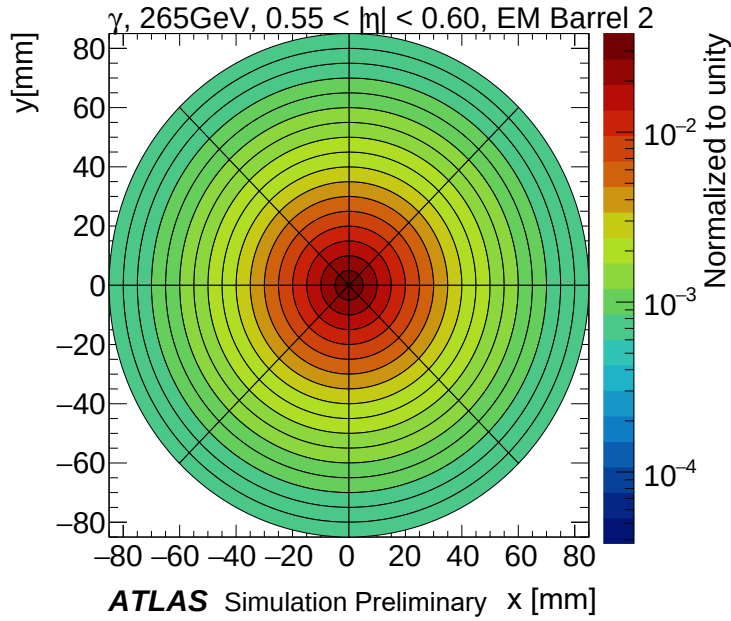


Figure 4.3: Example average lateral shower shape for a 265 GeV photon in the range $0.55 < |\eta| < 0.60$ in the second layer of the EM barrel. The binning shown here is in polar $\alpha - R$ coordinates in a local plane tangential to the surface of the calorimeter system. Such a histogram is used as a probability distribution, from which a finite number of “hits” are drawn [71].

As an example, the intrinsic resolution of the ATLAS Liquid Argon calorimeter has a sampling term of $\sigma_{\text{samp}} \approx 10\%/\sqrt{E}$ [73]. The number of hits to be drawn for each layer, $N_{\text{hits}}^{\text{layer}}$, is thus taken from a Poisson distribution with mean $1/\sigma_{\text{samp}}^2$, where the energy assigned to each hit is then just $E_{\text{hit}} = \frac{E_{\text{layer}}}{N_{\text{hits}}}$. This induces a fluctuation of the order of $10\%/\sqrt{E_{\text{bin}}}$ for

each bin in the average shape.

Figure 4.4 shows a comparison of energy and weta2 [74], defined as the energy weighted lateral width of a shower in the second electromagnetic calorimeter layer, for 16 GeV photons simulated with the new FastCaloSim and with full GEANT4 simulation. The agreement is quite good, with FastCaloSim matching the GEANT4 mean to within 0.3 and 0.03 percent respectively. Similar results are seen for other photon energies and η points.

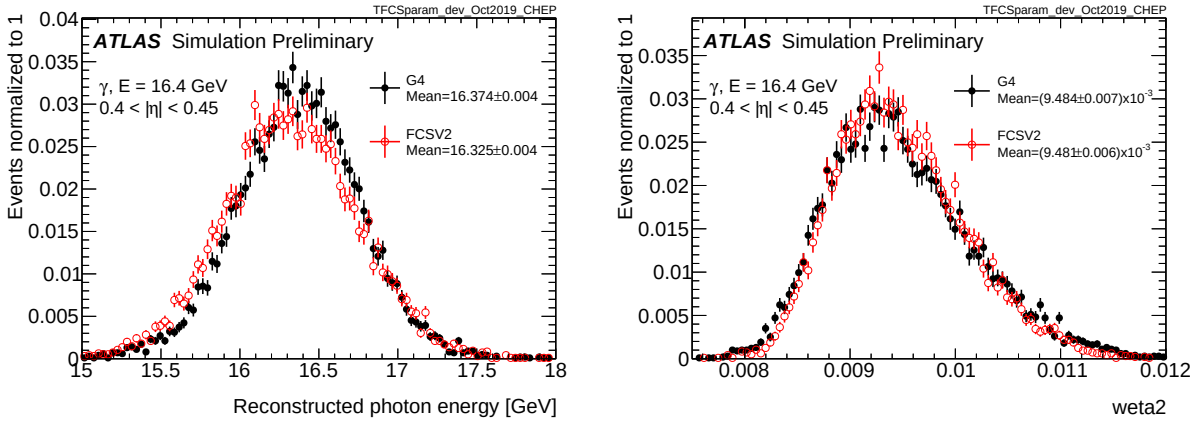


Figure 4.4: Energy and variable weta2, defined as the energy weighted lateral width of a shower in the second electromagnetic calorimeter layer, for 16 GeV photons with full simulation (G4) and FastCaloSimV2 (FCSV2) [71].

4.3.1 Fluctuation Modeling

Figure 4.5 shows the ratio of calorimeter cell energies for single GEANT4 photon and pion events to the corresponding cell energies in their respective average shapes. While the photon event is quite close to the corresponding average, the pion event shows a deviation from the average which is much larger and has a non-trivial structure, reflecting the different natures of electromagnetic and hadronic showering.

While the shape parametrization described above is thus sufficient for describing electromagnetic showers, we will demonstrate below that it is not sufficient for describing hadronic

showers (Figures 4.8 and 4.9). We therefore present and validate methods to improve this hadronic shower modeling. Such methods have been presented as well in [1].

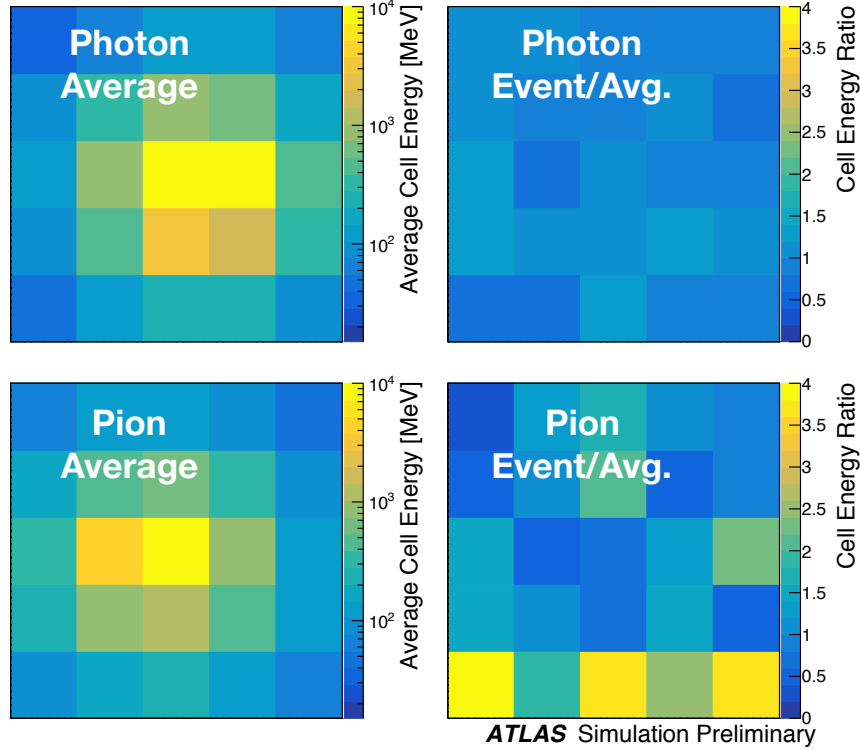


Figure 4.5: Example of photon and pion average shapes in 5×5 calorimeter cells. The left column shows the average shape over a sample of 10000 events, while the right column shows the energy ratio, in each cell, of single GEANT4 events with respect to this average. The photon ratios are all close to 1, while the pion ratios show significant deviation from the average.

Two methods for modeling deviations from the average shape have been studied: (1) a neural network based approach using a Variational Autoencoder (VAE) [75] and (2) a map through cumulative distributions to an n -dimensional Gaussian. With both methods, the shape simulation then proceeds as described in Section 4.3, with the drawing of hits according to the average shape. However, these hits no longer have equal energy, but have

weights applied to increase or decrease their energy depending on their spatial position. This application of weights is designed to mimic a realistic shower structure and to encode correlations between energy deposits.

Both methods are trained on ratios of energy in binned units called voxels. This voxelization is performed in the same polar $\alpha - R$ coordinates as the average shape, with a 5 mm core in R and 20 mm binning thereafter. There are a total of 8 α bins from 0 to 2π and 8 additional R bins from 5 mm to 165 mm. The 5 mm core is filled with the average value of core voxels across the 8 α bins when creating the parametrization. However, during simulation, each of these 8 core bins is treated independently. The outputs of both methods mimic these energy ratios and are used in the shape simulation as the weights described above. In contrast to an approach based on, e.g., calorimeter cells, using voxels allows for flexibility in tuning the binning used in creating the parametrization. Further, due to their relatively large size, using calorimeter cells is subject to “edge effects”, where the splitting of energy between cells has a non-trivial effect on the observed energy ratio. The binning used here is of the order of half of a cell size, mitigating this effect.

The Gaussian method operates by using cumulative distributions to map GEANT4 energy ratios to a multidimensional Gaussian distribution. New events are generated by randomly sampling from this Gaussian distribution.

For the VAE method, a system of two linked neural networks is trained to generate events. The first “encoder” neural network maps input GEANT4 energy ratios to a lower dimensional latent space. A second “decoder” neural network then samples from that latent space and tries to reproduce the inputs. In simulation, events are generated by taking random samples from the latent space and passing them through the trained decoder.

Figure 4.6 shows the distributions of input GEANT4 and Gaussian method generated energy ratios in the grid of voxels. Figure 4.7 shows the correlation coefficient between the center voxel from $\alpha = 0$ to $2\pi/8$ for input GEANT4 and the Gaussian and VAE fluctuation methods. Agreement is good throughout.

Validation of the Gaussian and VAE fluctuation methods was performed within FastCaloSimV2.

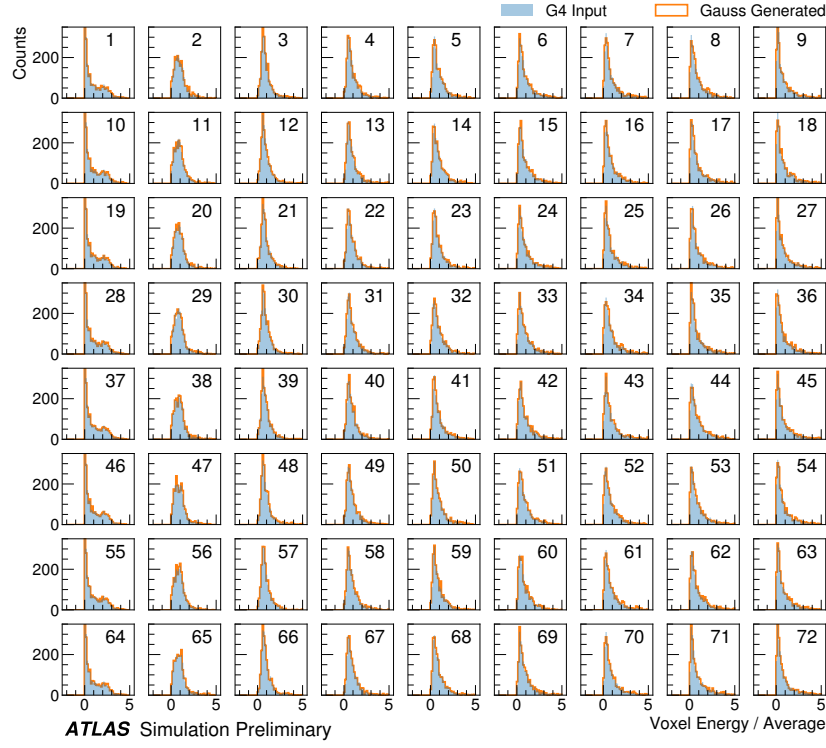


Figure 4.6: Distribution of the ratio of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, with GEANT4 events in blue and Gaussian model events in orange, for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2. Moving top to bottom corresponds to increasing α , left to right corresponds to increasing R , with core voxels numbered 1, 10, 19, Agreement is quite good across all voxels. Results are similar for the VAE method.

Figure 4.8 shows the energy ratio of cells for a given simulation to the corresponding cells in the average shape as a function of the distance from the shower center. The mean for all simulation methods is expected to be around 1, with deviation from the average (the RMS fluctuation) shown by the error bars. The Gaussian method RMS (red) and VAE method RMS (green) both match the GEANT4 RMS (yellow) better than the case without correlated fluctuations (blue) for a variety of energies, η points, and layers, often reproducing 80 – 100 % of the GEANT4 RMS magnitude, compared to the 5 – 30 % observed in the no correlated

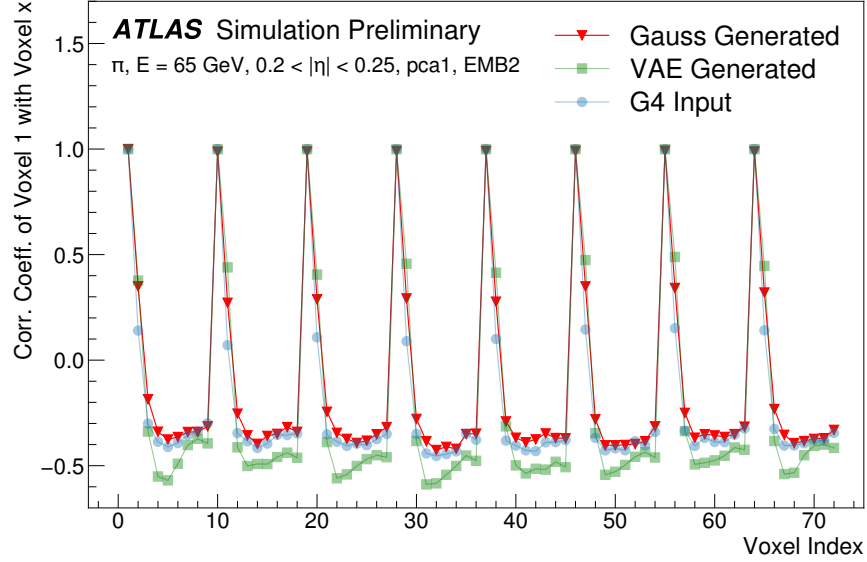


Figure 4.7: Correlation coefficient of ratios of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, examined between the core bin from $\alpha = 0$ to $2\pi/8$ and each of the other voxels. The periodic structure represents the binning in α , and the increasing numbers in each of these periods correspond to increasing R , where the eight points with correlation coefficient 1 are the eight core bins. Both the Gaussian and VAE generated toy events are able to reproduce the major correlation structures for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2.

fluctuations case.

Figure 4.9 shows the result of a simulation with full ATLAS reconstruction for 65 GeV central pions with the Gaussian fluctuation model. Here a *cluster* [76] is defined as a three-dimensional spatial grouping of calorimeter cells which are summed based on the input signals relative to their neighboring cells. The multiplicity, shape, and spatial distribution of such clusters provides a powerful insight on the structure of energy deposits in the calorimeter, and good performance in cluster variables is a promising step towards good performance in the modeling of jet substructure, as these clusters may themselves be summed to form

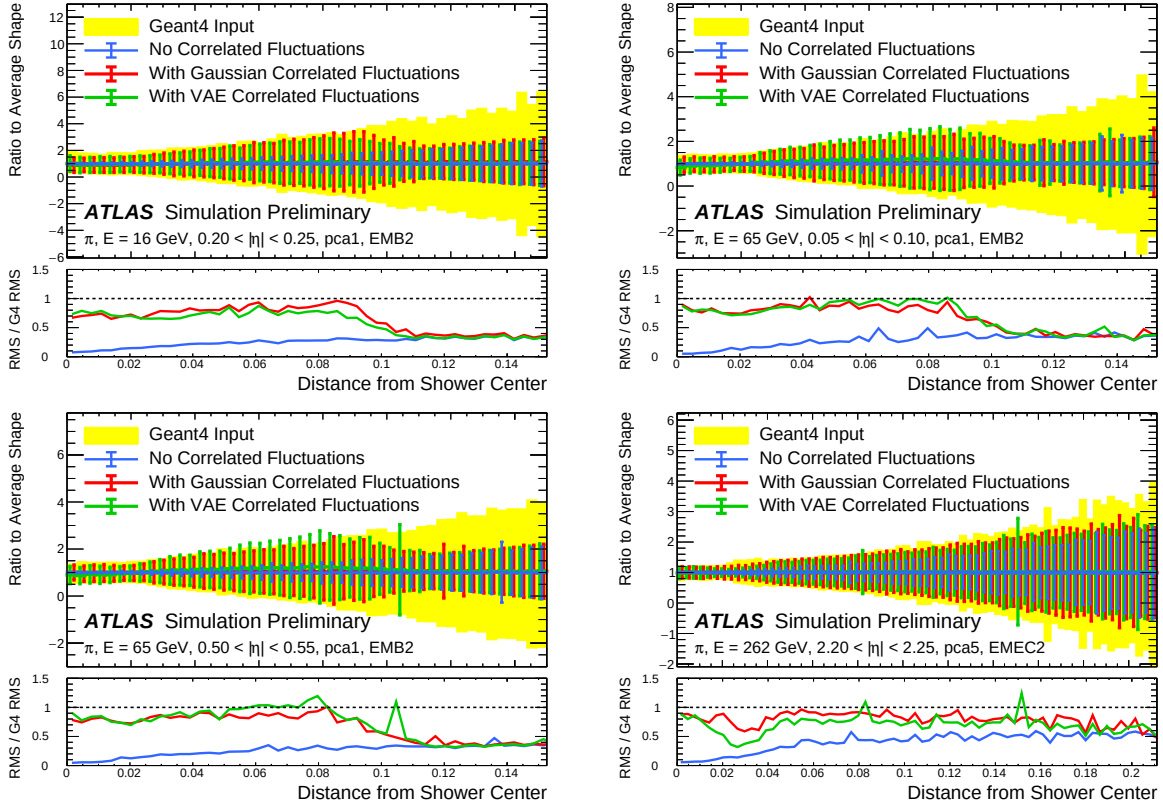


Figure 4.8: Comparison of the RMS fluctuations about the average shape with the Gaussian fluctuation model (red), the VAE fluctuation model (green), and without correlated fluctuations (blue) for a range of pion energies, η points, and layers.

jets (see Chapter 5). The simulation with the Gaussian fluctuation model demonstrates improved modeling of several of these cluster variables relative to baseline FastCaloSimV2, reproducing the distributions of events simulated with GEANT4. These include number and energy of clusters, the 2nd moment in lambda, ($\langle \lambda^2 \rangle$), which describes the square of the longitudinal extension of a cluster, where λ is the distance of a cell from the shower center along the shower axis, and a cluster moment is defined as $\langle x^n \rangle = \frac{\sum E_i x_i^n}{\sum E_i}$, and the distance ΔR , between the cluster and the true pion.

The new fast calorimeter simulation is a crucial part of the future of simulation for the

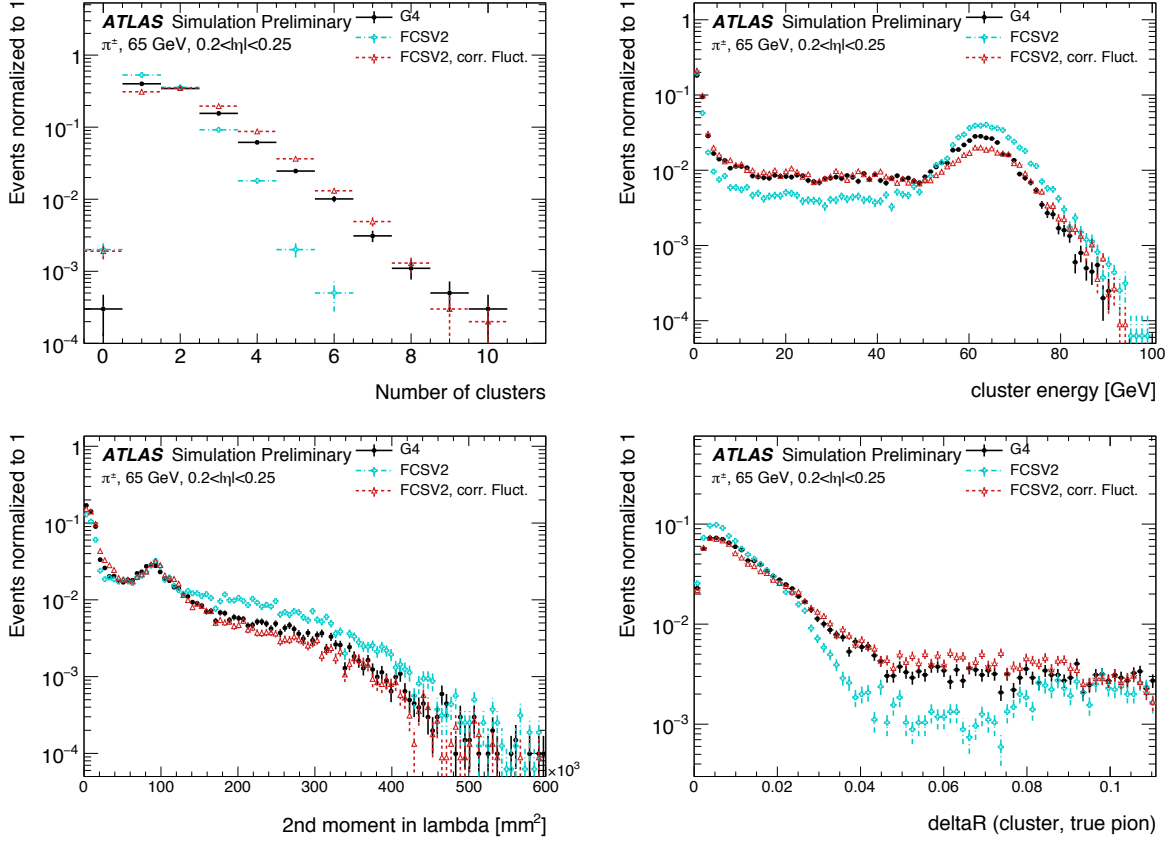


Figure 4.9: Comparison of the Gaussian fluctuation model to the default FCSV2 version and to G4 simulation, using pions of 65 GeV energy and $0.2 < |\eta| < 0.25$. Variables shown relate to calorimeter clusters, three-dimensional spatial groupings of cells [76] which provide powerful insight on the structure of energy deposits in the calorimeter. Variables considered include number and energy of clusters, the 2nd moment in lambda, ($\langle \lambda^2 \rangle$), which describes the square of the longitudinal extension of a cluster, where λ is the distance of a cell from the shower center along the shower axis, and a cluster moment is defined as $\langle x^n \rangle = \frac{\sum E_i x_i^n}{\sum E_i}$, and the distance ΔR , between the cluster and the true pion. With the correlated fluctuations, variables demonstrate improved modeling relative to default FastCaloSimV2.

ATLAS Experiment at the LHC. The per event simulation time of the full detector with GEANT4, calculated over 100 $t\bar{t}$ events, is 228.9 s. Using FastCaloSim for the calorimeter simulation reduces this to 26.6 s, of which FastCaloSim itself is only 0.015 s, with the majority of the remaining simulation time due to GEANT4. Good physics modeling is achieved, and the correlated fluctuations method shows good proof of concept improvement for the modeling of hadronic showers.

4.4 Outlook

There has been significant effort in the community to develop a set of fast simulation tools, with the use of machine learning methods at the forefront of such approaches (e.g. [77], [78]). Most fast simulation approaches generally are based on parametrizations of fully simulated events, but fall into two paradigms - a “by hand” simulation, which focuses on the modeling of individual detector effects, or a fully parametrized simulation, in which a generative model (e.g. a Generative Adversarial Network or Variational Autoencoder) is trained to directly reproduce the input events. Both approaches can be extremely powerful, but each suffer from certain drawbacks. The “by hand” approach offers the advantage of direct encoding of expert knowledge – if an effect needs to be modeled, a new parametrization is introduced. However, by the same token, it requires dedicated parametrizations for each effect. Fully parametrizing the simulation with a generative model offloads this burden onto the network itself. However, by doing so, the ability to use expert knowledge is diminished – the network is required to learn all relevant effects.

The method presented here represents an effort to step towards a hybrid between these two approaches, leveraging the power of machine learning techniques for individual parametrizations within the by hand framework. Such hybrid solutions have the potential to be extremely powerful, and further work on the development of these solutions is an interesting direction of future study.

Chapter 5

RECONSTRUCTION

Chapter 3 discusses how a proton-proton collision may be captured by a physical detector and turned into data that may be stored and analyzed. Chapter 4 discusses the simulation of this same process. At this most basic level, however, the ATLAS detector is only a machine for turning particles into a set of electrical signals, albeit in a very sophisticated, physics motivated way. This chapter discusses the step of turning these electrical signals into objects which may be identified with the underlying physics processes, and therefore used to make statements about what occurred within a given collision event. This process is termed *reconstruction*, and we will focus particularly on jets and flavor tagging, as the most relevant pieces for this thesis work.

5.1 Jets

As discussed in Chapters 3 and 4, the production of particles with color charge from a proton-proton interaction is complicated both by parton showering and by confinement: a quark produced from a hard scatter is not seen as a quark, but rather, as a spray of particles with a variety of hadrons in the final state, which subsequently shower upon interaction with the calorimeter in a complicated way.

For hard scatter electrons, photons, or muons on the other hand, the picture is much clearer: there is no parton showering, and each has a distinct signature in the detector: photons have no tracks and a very localized calorimeter shower, electrons are associated with tracks and are similarly localized in the calorimeter, and muons are associated with tracks, pass through the calorimeter due to their large mass, and leave signatures in the muon spectrometer.

Jets are a tool to deal with the messiness of quarks and gluons. The basic concept is to group the multitude of particles produced by hadronization into a single object. Such an object then has associated properties, including a four-vector, which may be identified with the corresponding initial state particle. In practice a variety of information from the ATLAS detector is used for such a reconstruction. The analysis considered in this thesis uses particle flow jets [79], which combines information from both the tracker and the calorimeter, where the combined objects may be identified with underlying particles. However, jets built from clusters of calorimeter cells [80] as well as from charged particle tracks [81] have also been used very effectively.

A variety of algorithms are used to associate detector level objects to a given jet. The most commonly used in ATLAS is the anti- k_T algorithm [82], which is a successor to the k_T algorithm, among others [83], and develops as follows. Both algorithms are sequential recombination algorithms, which begin with the smallest distance, d_{ij} between considered objects (e.g. particles or intermediate groupings of particles). If d_{ij} is less than a parameter d_{iB} (B for “beam”) object i is combined with object j , the distance d_{ij} is recomputed, and the process repeats. This proceeds until $d_{ij} \geq d_{iB}$, at which point the jet is “complete” and removed from the list of considered objects.

The definitional difference between k_T and anti- k_T is these distance parameters. In general form, these are defined as

$$d_{ij} = \min(p_{Ti}^{2p}, p_{Tj}^{2p}) \frac{\Delta R_{ij}^2}{R^2} \quad (5.1)$$

$$d_{iB} = p_{Ti}^{2p} \quad (5.2)$$

where p_{Ti} is the transverse momentum of object i , ΔR_{ij} is the angular distance between objects i and j , R is a radius parameter, and p controls the tradeoff between the p_T and angular distance terms. For the k_T algorithm $p = 1$; for the anti- k_T algorithm, $p = -1$. This is a simple change, but results in significantly different behavior.

The anti- k_T algorithm can be understood as follows: for a single high p_T particle (p_{T1}) surrounded by a bunch of low p_T particles, the low p_T particles will be clustered with the

high p_T one if

$$d_{1j} = \frac{1}{p_{T1}^2} \frac{\Delta R_{1j}^2}{R^2} < \frac{1}{p_{T1}^2} \quad (5.3)$$

$$\implies \Delta R_{1j} < R. \quad (5.4)$$

Therefore, a single high p_T particle (p_{T1}) surrounded by a bunch of low p_T particles results in a perfectly conical jet. This shape may change with the presence of other high momentum particles, but the key feature of the dynamics is that the jet shape is determined by high p_T objects due to the $\frac{1}{p_T}$ nature of this definition. In contrast, the k_T algorithm results in jets influenced by low momentum particles, which results in a less regular shape. This property, of regular jet shapes determined by high momentum objects, as well as demonstrated good practical performance, makes the anti- k_T algorithm the favored jet algorithm in ATLAS.

Because jets are composed of multiple objects, a useful property of jets is jet *substructure*, that is, acknowledging that jets are composite objects, analyzing the structure of a given jet to infer physics information. This leads to the use of *subjets*; that is, after running jet clustering, often to create a “large-R”, $R = 1.0$ anti- k_T jet, a smaller radius jet clustering algorithm is run within the jet. Subjets are often chosen using the k_T algorithm, which again is sensitive to lower momentum particles, with $R = 0.2$ or 0.3 . For the boosted version of this thesis analysis, such a strategy is used, in which the subjets are *variable radius* and depend on the momentum of the (proto)jet in question. Beyond this thesis work, substructure is used in a large variety of analyses, with a set of associated variables and tools developed for exploiting this structure (e.g. [84]).

5.2 Flavor Tagging

For this this thesis, the physics process being considered is $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$. From the previous section, we know that the standard practice is to identify these b quarks (or, rather, the resulting B hadrons, due to confinement) with jets – in our case, these b -jets are $R=0.4$ anti- k_T particle flow jets (see Chapters 6 and 7). However, not all jets produced at the LHC are from B hadrons; rather, there are a variety of different types of jets corresponding to

different flavors of quarks. These are often classified as light jets (from u , d , or s quarks, or gluons) or as other *heavy flavor* jets, e.g. c -jets, involving c quarks. Distinguishing between these different categories is a very active area of work in ATLAS, termed *flavor tagging*, with much focus on *b-tagging* in particular, that is, the identification of jets from B hadron decays. We here briefly describe the techniques used for flavor tagging in ATLAS.

What distinguishes a b -jet from any other jet? This question is fundamental to the design of the various b -tagging algorithms, and has two major answers: (1) B hadrons have long lifetimes, and (2) B hadrons have large masses. It is most illustrative to compare the B hadron properties to a common light meson, e.g. π^0 , the neutral pion, with quark content $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(u\bar{u} - d\bar{d})$. B hadrons have lifetimes around 1.5 ps, corresponding to a decay length $c\tau \approx 0.45\text{mm}$. In contrast, π^0 has a lifetime of $8.4 \times 10^{-5}\text{ps}$, which is around 20,000 times shorter! Theoretically, this comes from CKM suppression of the b to c transition, which dominates the B decay modes. Experimentally, this difference pops up as shown in Figure 5.1 – light flavor initiated jets decay almost immediately at the proton-proton interaction point, whereas b -jets are distinguished by a displaced secondary vertex, corresponding to the 5 mm decay length calculated above. This displaced vertex falls short of the detector itself, but may be inferred from larger transverse (perpendicular to beam) and longitudinal (parallel to beam) impact parameters of the resulting tracks, termed d_0 and z_0 respectively.

Coming to the mass, B mesons have masses of around 5.2 GeV, whereas the π^0 mass is around 0.134 GeV, (around 40 times lighter). This higher mass gives access to a larger decay phase space, leading to a high multiplicity for b -jets (average of 5 charged particles per decay).

One final distinguishing feature of B hadrons is their *fragmentation function*, a function describing the production of an observed final state. For B hadrons, this is particularly “hard”, with the B hadrons themselves contributing to an average of around 75 % of the b -jet energy. Thus, the identification of b -jets with B hadrons is, in some sense, descriptive.

We have contrasted b -jets and light jets, demonstrating that there are several handles available for making this distinction. c -jets are slightly more similar to b -jets, but the same

handles still apply – c -hadron lifetimes are between 0.5 and 1 ps, a factor of 2 smaller than B hadrons. Their mass is around 1.9 GeV, 2 to 3 times smaller than B hadrons, and c -hadrons contribute to an average of around 55 % of c -jet energy. Therefore, while the gap is slightly smaller, a distinction may still be made.

The ATLAS flavor tagging framework [86] relies on developing a suite of “low-level” taggers, which use a variety of information about tracks and vertices as inputs. The output of these lower level taggers are then fed into a higher level tagger, which aggregates these results into a high level discriminant. Each of these taggers is described below.

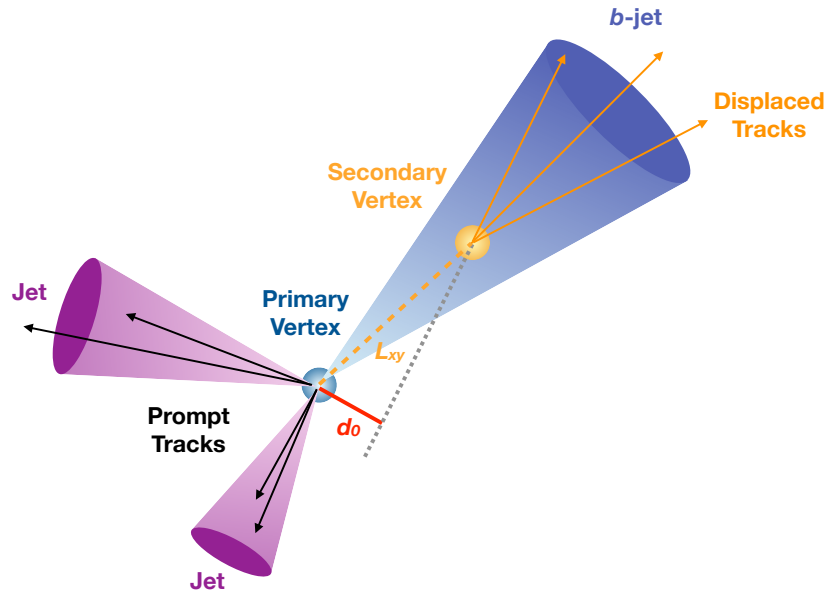


Figure 5.1: Illustration of an interaction producing two light jets and one b -jet in the transverse plane. While the light jets decay “promptly”, coinciding with the primary vertex of the proton-proton interaction, the longer lifetime of B hadrons leads to a secondary decay vertex, displaced from the primary vertex by length L_{xy} . This is typically a few mm, and therefore is not directly visible in the detector, but leads to a large transverse impact parameter, d_0 , for the resulting tracks. [85]

5.2.1 IP2D/3D

IP2D and IP3D are taggers based on the large track impact parameter (IP) nature of B hadron decays. Both are based on histogram templates derived from Monte Carlo simulation, which are used as probability density functions to construct log-likelihood discriminants. IP2D incorporates just the transverse impact parameter information using 1D histogram templates, whereas IP3D uses both transverse and longitudinal impact parameters in a 2D template, which accounts for correlations. Importantly, these are *signed* impact parameters, with sign based on the angle between the impact parameter and the considered jet – positive impact parameters are consistent with a track extrapolation in front of the jet (angle between impact parameter line and jet $< 90^\circ$), and therefore more consistent with tracks originating from a displaced decay.

Rather than using the impact parameters directly, an impact parameter *significance* is used which incorporates an uncertainty on the impact parameter – tracks with a lower uncertainty but the same impact parameter will contribute more in the calculation. This signed significance is what is used to sample from the PDF templates, with the resulting discriminants the sum of probability ratios between given jet hypotheses over tracks associated to a given jet, namely $\sum_{i=1}^N \log \frac{p_b}{p_{light}}$ between b -jet and light jet hypotheses, where p_b and p_{light} are the per-track probabilities. Similar discriminants are defined between b - and c -jets and c and light jets.

5.2.2 SV1

SV1 is an algorithm which aims to find a secondary vertex (SV) in a given jet. Operating on all vertices associated with a considered jet, the algorithm discards tracks based on a variety of cleaning requirements. It then proceeds to first construct all two-track vertices, and then iterates over all the tracks involved in these two track vertices to try to fit a single secondary vertex, which would then be identified with the secondary vertex from the b or c hadron decay. This fit proceeds by evaluating a χ^2 for the association of a track and vertex,

removing the track with the largest χ^2 , and iterating until the χ^2 is acceptable and the vertex has an invariant mass of less than 6 GeV (for consistency with b or c hadron decay).

A variety of discriminating variables may then be constructed, including (1) invariant mass of the secondary vertex, (2) number of tracks associated with the secondary vertex, (3) number of two-track vertices, (4) energy fraction of the tracks associated to the secondary vertex (relative to all of the tracks associated to the jet), and various metrics associated with the secondary vertex position and decay length, including (5) transverse distance between the primary and secondary vertex, (6) distance between the primary and secondary vertex (7) distance between the primary and secondary vertex divided by its uncertainty, and (8) ΔR between the jet axis and the direction of the secondary vertex relative to the primary vertex.

While all eight of these variables are used as inputs to the higher level taggers, the number of two-track vertices, the vertex mass, and the vertex energy fraction are additionally used with 3D histogram templates to evaluate flavor tagging performance by constructing log-likelihood discriminants, similar to the procedure for IP2D/3D.

5.2.3 *JetFitter*

Rather than focusing on a particular aspect of the B hadron or D hadron decay topology (e.g impact parameter or secondary vertex), the third low level tagger, JETFITTER [87], tries to reconstruct the full decay chain, including all involved vertices. This is structured around a Kalman filter formalism [88], and has the strong underlying assumption that all tracks which stem from B and D hadron decay must intersect a common flight path. This assumption provides significant constraints, allowing for the reconstruction of vertices from even a single track, reducing the number of degrees of freedom in the fit, and allowing the use of “downstream” information, e.g., compatibility of tracks with a $B \rightarrow D$ -like decay. The constructed topology, including primary vertex location and B -hadron flight path, is iteratively updated over tracks associated to a given jet, and a variety of discriminating variables related to the resulting topology and reconstructed decay are used as inputs to the high level taggers.

5.2.4 RNNIP

The IP2D and IP3D algorithms rely on per-track probabilities, and the final discriminating variables (and inputs to the higher level taggers) are sums (products) over these independently considered quantities. In practice, however, the tracks are not independent – this is merely a simplifying assumption to allow for the use of a binned likelihood, as treatment of all of the interdependencies in such a framework quickly becomes intractable. To address this issue, a recurrent neural network-based algorithm, RNNIP [89], is used, which takes as input a variety of per-track variables, including the signed impact parameter significances (as in IP3D) as well as track momentum fraction relative to the jet and ΔR between the track and the jet. RNNs are sequence-based, and vectors of input variables corresponding to tracks for a given jet are ordered by magnitude of transverse impact parameter significance and then passed to the network, which outputs class probabilities corresponding to b -jet, c -jet, light-jet, and τ -jet hypotheses. Such a procedure allows the network to learn interdependencies between tracks, improving performance.

5.2.5 MV2 and DL1

Outputs from the above taggers are combined into high level taggers to aggregate all of the information and improve discriminating power relative to the respective individual taggers as, as shown in Figure 5.2. These high level taggers are primarily in two forms: MV2, which uses a Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) for this aggregation, and DL1, which uses a deep neural network. For the baseline versions of these taggers, only inputs from IP2D, IP3D, SV1, and JetFitter are used. The tagger used for this thesis analysis, DL1r, additionally incorporates RNNIP, demonstrating improved performance over the baseline DL1, as shown in Figure 5.3. All high level taggers also include jet p_T and $|\eta|$.

DL1 offers a variety of improvements over MV2. Rather than a single discriminant output, as with MV2, DL1 has a multidimensional output, corresponding to probabilities for a jet to be a b -jet, c -jet, or light jet. This allows the trained network to be used for both b - and c -jet

tagging. The final discriminant for b -tagging with DL1 correspondingly takes the form

$$D_{\text{DL1}} = \ln \left(\frac{p_b}{f_c \cdot p_c + (1 - f_c) \cdot p_{\text{light}}} \right) \quad (5.5)$$

where p_b , p_c , and p_{light} are the output b , c , and light jet probabilities, and f_c corresponds to an effective c -jet fraction, which may be tuned to optimize performance.

DL1 further includes an additional set of JETFITTER input variables relative to MV2 which correspond to c -tagging – notably properties of secondary and tertiary vertices, as would be seen in a $B \rightarrow D$ decay chain.

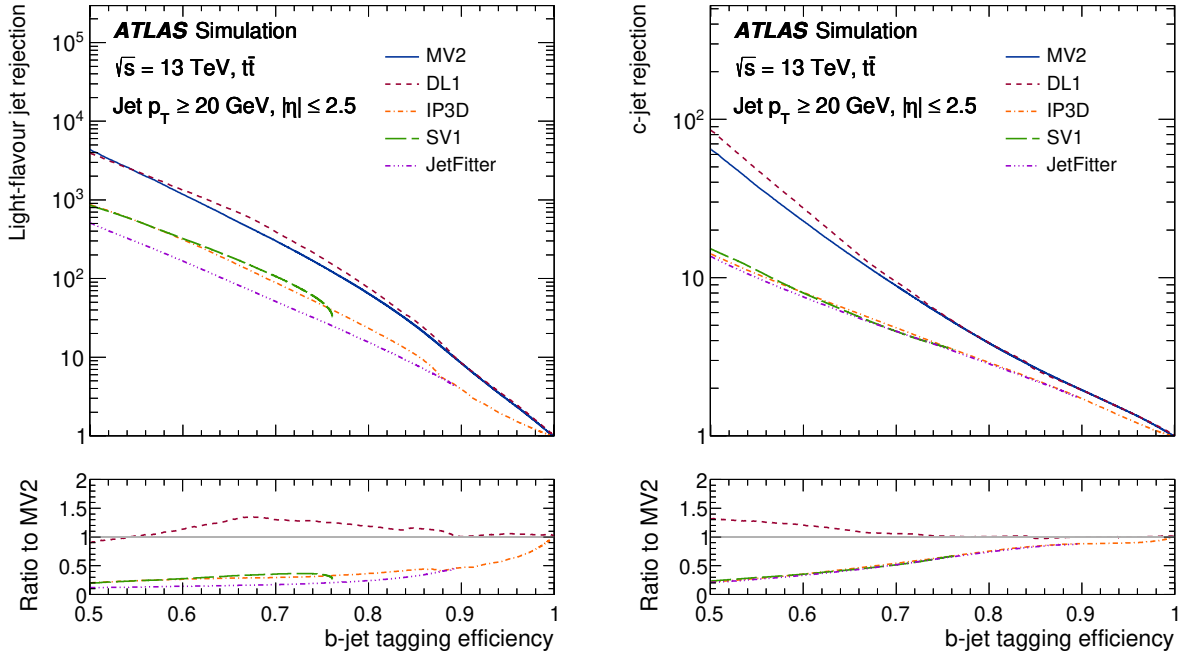


Figure 5.2: Performance of the various low and high level flavor tagging algorithms in $t\bar{t}$ simulation, demonstrating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light and c -jet rejection. The high level taggers demonstrate significantly better performance than any of the individual low level taggers, with DL1 offering slight improvements over MV2 due to the inclusion of additional input variables.

Figure 5.2 shows a comparison of the performance of the various taggers. The b -tagging performance of DL1 and MV2 is found to be similar, with some improvements in light jet and c -jet rejection from the additional variables used in DL1. The performance of these high level taggers additionally is seen to be significantly better than any of the individual low level ones, even in regimes where only a single low level tagger is relevant (such as high b -tagging efficiencies, where SV1 and JETFITTER are limited by selections on tracks entering the respective algorithms).

The inclusion of RNNIP offers a significant improvement on top of baseline DL1, as shown in Figure 5.3, strongly motivating the choice of DL1r for this thesis.

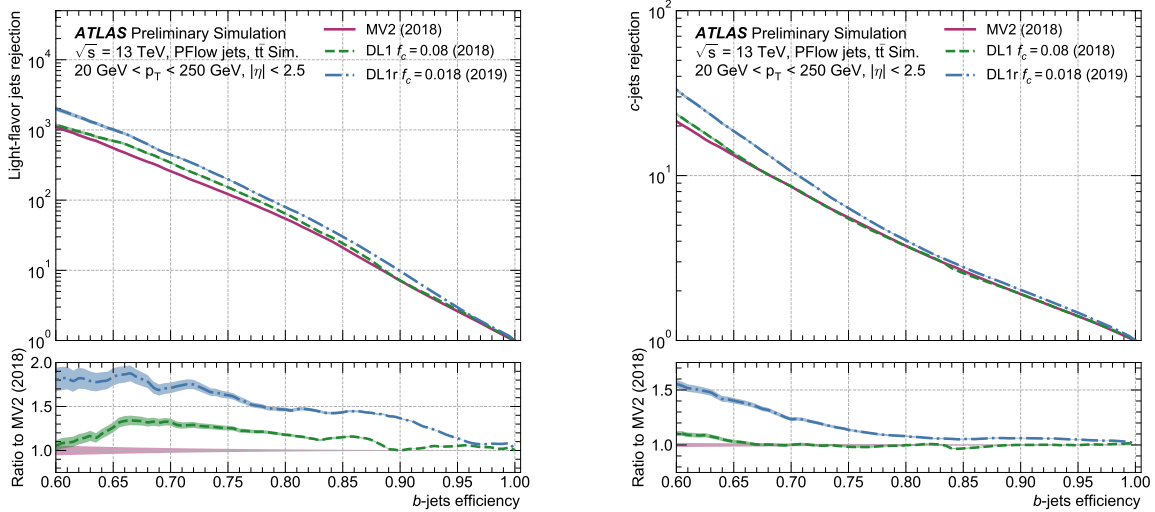


Figure 5.3: Performance of the MV2, DL1, and DL1r algorithms in $t\bar{t}$ simulation, demonstrating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light and c -jet rejection. f_c controls the importance of c -jet rejection in the discriminating variable, and values shown have been optimized separately for each DL1 configuration. DL1r demonstrates a significant improvement in both light and c jet rejection over MV2 and DL1. [90]

5.2.6 *Some Practical Notes*

The b -tagging metrics presented in Figures 5.2 and 5.3 correspond to evaluating a tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light jet and c -jet rejection. In this case, b -jet efficiency is defined such that, e.g. for a 77 % efficiency, 77 % of the real b -jets will be tagged as such. Somewhat counterintuitively, this means that a lower b -jet efficiency corresponds to a more aggressive (“tighter”) selection on the discriminating variable, while a higher b -jet efficiency corresponds to a less aggressive (“looser”) cut (100 % efficiency means no cut). Light and c jet efficiencies are defined similarly, with rejection defined as $1 /$ the corresponding efficiency.

In ATLAS, the respective b -tagging efficiencies are used to define various b -tagging working points. The working point used for the nominal b -jet identification in this thesis is 77 % with DL1r. A loosened (less aggressive) selection at the 85 % working point is additionally used. See Chapter 7 for further details.

Chapter 6

SETTING UP THE $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ ANALYSIS

The following chapters present two complementary searches for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state. Such searches are separated based on the signal models being considered: resonant production, in which a new spin-0 or spin-2 particle is produced and decays to two Standard Model Higgs bosons, and non-resonant production, which is sensitive to the value of the Higgs self-coupling λ_{HHH} . Further information on the theory behind both channels can be found in Chapter 2.

ATLAS has performed a variety of searches for both resonant and non-resonant HH in complementary decay channels, notably for early Run 2 in the $b\bar{b}W^+W^-$ [91], $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ [92], $W^+W^-W^+W^-$ [93], $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ [94], and $W^+W^-\gamma\gamma$ [95] final states, which were combined along with $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ in [26]. ATLAS has also released a variety of full Run 2 results, including boosted $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ [96], VBF $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ [22], $b\bar{b}\ell\nu\ell\nu$ [97], and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ [98].

CMS has also performed searches for production of Higgs boson pairs in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state (among others) for early Run 2 [99] and full Run 2 [100]. A combination of CMS searches in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$, $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$, $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, and $b\bar{b}VV$ channels was performed for early Run 2 in [101].

While the resonant and non-resonant searches presented here face many similar challenges and proceed (in broad strokes) in a very similar manner, separate optimizations are performed to maximize the respective sensitivities for these two very different sets of signal hypotheses. More particularly, resonant signal hypotheses are (1) very peaked in values of the mass of the HH candidate system near the value of the resonance mass considered and (2) considered across a very broad range of signal mass hypotheses. The resonant searches are therefore split into resolved and boosted topologies based on Lorentz boost of the decay products, with the

resolved channel as one of the primary focuses of this thesis. Further, several analysis design decisions are made to allow for sensitivity to a broad range of masses – in particular, though sensitivity is limited at lower values of m_{HH} relative to other channels (see, e.g. Chapter 11) due to the challenging background, retaining and properly reconstructing these low mass events allows the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel to retain sensitivity as low as the kinematic threshold at 250 GeV.

In contrast, non-resonant signal hypotheses are quite broad in m_{HH} , and have a much more limited mass range, with Standard Model production peaking near 400 GeV, and the majority of the analysis sensitivity able to be captured with a resolved topology. Even for Beyond the Standard Model signal hypotheses, which may have more events at low m_{HH} , the non-resonant nature of the production allows the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel to retain sensitivity while discarding much of the challenging low mass background. Such freedom allows for decisions which focus on improved background modeling for the middle to upper HH mass regime, resulting in improved modeling and smaller uncertainties than would be obtained with a more generic approach.

Both searches are presented in the following, with emphasis on particular motivations for, and consequences of, the various design decisions involved for each respective set of signal hypotheses. A comparison of representative signals for both the resonant and non-resonant analyses is shown in Figure 6.1.

The analyses improve upon previous work [2] in several notable ways. The resonant search leverages a Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) based algorithm for the reconstruction of the HH system from the jets considered for the analysis, offering an improved efficiency of that reconstruction over a broad mass spectrum. The non-resonant adopts a different approach, with a simplified algorithm based on the minimum angular distance (ΔR) between jets in a reconstructed Higgs candidate. Such an approach very efficiently discards low mass background events, resulting in an easier to estimate background with reduced systematic uncertainties.

A particular contribution of this thesis is the background estimation, which uses a novel,

neural network based approach to perform a data-driven estimation of the background, which is dominated by QCD processes, for which a sufficient simulation is not available. This new approach offers improved modeling over previous methods, as well as the ability to model correlations between observables. While all aspects of the analysis of course contribute to the final result, the author of this thesis wishes to emphasize that the background estimate, with the corresponding uncertainties and all other associated decisions, really is the core of the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ analysis – the development of this procedure, and all associated decisions, is similarly the core of this thesis work.

This analysis also benefits from improvements to ATLAS jet reconstruction and calibration, and flavor tagging [86]. In particular, this analysis benefits from the introduction of particle flow jets [79]. These make use of tracking information to supplement calorimeter energy deposits, improving the angular and transverse momentum resolution of jets by better measuring these quantities for charged particles in those jets.

The analysis also benefits from the new DL1r ATLAS flavor tagging algorithm. Whereas the flavor tagging algorithm used in the previous analysis (MV2) used a boosted decision tree (BDT) to combine the output of various low level algorithms, DL1r (and the baseline DL1 algorithm) uses a deep neural network to do this combination. In addition to the low level algorithms used as inputs to MV2, DL1 includes a variety of additional variables used for c -tagging. DL1r further incorporates RNNIP, a recurrent neural network designed to identify b -jets using the impact parameters, kinematics, and quality information of the tracks in the jets, while also taking into account the correlations between the track features.

The overall analysis sensitivity further benefits from a factor of 4.6 increase in integrated luminosity.

6.1 Data and Monte Carlo Simulation

Both the resonant and non-resonant searches are performed on the full ATLAS Run 2 dataset, consisting of $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV proton-proton collision data taken from 2016 to 2018 inclusive. Data taken in 2015 is not used due to a lack of trigger jet matching information and b -jet

trigger scale factors¹. The integrated luminosity collected and usable in this analysis² was:

- 24.6 fb⁻¹ in 2016
- 43.65 fb⁻¹ in 2017
- 57.7 fb⁻¹ in 2018

This gives a total integrated luminosity of 126 fb⁻¹. This is lower than the 139 fb⁻¹ ATLAS collected during Run 2 [103] due to the inefficiency described in footnote 2 as well as the 3.2 fb⁻¹ of 2015 data which is unused due to the trigger scale factor issue mentioned above.

In this analysis, Monte Carlo samples are used purely for modelling signal processes. The background is strongly dominated by events produced by QCD multijet processes, which are difficult to correctly model in simulation due to the complexity of the interactions involved (including, e.g. non-perturbative effects), as well as the harsh requirement of four b -tagged jets, which makes it difficult to collect sufficient Monte Carlo statistics. This necessitates the use of a data-driven background modeling technique, which is described in Chapter 8.

The scalar resonance signal model is simulated at leading order in α_s using MADGRAPH [60]. Hadronization and parton showering are done using HERWIG 7 [61][62] with EVTGEN [64], and the nominal PDF is NNPDF 2.3 LO. In practice this is implemented as a two Higgs doublet model where the new neutral scalar is produced through gluon fusion and required to decay to a pair of SM Higgs bosons. The heavy scalar is assigned a width much smaller than detector resolution, and the other 2HDM particles do not enter the calculation.

Scalar samples are produced at resonance masses between 251 and 900 GeV and the detector simulation is done using AtlFast-II [70]. In addition the samples at 400 GeV and 900 GeV are also fully simulated to verify that the use of AtlFast-II is acceptable. For higher

¹These trigger scale factors account for differences in the performance of the b -tagging algorithms between simulation and data, with the jet matching providing a correspondence between the jets in the trigger decision and the jets in the offline analysis

²approximately 9 fb⁻¹ of data was collected but could not be used in this analysis due to an inefficiency in the b -jet triggers at the start of 2016 [102]

masses, as well as for the boosted analysis, samples are produced between 1000 and 5000 GeV, and the detector is fully simulated. As discussed in Chapter 4, an outstanding issue with AtlFast-II is the modeling of jet substructure. While such variables are not used for the resolved analysis, the boosted analysis begins at 900 GeV, motivating the different detector simulation in these two regimes.

The spin-2 resonance signal model is also simulated at LO in α_s using MADGRAPH. Hadronization and parton showering are done using PYTHIA 8 [63] with EVTGEN, and the nominal PDF is NNPDF 2.3 LO. In practice this is implemented as a Randall-Sundrum graviton with $c = 1.0$.

Spin-2 resonance samples are produced at masses between 251 and 5000 GeV, and these samples are all produced with full detector simulation.

For the non-resonant search, samples are produced at values of $\kappa_\lambda = 1.0$ and 10.0, and are simulated using POWHEG BOX v2 generator [57–59] at next-to-leading order (NLO), with full NLO corrections with finite top mass, using the PDF4LHC [104] parton distribution function (PDF) set. Parton showers and hadronization are simulated with PYTHIA 8.

6.2 Triggers

To maximize analysis sensitivity, a combination of multi- b -jet triggers is used. Due to the use of events with two b -tagged jets in the background estimate, such triggers have a maximum requirement of two b -tagged jets. For the resonant analysis, a combination of triggers of various topologies is used, namely

- 2b + HT, which requires two b -tagged jets and a minimum value of H_T , defined to be the scalar sum of p_T across all jets in the event.
- 2b + 2j, which requires two b -tagged jets and two other jets matching some kinematic requirements
- 2b + 1j, which requires two b -tagged jets and one other jet matching some kinematic

requirements

- 1b, which requires one b -tagged jet

Due to minimal contributions from some of these triggers for the Standard Model non-resonant signal, a simplified strategy relying entirely on $2b + 1j$ and $2b + 2j$ triggers is used for the non-resonant search.

While the use of multiple triggers is beneficial for analysis sensitivity, it comes with some complications. Namely, a set of scale factors must be assigned to simulated events to account for differences in trigger efficiency between real and simulated events. Because these scale factors may differ between triggers, the use of multiple triggers becomes complicated: an event may pass more than one trigger, while trigger scale factors are only provided for individual triggers.

To simplify this calculation, a set of hierarchical offline selections is applied, closely mimicking the trigger selection. Based on these selections, events are sorted into categories (*trigger buckets*), after which the decision of a *single trigger* is checked. Note that the set of events which enter the analysis via this trigger category selection must pass both the offline selection as well as the corresponding online trigger selection. Particularly for the $2b$ categories, this means that the explicit requirement of two b -tagged jets is left to the trigger decision itself, with the categorization designed around the other considered objects (non-tagged jets or H_T).

The resonant search applies such categorization in the following way, with selections considered in order:

1. If the leading jet is b -tagged with $p_T > 325$ GeV, the event is in the $1b$ trigger category.
2. Otherwise, if the leading jet is not b -tagged, but has $p_T > 168.75$ GeV, the event is in the $2b + 1j$ trigger category.

3. If neither of the first two selections pass, if the scalar sum of jet p_{Ts} , $H_T > 900 \text{ GeV}$, the event falls into the $2b + HT$ trigger category.
4. Events that do not pass any of the above offline selections are in the $2b + 2j$ trigger category.

Corresponding triggers are then checked in each category, and the final set of events consists of those events that pass the trigger decision in their respective categories.

For the resonant search, the $2b + 1j$ and $2b + 2j$ triggers are the dominant categories, containing roughly 26 % and 49 % of spin-2 events, evaluated on MC16d samples with resonance masses between 300 and 1200 GeV. Notably, the $1b$ trigger efficiency is largest at high ($> 1 \text{ TeV}$) resonance masses.

For the non-resonant search, it was noted that the $1b$ trigger has minimal contribution, while the $2b + HT$ events are largely captured by the $2b + 2j$ trigger. Therefore, a simplified scheme is considered, with selections:

1. If the 1st leading jet has $p_T > 170 \text{ GeV}$ and the 3rd leading jet has $p_T > 70 \text{ GeV}$, the event is in the $2b + 1j$ trigger category.
2. Otherwise, the event is in the $2b + 2j$ trigger category.

The additional cut (on the 3rd leading jet) added here for the $2b + 1j$ category was found to enhance the overall signal yield in the two bucket strategy relative to the single cut on leading jet p_T used for the same category in the resonant strategy.

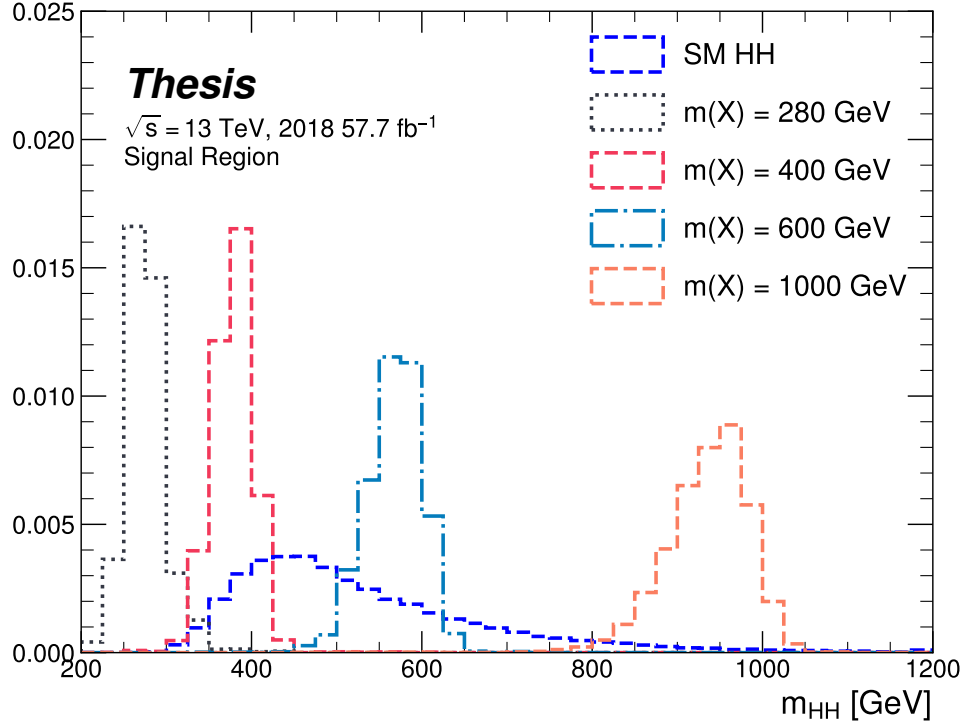


Figure 6.1: Example distributions in invariant mass of the reconstructed di-Higgs system for a variety of spin-0 resonances ($m(X)$) compared to the Standard Model non-resonant signal (SM HH). Both are presented in their respective signal regions, after all corresponding analysis selections. The resonant signals are sharply peaked at values near their respective resonance masses, whereas the non-resonant signal is much more broad. The different character of these different signals informs the analysis design.

Chapter 7

ANALYSIS SELECTION

7.1 Analysis Selection

After the trigger selections of Section 6.2, a variety of selections on the analysis objects are made, with the goal of (1) reconstructing a HH -like topology and (2) suppressing contributions from background processes.

Both analyses begin with a common pre-selection, requiring at least four $R = 0.4$ anti- k_T jets with $|\eta| < 2.5$ and $p_T > 40$ GeV. The $|\eta| < 2.5$ requirement is necessary for b -tagging due to the coverage of the ATLAS tracking detector (see Chapter 3), while the $p_T > 40$ GeV requirement is motivated by the trigger thresholds. A low p_T category, which would include events failing the analysis selection due to this p_T cut, was considered for the non-resonant search, but was found to contribute minimal sensitivity. At least two of the jets passing this pre-selection are required to be b -tagged, and additional b -tagging requirements are made to define the following regions:

- “ $2b$ Region”: require exactly two b -tagged jets, used for background estimation
- “ $4b$ Region”: require at least (but possibly more) four b -tagged jets, used as a signal region for both resonant and non-resonant searches

The non-resonant analysis additionally defines two $3b$ regions:

- “ $3b+1$ loose Region”: require exactly three b -tagged jets which pass the 77 % b -tagging working point (nominal) and one additional jet that fails the 77 % b -tagging working point but passes the *looser* 85 % b -tagging working point. Used as a signal region for the non-resonant search.

- “ $3b+1$ fail Region”: complement of $3b+1$ loose. Require exactly three b -tagged jets which pass the 77 % b -tagging working point, but require that none of the remaining jets pass the 85 % b -tagging working point. Used as a validation region for the non-resonant search.

After these requirements, four jets are chosen, ranked first by b -tagging requirement and then by p_T (e.g. for the $2b$ region, the jets chosen are the two b -tagged jets and the two highest p_T non-tagged jets; for the $4b$ region, the jets are the four highest p_T b -tagged jets). To match the topology of a $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ event, these four jets are then *paired* into *Higgs candidates*: the four jets are split into two sets of two, and each of these pairs is used to define a reconstructed object that is a proxy for a Higgs in a HH event. The four-vectors of these reconstructed objects may then be used for a variety of selections which check the consistency of the reconstructed HH system with the expected HH signal kinematics. Kinematic quantities corresponding to each Higgs candidate are denoted with subscripts $H1$ and $H2$ for leading and subleading Higgs candidates respectively (e.g. m_{H1} and m_{H2} for the Higgs candidate masses).

For four jets there are three possible pairings of jets into Higgs candidates. For signal events, a correct pairing can be identified (provided all necessary jets pass pre-selection) using the truth information of the Monte Carlo simulation, and such information may be used to design/select an appropriate pairing algorithm. This is only part of the story, however. The vast majority of the events in data do *not* include a real HH decay (this is a search for a reason!), either because the event originates from a background process (e.g. for $4b$ events), or because the selection is not designed to maximize the signal (e.g. $2b$ events). As the pairing is part of the selection, it must still be run on such events, such that various algorithms which achieve similar performance in terms of pairing efficiency may have vastly different impacts in terms of the shape of the background and the biases inherent in the background estimation procedure. The interplay between these two facets of the pairing is an important part of the choices made for this analysis.

A comparison of different shapes due to three different pairing strategies is shown in Figure 7.1. The Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) pairing and $\min \Delta R$ pairing are used for the analyses presented here, and are described in more detail below. The D_{HH} pairing was used for the early Run 2 searches [2], and is based on minimizing the quantity

$$D_{HH} = \frac{|m_{H1} - \frac{120}{110}m_{H2}|}{\sqrt{1 + (\frac{120}{110})^2}}, \quad (7.1)$$

corresponding to the the distance of the reconstructed Higgs candidate masses from a line running from $(0,0)$ to the center of the signal region, $(120 \text{ GeV}, 110 \text{ GeV})$ in leading and subleading Higgs candidate masses, (m_{H1}, m_{H2}) . Note that while this achieves good pairing efficiency with respect to truth across a broad HH mass range, it significantly sculpts the mass plane (as seen in Figure 7.1), motivating the new approaches considered here.

7.1.1 Resonant Pairing Strategy

For the resonant analysis, a Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) is used for the pairing. The boosted decision tree is given the total separation between the two jets in each of the two pairs (ΔR_1 and ΔR_2), the pseudo-rapidity separation between the two jets in each pair ($\Delta \eta_1$ and $\Delta \eta_2$), and the angular separation between the two jets in each pair in the $x - y$ plane ($\Delta \phi_1$ and $\Delta \phi_2$). The total separations (ΔR s) are provided in addition to the components in order to avoid requiring the boosted decision tree to reconstruct these variables in order to use them. For these variables, pair 1 is the pair with the highest scalar sum of jet p_{T} s, and pair 2 the other pair.

The boosted decision tree is also parameterized on the di-Higgs mass (m_{HH}) by providing this as an additional feature. Since the boosted decision tree is trained on correct and incorrect pairings in signal events, there will be exactly one correct pairing and two incorrect pairings in the training set for each m_{HH} value present in that set. As a result, this variable cannot, in itself, distinguish a correct pairing from an incorrect pairing, and therefore the

inclusion of this variable simply serves to parameterize the BDT on m_{HH} ¹.

The boosted decision tree was trained on one quarter of the total AFII simulated scalar MC statistics, using the Gradient-based One Side Sampling (GOSS) algorithm which allows rapid training with very large datasets. A preselection was applied requiring events to have four jets with a p_T of at least 35 GeV. Note that this is a looser requirement than the 40 GeV used in the analysis selection, and is meant to increase the available statistics for events with low m_{HH} and to ensure a better performance as a function of that variable. Events were also required to have four distinct jets that could be geometrically matched (to within $\Delta R \leq 0.4$) to the b -quarks. The events used to train the BDT were not included when the analysis was run on these signal simulations. The boosted decision tree was constructed with the following hyperparameters:

```
min_data_in_leaf=50,
num_leaves=180,
learning_rate=0.01
```

These hyperparameters were optimized using a Bayesian optimization procedure [105]. Three fold cross-validation was used to perform this optimization without the need for an additional sample, while avoiding over-training on signal events.

7.1.2 Non-resonant Pairing Strategy

For the non-resonant analysis, a simpler pairing algorithm is used, which proceeds as follows: in a given event, Higgs candidates for each possible pairing are sorted by the p_T of the vector sum of constituent jets. The angular separation, ΔR is computed between jets in the each of the leading Higgs candidates, and the pairing with the smallest separation (ΔR_{jj}) is selected. This method will be referred to as $\min \Delta R$ in the following.

The primary motivation for the use of this pairing in the non-resonant search is a *smooth mass plane*: by efficiently discarding low mass events, $\min \Delta R$ removes the background peak

¹That is, the conditions placed on the other variables by the BDT vary with m_{HH} .

present in the resonant search while maintaining good pairing efficiency for the Standard Model non-resonant signal. This facilitates a background estimate with small kinematic bias – the region in which the background estimate is derived is more similar to the signal region.

Along with discarding low mass background, there is a corresponding loss of low mass signal. This predominantly impacts points away from the Standard Model (see Figure 7.2), but, because the $4b$ channel has the strongest contribution near the Standard Model and because of the large low mass background present with other pairing methods, the impact on analysis sensitivity is mitigated. The $\min \Delta R$ pairing is thus adopted for the non-resonant search.

7.1.3 Pairing Efficiencies

Though this is implicit in the above descriptions, an explicit examination of the pairing efficiencies with respect to truth for the respective signal samples has been performed for both $\min \Delta R$ and the BDT pairing. Conceptually, for high invariant mass of the HH system, each Higgs has a high p_T and the b -jets corresponding to a given Higgs are more collimated. In this case, angular information such as that exploited both directly by $\min \Delta R$ and as inputs in the BDT pairing may be expected to be a good discriminant for determining the HH system. Indeed for resonance masses above 500 GeV, the pairing efficiency for both algorithms is close to 100 %.

For lower HH masses, the jets corresponding to a given Higgs are no longer as collimated, such that $\min \Delta R$ is no longer guaranteed to pick up the correct pairing (e.g. in a case when the four jets involved are isotropic), and the pairing efficiency steadily gets worse as the HH mass decreases. On resonant samples, e.g., the $\min \Delta R$ efficiency drops below 80 % near 400 GeV. The additional information exploited by the BDT mitigates this somewhat, though there is still a drop in efficiency at lower m_{HH} . Interestingly, the BDT pairing demonstrates a rise in pairing efficiency near the threshold of 250 GeV, likely due to the limited kinematic phase space for the HH system in this region.

The examination of the pairing efficiency as a function of m_{HH} has a more direct cor-

respondence for resonant samples, but it of course applies to non-resonant samples as well, resulting in the behavior shown in Figure 7.2. Note that the above statement that $\min \Delta R$ discards low mass events is a consequence of the reduced pairing efficiency at low mass – the pairing algorithm itself does not make any cuts, but the mis-reconstruction of low mass signal results in the reconstruction of Higgs candidates with masses away from 125 GeV, placing such events outside of the kinematic signal regions defined in Section 7.3.

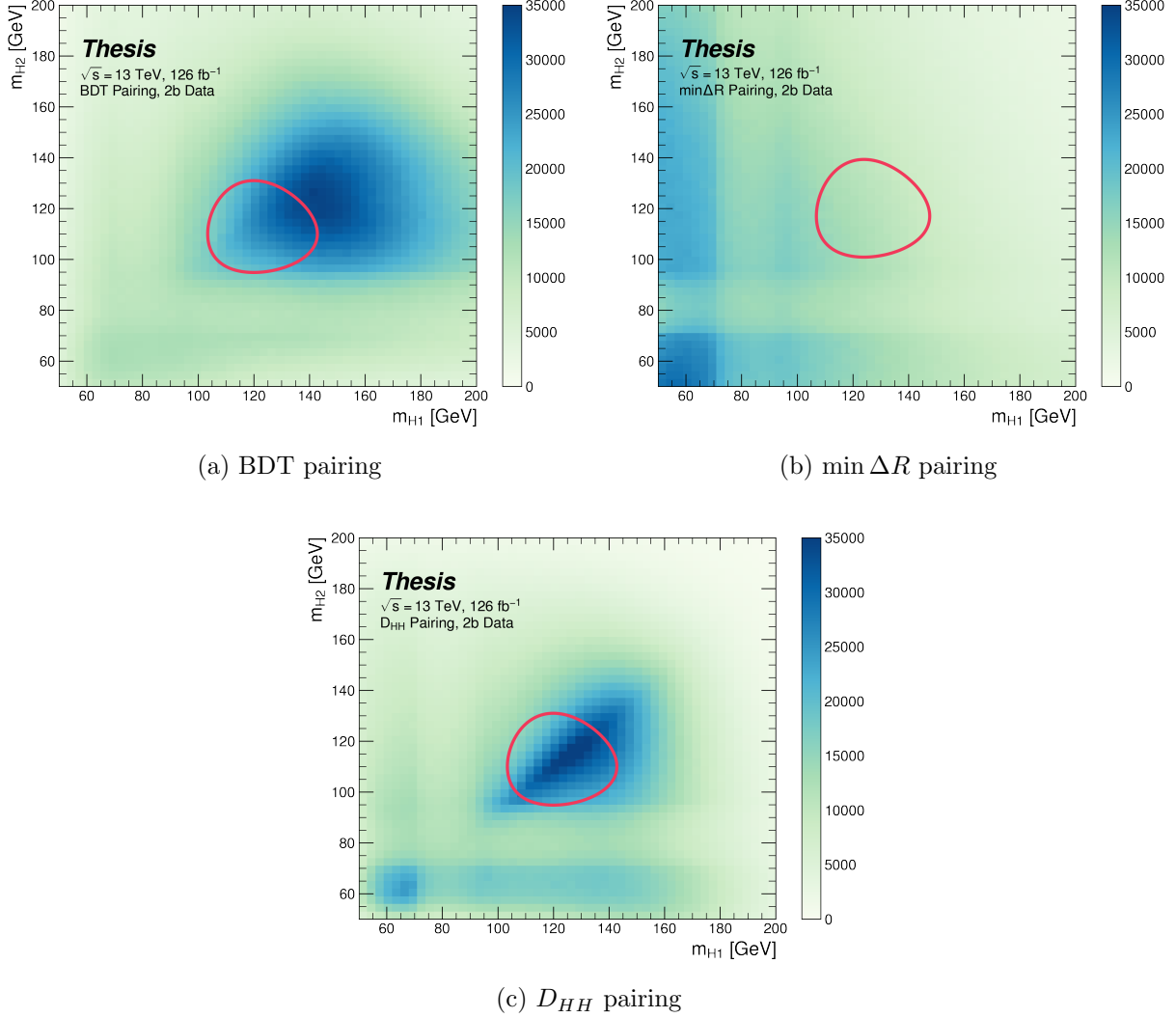


Figure 7.1: Comparison of m_{H1} vs m_{H2} planes for the full Run 2 2b dataset with different pairings, where m_{H1} and m_{H2} are the invariant masses of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates. As evidenced, this choice significantly impacts where events fall in this plane, and therefore which events fall into the various kinematic regions defined in this plane (see Section 7.3). The signal regions for the resonant/early Run 2 analysis are shown for reference for the BDT and D_{HH} pairings, while the the min ΔR signal region shifted is shifted slightly up and to the right to match the non-resonant selection. Note that the band structure around 80 GeV in both m_{H1} and m_{H2} is introduced by the top veto described in Section 7.2.

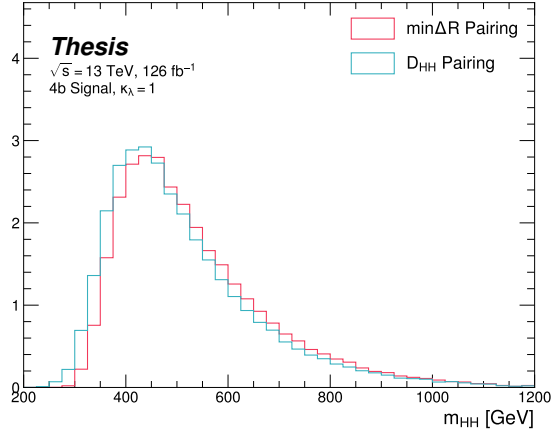
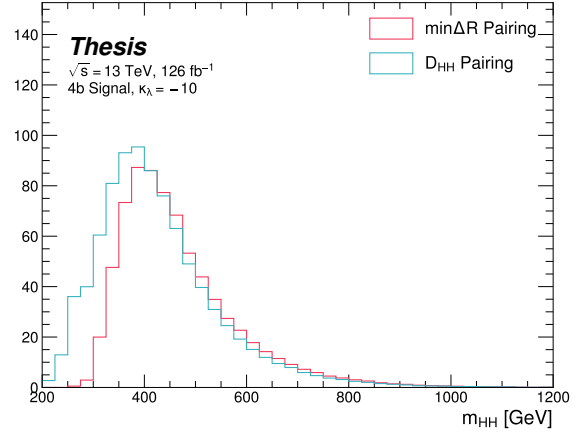
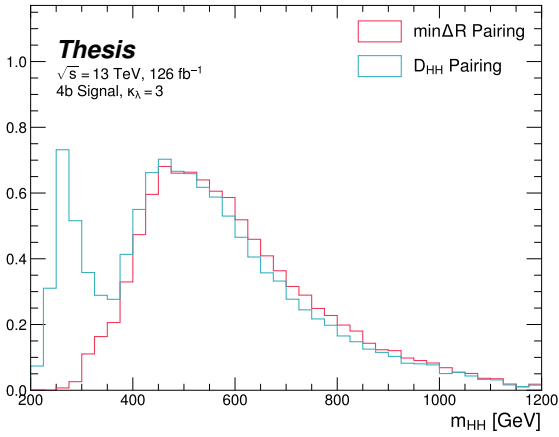
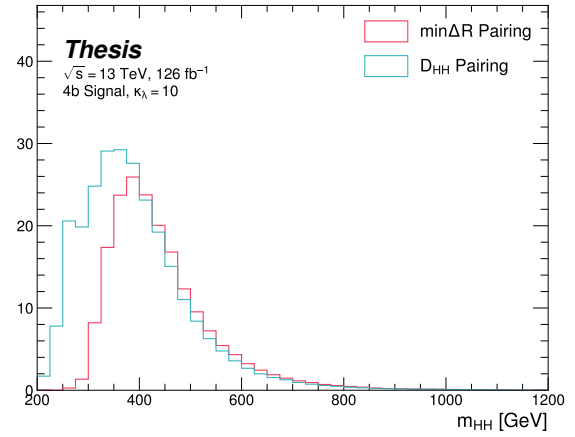
(a) $\kappa_\lambda = 1$ (SM)(b) $\kappa_\lambda = -10$ (c) $\kappa_\lambda = 3$ (d) $\kappa_\lambda = 10$

Figure 7.2: Comparison of signal distributions in the respective signal regions for the $\min\Delta R$ and D_{HH} pairing for various values of the Higgs trilinear coupling. The distributions are quite similar at the Standard Model point, but for other variations, $\min\Delta R$ does not pick up the low mass features.

7.2 Background Reduction and Top Veto

Choosing a pairing of the four b -tagged jets fully defines the di-Higgs candidate system used for each event in the remainder of the analysis chain. A requirement of $|\Delta\eta_{HH}| < 1.5$ on this di-Higgs candidate system mitigates QCD multijet background.

In order to mitigate the hadronic $t\bar{t}$ background, a top veto is then applied, removing events consistent with a $t \rightarrow b(W \rightarrow q_1\bar{q}_2)$ decay.

The jets in the event are separated into *HC jets* which are the four jets used to build the Higgs candidates, and *non-HC jets*, the other jets (passing the p_T and $|\eta|$ requirements) in the event.

W candidates are built by forming all possible pairs of all jets in each event. With n jets, there are $\binom{n}{2}$ such pairs. t candidates are then built by pairing each W candidate with each HC jet (for $4\binom{n}{2}$ combinations). Note that all jets in a t candidate must be distinct (i.e. a HC jet may not be used both on its own and in a W candidate).

With m_t denoting the invariant mass of the t candidate, and m_W the invariant mass of the W candidate, the quantity

$$X_{Wt} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{m_W - 80.4 \text{ GeV}}{0.1 \cdot m_W}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{m_t - 172.5 \text{ GeV}}{0.1 \cdot m_t}\right)^2} \quad (7.2)$$

is constructed for each combination.

Events are then vetoed if the minimum X_{Wt} over all combinations is less than 1.5.

The same definitions and procedures are used for both the resonant and non-resonant analyses. However, for the non-resonant search, the top candidates considered for X_{Wt} have the additional requirement that the jet used for the b is b -tagged. While this is identical to the resonant analysis by definition for $4b$ events, it does change the set of events considered in lower tag regions, in particular for the $2b$ events considered in the derivation of the background estimate. Such a change is found to reduce the impact of background systematics, an effect that is thought to be due to the shifting of $2b$ events to higher values of X_{Wt} (due to this more stringent requirement), where, e.g, the Standard Model signal peaks.

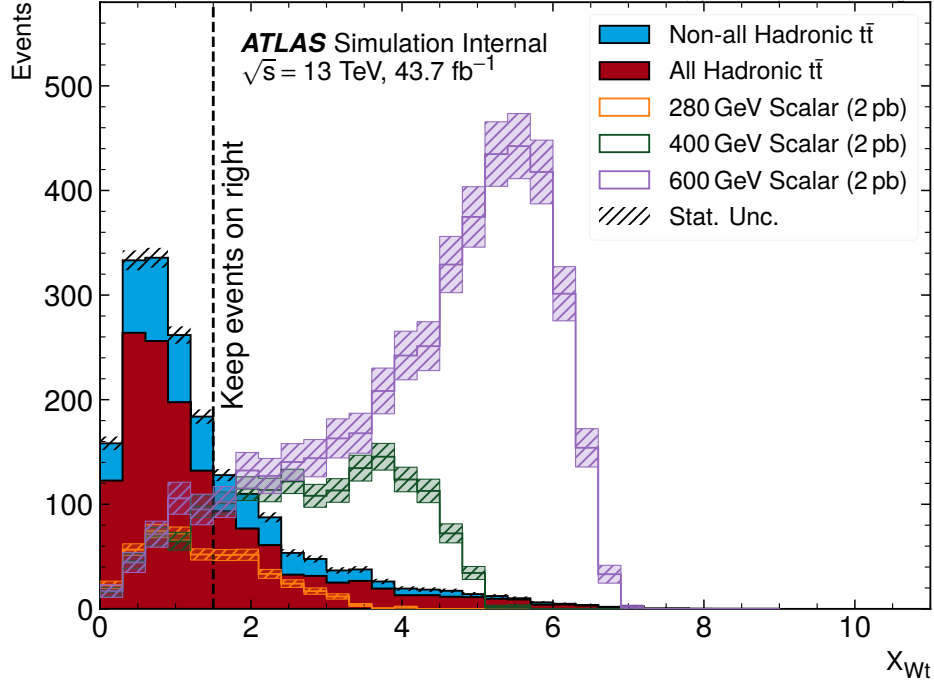


Figure 7.3: **Resonant search:** Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the resonant analysis, with representative scalar signals shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events, and the value of the cut is chosen to retain analysis sensitivity, particularly for low mass.

The distribution of this variable is shown for $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo and representative signal samples for the resonant and non-resonant $4b$ signal regions in Figures 7.3 and 7.4 respectively, with a line at the cut value of 1.5. Individual years are shown, but results are representative across years. For the resonant analysis, the value of the cut is constrained by low mass resonances, with the value of 1.5 chosen as a compromise between $t\bar{t}$ rejection and retaining sensitivity for these signals. For the non-resonant, though e.g., the SM signal peaks at higher values, a more aggressive cut on X_{Wt} was found to decrease analysis sensitivity, so the value of 1.5 is kept.

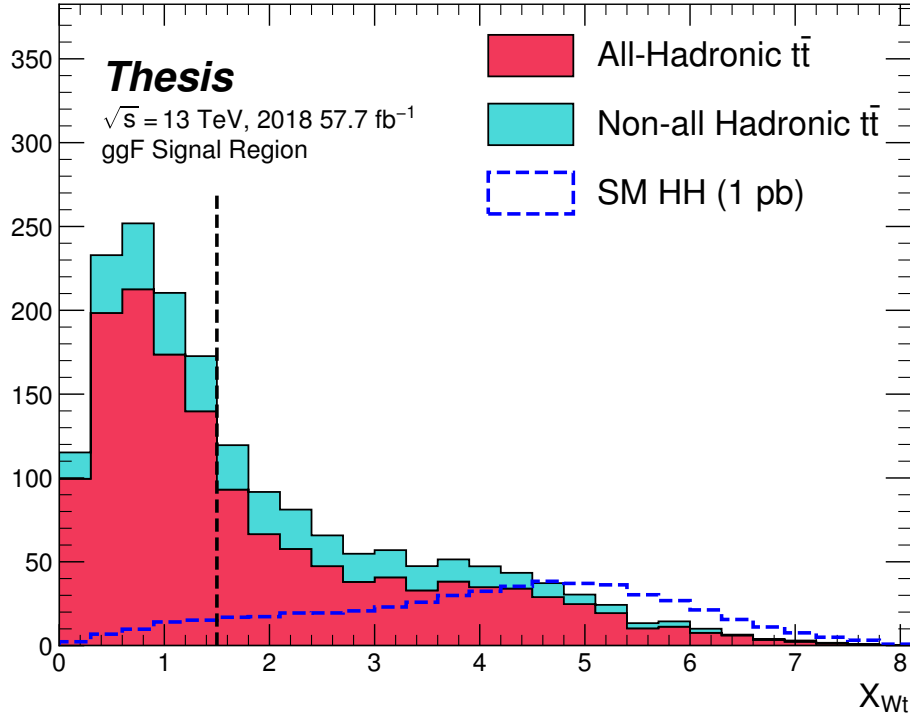


Figure 7.4: **Non-resonant search:** Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the non-resonant analysis, with the Standard Model signal shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events. While this plot may seem to motivate a more aggressive cut on X_{Wt} , increasing the value of the cut was found to reduce analysis sensitivity.

7.3 Kinematic Region Definition

As has been mentioned, an important piece of the analysis is the plane defined by the two Higgs candidate masses (the *Higgs candidate mass plane*). After the selection described above, a signal region is defined by requiring $X_{HH} < 1.6$, where:

$$X_{HH} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{m(H_1) - c_1}{0.1 \cdot m(H_1)}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{m(H_2) - c_2}{0.1 \cdot m(H_2)}\right)^2} \quad (7.3)$$

with $m(H_1)$, $m(H_2)$ the leading and subleading Higgs candidate masses, c_1 and c_2 correspond to the center of the signal region, and the denominator provides a Higgs candidate mass dependent resolution of 10 %. For consistency with the HH decay hypothesis, c_1 and c_2 are nominally (125 GeV, 125 GeV). However, these are allowed to vary due to energy loss, with specific values chosen described below. The selection of these values is one of several significant differences between the regions defined for the resonant and non-resonant search. Both are described below.

7.3.1 Resonant Kinematic Regions

For the resonant analysis, the signal region is centered at (120 GeV, 110 GeV) to account for energy loss leading to the Higgs masses being under-reconstructed. Note that leading and subleading Higgs candidates are defined according to the *scalar sum* of constituent jet p_T .

For the background estimation, two regions are defined which are roughly concentric around the signal region: a *validation region* which consists of those events not in the signal region, but which do pass

$$\sqrt{(m(H_1) - 1.03 \times 120 \text{ GeV})^2 + (m(H_2) - 1.03 \times 110 \text{ GeV})^2} < 30 \text{ GeV} \quad (7.4)$$

and a *control region* which consists of those events not in the signal or validation regions, but which do pass

$$\sqrt{(m(H_1) - 1.05 \times 120 \text{ GeV})^2 + (m(H_2) - 1.05 \times 110 \text{ GeV})^2} < 45 \text{ GeV} \quad (7.5)$$

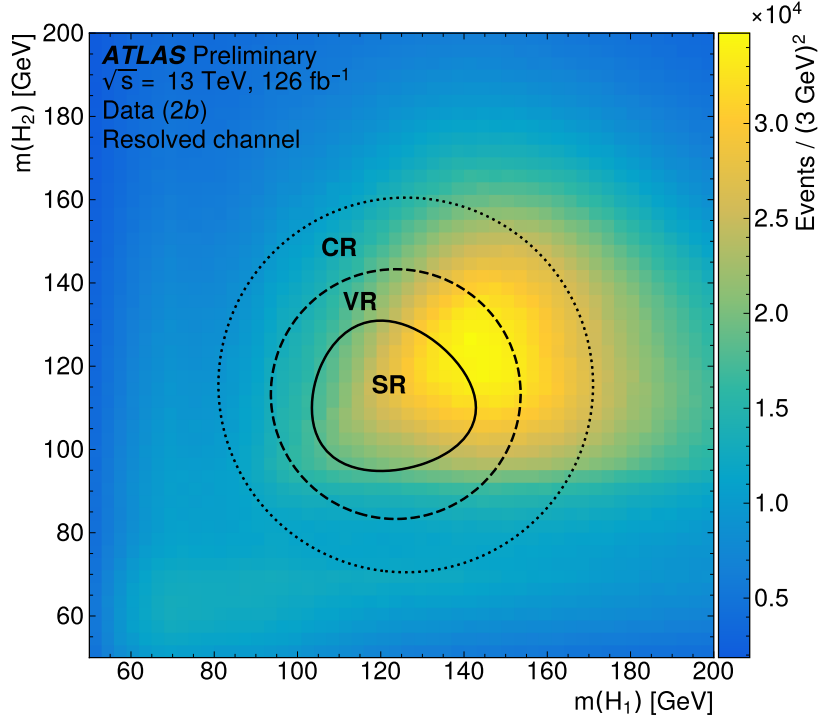


Figure 7.5: Regions used for the resonant search, shown on the $2b$ data mass plane. The outermost region (the “control region”) is used for derivation of the nominal background estimate. The innermost region is the signal region, where the signal extraction fit is performed. The region in between (the “validation region”) is used for the assessment of an uncertainty.

For simplicity, the SR/VR/CR definitions from the early Run 2 paper [2] were chosen for the resonant analysis, and were found to be close to optimal. These regions are shown in Figure 7.5.

7.3.2 Non-resonant Kinematic Regions

For the non-resonant analysis the signal region is centered at (124 GeV, 117 GeV), corresponding to the means of *correctly paired* Standard Model signal events. The shape of the signal region (other than this change of center) was found to remain optimal.

For the non-resonant search, leading and subleading Higgs candidates are defined according to the *vector sum* of constituent jet p_T , more closely corresponding to the $1 \rightarrow 2$ decay assumption behind the $\min \Delta R$ pairing algorithm.

Two areas for improvement were identified in the resonant analysis, which will be discussed in more detail below: *signal contamination* of the validation region (which impacts the uncertainty assessed due to extrapolation) and *large nuisance parameter pulls* for this uncertainty, corresponding to a rough assumption that the validation region is closer to the signal region in the mass plane, and so offers a better estimate of the signal region. Extensive cross-checks were performed for the resonant search, which demonstrated minimal bias due to the signal contamination and healthy behavior of the signal extraction fit, despite the large pulls. However, these large pulls imply that the nominal estimate may be improved by incorporating some of the information entering the definition of the extrapolation uncertainty. Further, the resonant search benefits from a set of highly peaked signals, such that the smooth nature of the background helps to mitigate signal contamination bias. With the broad non-resonant signals, a bias due to signal contamination becomes more of a concern, such that addressing this is highly motivated.

A redesign of the control and validation regions is therefore performed for the non-resonant analysis. The outer boundary defined by the shifted resonant control region:

$$\sqrt{(m(H_1) - 1.05 \times 124 \text{ GeV})^2 + (m(H_2) - 1.05 \times 117 \text{ GeV})^2} < 45 \text{ GeV} \quad (7.6)$$

is kept, roughly corresponding to combining the regions used for the resonant analysis. In order to assess the variation of the background estimate, two sets of regions are desired, so this combined region is split into *quadrants*, that is, divided into four pieces along axes that intersect with the signal region center. To avoid kinematic bias, quadrants on opposite sides of the signal region are paired, with these pairs corresponding to the non-resonant control and validation regions.

The particular orientation of the regions is chosen such that region centers align with the leading and subleading Higgs candidate masses, corresponding to a set of axes rotated at

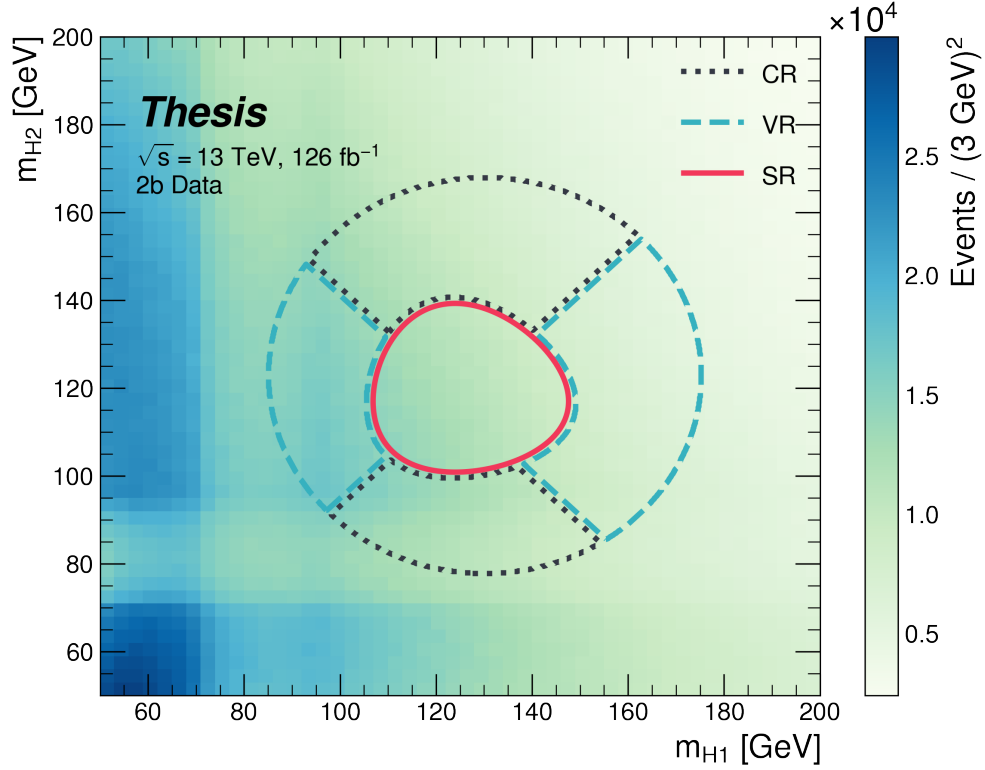


Figure 7.6: Regions used for the non-resonant search. The “top” and “bottom” quadrants together comprise the control region, in which the nominal background estimate is derived. The “left” and “right” quadrants together comprise the validation region, which is used to assess an uncertainty. The signal region, in the center, is where the signal extraction fit is performed.

45°, with the “top” and “bottom” quadrants together comprising the control region, and the other set (“left” and “right”) the validation region. These regions are shown in Figure 7.6

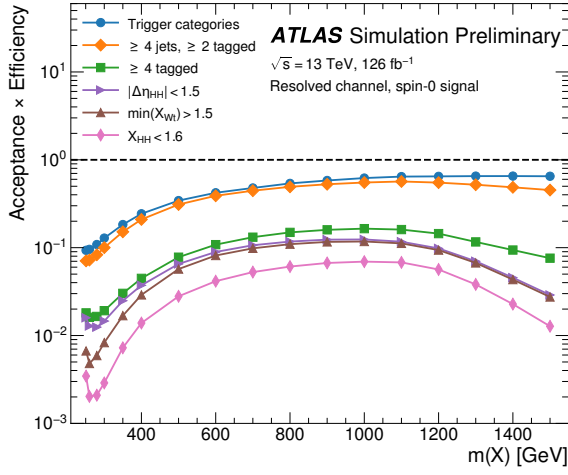
This design of regions includes a set of events closer to the signal region in the mass plane, leveraging the assumption that these events are more similar to signal region events, while also including events further away from the signal region, mitigating signal contamination. This region selection is found to have good performance in alternate validation regions (see Section 9.4).

Figure 7.7 shows the signal acceptance times efficiency for the respective analysis selections described above for spin-0, spin-2, and 4b Standard Model signals.

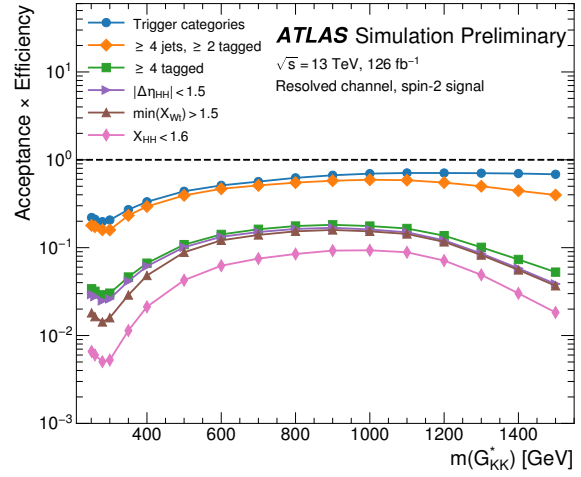
7.4 Discriminating Variable

The discriminant used for the resonant analysis is *corrected* m_{HH} . This variable is calculated by re-scaling the Higgs candidate four vectors such that each $m_H = 125$ GeV. These re-scaled four-vectors are then summed, and their invariant mass is the corrected m_{HH} . These re-scaled four-vectors are not used for any other purpose. The effect of this correction, which sharpens the m_{HH} peak and correctly centers it, is shown in Figure 7.8.

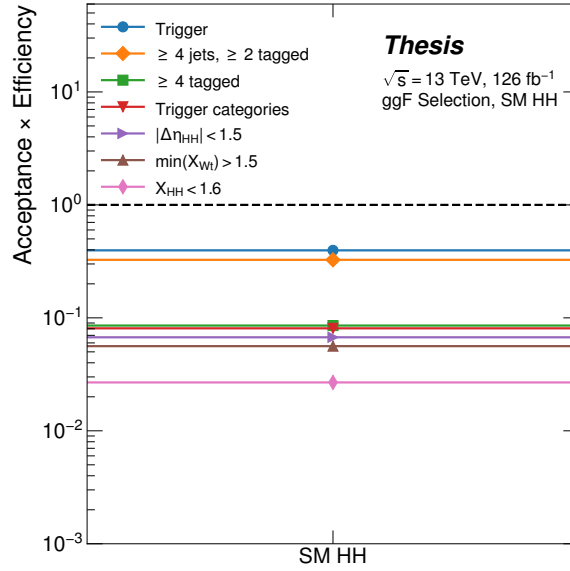
For the non-resonant analysis, due to the broad nature of the signal in m_{HH} , such a correction is not as motivated, and, indeed, is found to have very minimal impact. The uncorrected m_{HH} (just referred to as m_{HH}) is therefore used as a discriminant. To maximize sensitivity, the non-resonant analysis additionally uses two variables for categorization: $\Delta\eta_{HH}$, an angular variable which, along with m_{HH} , fully characterizes the HH system [106], and X_{HH} , the variable used for the signal region definition, which leverages the peaked structure of the signal in the $(m(H_1), m(H_2))$ plane to split the signal extraction fit into lower and higher purity regions (highest purity near $X_{HH} = 0$, the center of the signal region). The categorization used for this thesis has been optimized to be 2×2 in these variables, with corresponding selections $0 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} \leq 0.75$ and $0.75 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} \leq 1.5$ for $\Delta\eta_{HH}$, and $0 \leq X_{HH} \leq 0.95$ and $0.95 \leq X_{HH} \leq 1.6$ for X_{HH} .



(a) Spin-0 signal



(b) Spin-2 signal



(c) SM HH signal

Figure 7.7: Acceptance times efficiency for the respective analysis selections for spin-0, spin-2, and 4b Standard Model signals. The Standard Model acceptance times efficiency is roughly consistent with the resonant signals in the mass range near the Standard Model peak (near 400 to 600 GeV). Acceptance times efficiency at low mass is mostly limited by the trigger, whereas for higher masses, the jets start to merge together, and the efficiency for reconstructing four b -tagged jets decreases. The spin-2 signal has a higher low mass acceptance times efficiency than spin-0 due to the broader signal distributions of this variable, which leads to a distortion of this distribution towards higher mass values. The increase in acceptance times efficiency at very low mass reflects the impact of the kinematic threshold of 250 GeV.

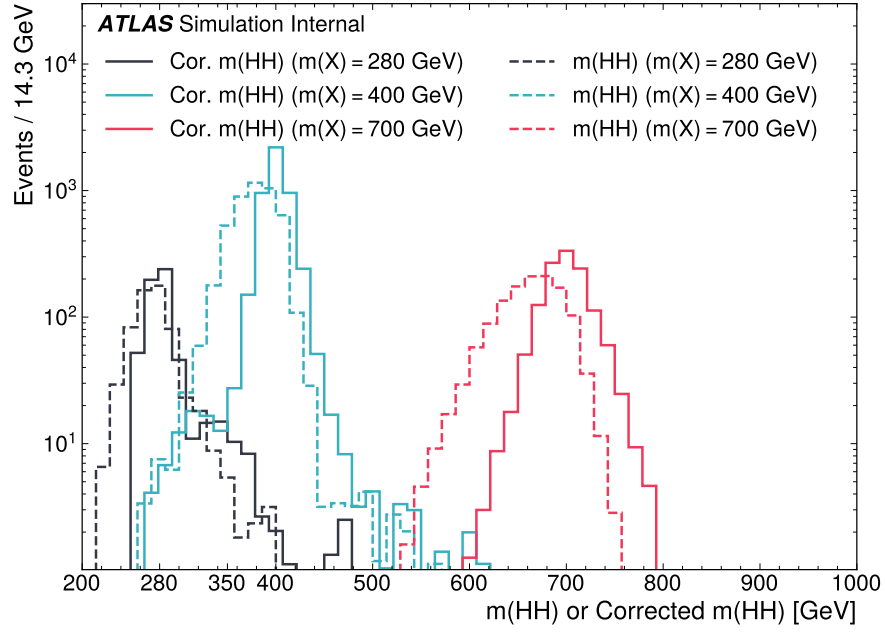


Figure 7.8: Impact of the m_{HH} correction on a range of spin-0 resonant signals. The corrected m_{HH} distributions (solid lines) are much sharper and more centered on the corresponding resonance masses than the uncorrected m_{HH} distributions (dashed).

Chapter 8

BACKGROUND ESTIMATION

After the event selection described above, there are two major backgrounds, QCD and $t\bar{t}$. A very similar approach is used for both the resonant and the non-resonant analyses, with some small modifications. This approach is notably fully data-driven, which is warranted due to the flexibility of the estimation method, as well as the high relative proportion of QCD background ($> 90\%$), and allows for the use of machine learning methods in the construction of the background estimate. However, it sacrifices an explicit treatment of the $t\bar{t}$ component. Performance of the background estimate on the $t\bar{t}$ component is checked explicitly, and minimal impact due to $t\bar{t}$ mis-modeling is seen.

Contributions of single Higgs processes and ZZ are found to be negligible, and the Standard Model HH background is found to have no impact on the resonant search.

The foundation of the background estimate lies in the derivation of a reweighting function which matches the kinematics of events with exactly two b -tagged jets to those of events in the higher tagged regions (events with three or four b -tagged jets). The reweighting function and overall normalization are derived in the control region. Systematic bias of this estimate is assessed in the validation region.

For the resonant analysis, the systematic bias is a bias due to extrapolation: the validation region lies between the control and signal regions. For the non-resonant analysis, the bias instead comes from different possible interpolations of the signal region kinematics – given the choice of nominal estimate, the validation region is a conceptually equivalent, but maximally different, signal region estimate.

8.1 *The Two Tag Region*

Events in data with exactly two b -tagged jets are used for the data driven background estimate. The hypothesis here is that, due to the presence of multiple b -tagged jets, the kinematics of such events are similar to the kinematics of events in higher b -tagged regions (i.e. events with three and four b -tagged jets, respectively), and any differences can be corrected by a reweighting procedure. The region with three b -tagged jets is split into two b -tagging regions, as described in Section 7.1, with the $3b + 1$ loose region used as an additional signal region. The lower tagged $3b$ component ($3b + 1$ fail) is reserved for validation of the background modelling procedure. Events with fewer than two b -tagged jets are not used for this analysis, as they are relatively more different from the higher tag regions.

The nominal event selection requires at least four jets in order to form Higgs candidates. For the four tag region, these are the four highest p_T b -tagged jets. For the three tag regions, these jets are the three b -tagged jets, plus the highest p_T jet satisfying a loosened b -tagging requirement. Similarly, and following the approach of the resonant analysis, the two tag region uses the two b -tagged jets and the two highest p_T non-tagged jets to form Higgs candidates. Combinatoric bias from selection of different numbers of b -tagged jets is corrected as a part of the kinematic reweighting procedure through the reweighting of the total number of jets in the event. In this way, the full event selection may be run on two tagged events.

8.2 *Kinematic Reweighting*

The set of two tagged data events is the fundamental piece of the data driven background estimate. However, kinematic differences from the four tag region exist and must be corrected in order for this estimate to be useful. Binned approaches based on ratios of histograms have been previously considered [2], [22], but are limited in their handling of correlations between variables and by the “curse of dimensionality”, i.e. the dataset becomes sparser and sparser in “reweighting space” as the number of dimensions in which to reweight increases, limiting the number of variables used for reweighting. This leads either to an unstable fit

result (overfitting with finely grained bins) or a lower quality fit result (underfitting with coarse bins).

Note that even some machine learning methods such as Boosted Decision Trees (BDTs) [107], may suffer from this curse of dimensionality, as the depth of each decision tree used is limited by the available statistics after each set of corresponding selections (cf. binning in a more sophisticated way), limiting the expressivity of the learned reweighting function.

To solve these issues, a neural network based reweighting procedure is used here. This is a truly multivariate approach, allowing for proper treatment of variable correlations. It further overcomes the issues associated with binned approaches by learning the reweighting function directly, allowing for greater sensitivity to local differences and helping to avoid the curse of dimensionality.

8.2.1 Neural Network Reweighting

Let $p_{4b}(x)$ and $p_{2b}(x)$ be the probability density functions for four and two tag data respectively across some input variables x . The problem of learning the reweighting function between two and four tag data is then the problem of learning a function $w(x)$ such that

$$p_{2b}(x) \cdot w(x) = p_{4b}(x) \quad (8.1)$$

from which it follows that

$$w(x) = \frac{p_{4b}(x)}{p_{2b}(x)}. \quad (8.2)$$

This falls into the domain of density ratio estimation, for which there are a variety of approaches. The method considered here is modified from [108, 109], and depends on a loss function of the form

$$\mathcal{L}(R(x)) = \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{2b}}[\sqrt{R(x)}] + \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{4b}}[\frac{1}{\sqrt{R(x)}}]. \quad (8.3)$$

where $R(x)$ is some estimator dependent on x and $\mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{2b}}$ and $\mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{4b}}$ are the expectation values with respect to the 2b and 4b probability densities. A neural network trained with

such a loss function has the objective of finding the estimator, $R(x)$, that minimizes this loss.

It is straightforward to show that

$$\arg \min_R \mathcal{L}(R(x)) = \frac{p_{4b}(x)}{p_{2b}(x)} \quad (8.4)$$

which is exactly the form of the desired reweighting function.

In practice, to avoid imposing explicit positivity constraints, the substitution $Q(x) \equiv \log R(x)$ is made. The loss function then takes the equivalent form

$$\mathcal{L}(Q(x)) = \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{2b}}[\sqrt{e^{Q(x)}}] + \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{4b}}[\frac{1}{\sqrt{e^{Q(x)}}}], \quad (8.5)$$

with solution

$$\arg \min_Q \mathcal{L}(Q(x)) = \log \frac{p_{4b}(x)}{p_{2b}(x)}. \quad (8.6)$$

Taking the exponent then results in the desired reweighting function.

Note that similar methods for density ratio estimation are available [110], e.g. from a more standard binary cross-entropy loss. However, these were found to perform no better than the formulation presented here.

8.2.2 Variables and Results

The neural network is trained on a variety of variables sensitive to two vs. four tag differences. To help bring out these differences, the natural logarithm of some of the variables with a large, local change is taken. The set of training variables used for the resonant analysis is

1. $\log(p_T)$ of the 4th leading Higgs candidate jet
2. $\log(p_T)$ of the 2nd leading Higgs candidate jet
3. $\log(\Delta R)$ between the closest two Higgs candidate jets
4. $\log(\Delta R)$ between the other two Higgs candidate jets
5. Average absolute value of η across the four Higgs candidate jets

6. $\log(p_T)$ of the di-Higgs system.
7. ΔR between the two Higgs candidates
8. $\Delta\phi$ between the jets in the leading Higgs candidate
9. $\Delta\phi$ between the jets in the subleading Higgs candidate
10. $\log(X_{Wt})$, where X_{Wt} is the variable used for the top veto
11. Number of jets in the event.

The non-resonant analysis uses an identical set of variables with two notable changes

1. The definition of X_{Wt} differs from the resonant definition (as described in Section 7.2).
2. An integer encoding of the two trigger categories is used as an input (variable which takes on the value 0 or 1 corresponding to each of the two categories). This was found to improve a mis-modeling near the tradeoff in m_{HH} of the two buckets.

The neural network used for both resonant and non-resonant reweighting has three densely connected hidden layers of 50 nodes each with ReLU activation functions and a single node linear output. This configuration demonstrates good performance in the modelling of a variety of relevant variables, including m_{HH} , when compared to a range of networks of similar size.

In practice, a given training of the reweighting neural network is subject to variation due to training statistics and initial conditions. An uncertainty is assigned to account for this (Chapter 9), which relies on training an ensemble of reweighting networks [111]. To increase the stability of the background estimate, the median of the predicted weight for each event is calculated across the ensemble. This median is then used as the nominal background estimate. This approach is indeed seen to be much more stable and to demonstrate a better overall performance than a single arbitrary training. Each ensemble used for this analysis consists of 100 neural networks, trained as described in Chapter 9.

The training of the ensemble used for the nominal estimate is done in the kinematic Control Region. The prediction of these networks in the Signal Region is then used for the nominal background estimate. In addition, a separate ensemble of networks is trained in the Validation Region. The difference between the prediction of the nominal estimate and the estimate from the VR derived networks in the Signal Region is used to assign a systematic uncertainty. Further details on this systematic uncertainty are discussed in Chapter 9. Note that although the same procedure is used for both Control and Validation Region trained networks, only the median estimate from the VR derived reweighting is used for assessing a systematic – no additional “uncertainty on the uncertainty” from VR ensemble variation is applied.

Each reweighted estimate is normalized such that the reweighted $2b$ yield matches the $4b$ yield in the corresponding training region. Note that this applies to each of the networks used in each ensemble, where the normalization factor is also subject to the procedure described in Chapter 9. As the median over these normalized weights is not guaranteed to preserve this normalization, a further correction is applied such that the $2b$ yield, after the median weights are applied, matches the $4b$ yield in the corresponding training region. As no pre-processing is applied to correct for the class imbalance between $2b$ and $4b$ events entering the training, this ratio of number of $4b$ events ($n(4b)$) over number of $2b$ events ($n(2b)$) is folded into the learned weights. Correspondingly, the set of normalization factors described above is near 1 and the learned weights are centered around $n(4b)/n(2b)$ (roughly 0.01 over the full dataset). This normalization procedure applies for all instances of the reweighting (e.g. those used for validations in Section 9.4), with appropriate substitutions of reweighting origin (here $2b$) and reweighting target (here $4b$).

Note that, due to different trigger and pileup selections during each year, the reweighting is trained on each year separately. An approach of training all of the years together with a one-hot encoding was explored, but was found to have minimal benefit over the split years approach, and in fact to increase the systematic bias of the corresponding background estimate. Because of this, and because trigger selections for each year significantly impact

the kinematics of each year, such that categorizing by year is expected to reflect groupings of kinematically similar events and to provide a meaningful degree of freedom in the signal extraction fit, the split-year approach is kept.

The control region closure for the 2018 dataset is shown for a large variety of variables for the resonant search in Figures 8.1 through 8.9 and for the non-resonant search in Figures 8.10 through 8.18 for $4b$ and Figures 8.19 through 8.27 for $3b1l$. The impact of this control region derived reweighting in the validation region for the same set of variables is included in Appendix C. Demonstration of the performance of the reweighting on the final discriminant distributions is included in Chapter 10. 2018 is chosen because it is the largest subset of the data on which the year-by-year reweighting is trained. The other years are omitted here for brevity, but demonstrate very similar results. Generally good performance is seen, with some occasional mis-modeling. For the resonant search, this is most notable in the case of individual jet p_T . Such mis-modeling may be corrected by including the variables in the input set, but this was found to not improve the modeling of m_{HH} , and so is not done here. This mis-modeling is notable for the non-resonant search in the leading Higgs candidate jet p_T , and is a direct consequence of the trigger category input, which improves modeling of m_{HH} . Results are similar for other years, but are not included here for brevity.

One other salient feature of the non-resonant plots is the distributions of m_{H1} and m_{H2} , which emphasize the quadrant region definitions – the control region has a peak around 125 GeV in m_{H1} , which may be thought of as “signal region-like”, motivating this alignment, though consequently the distribution of m_{H2} is quite bimodal. The reverse is true for the validation region.

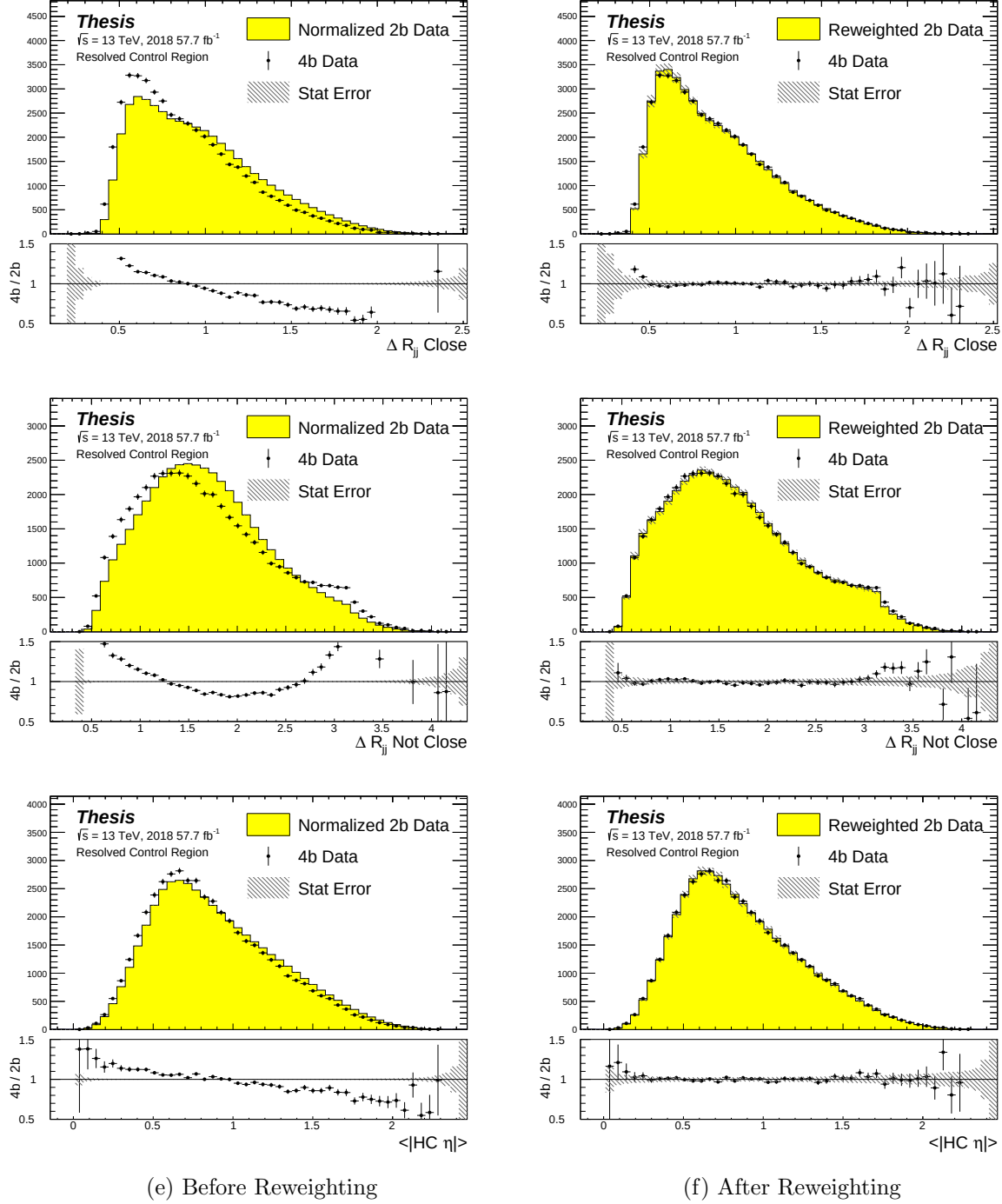


Figure 8.1: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

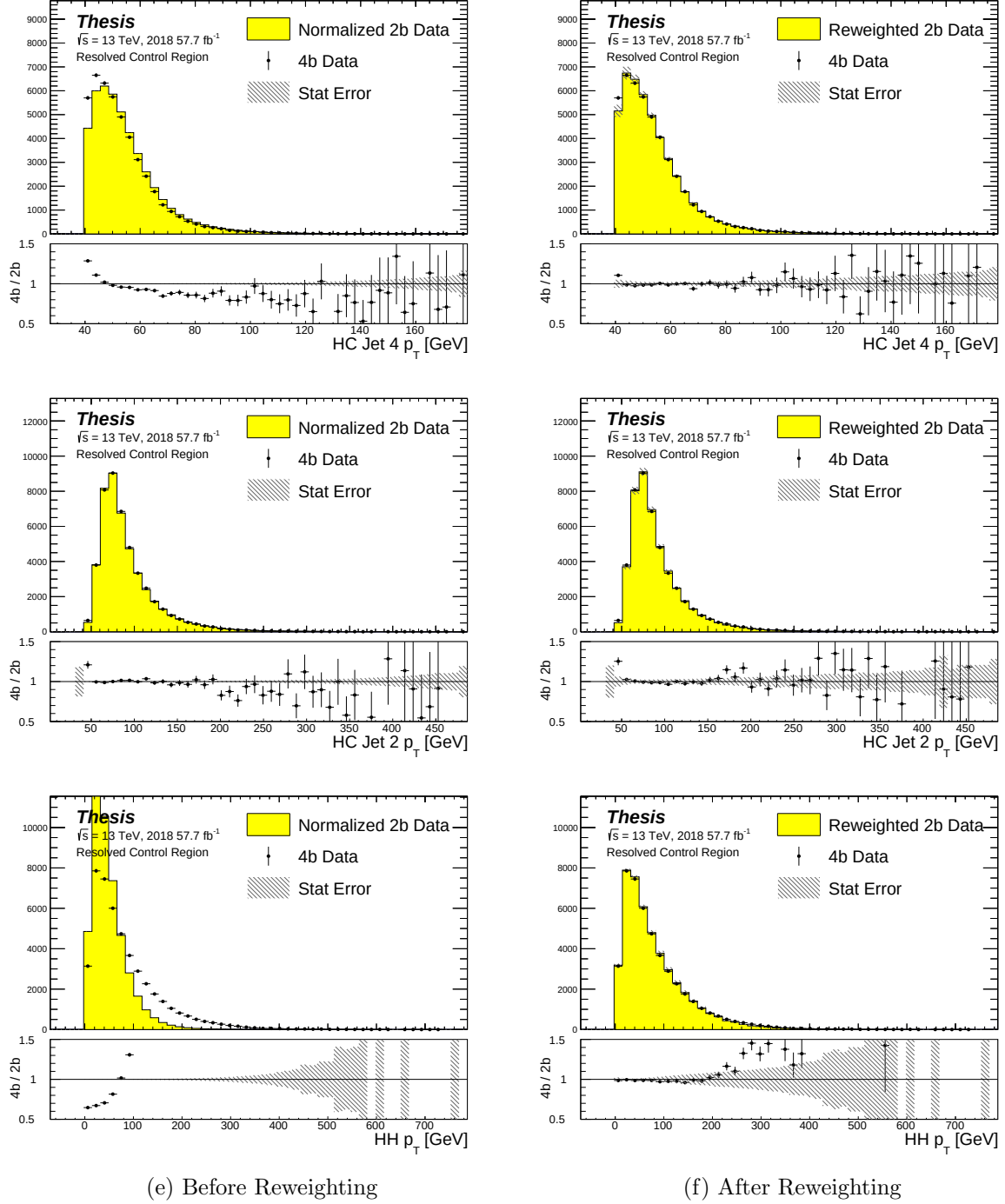
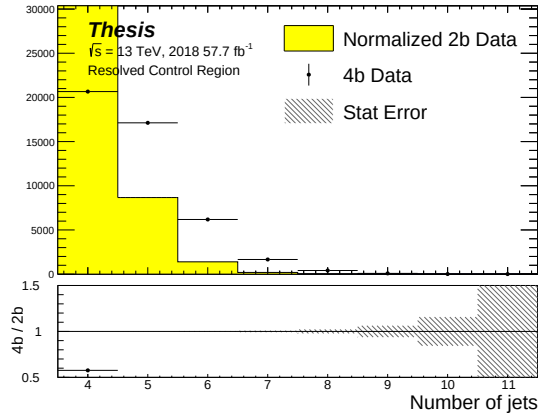
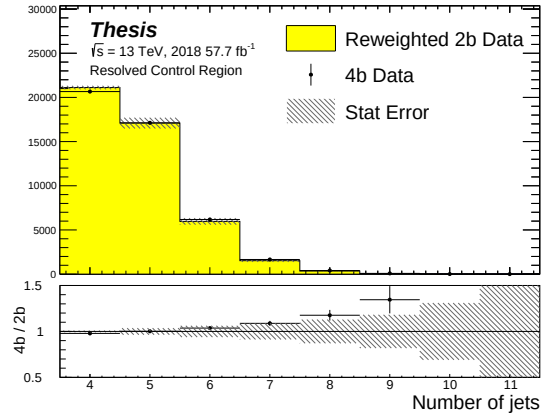


Figure 8.2: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.



(a) Before Reweighting



(b) After Reweighting

Figure 8.3: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

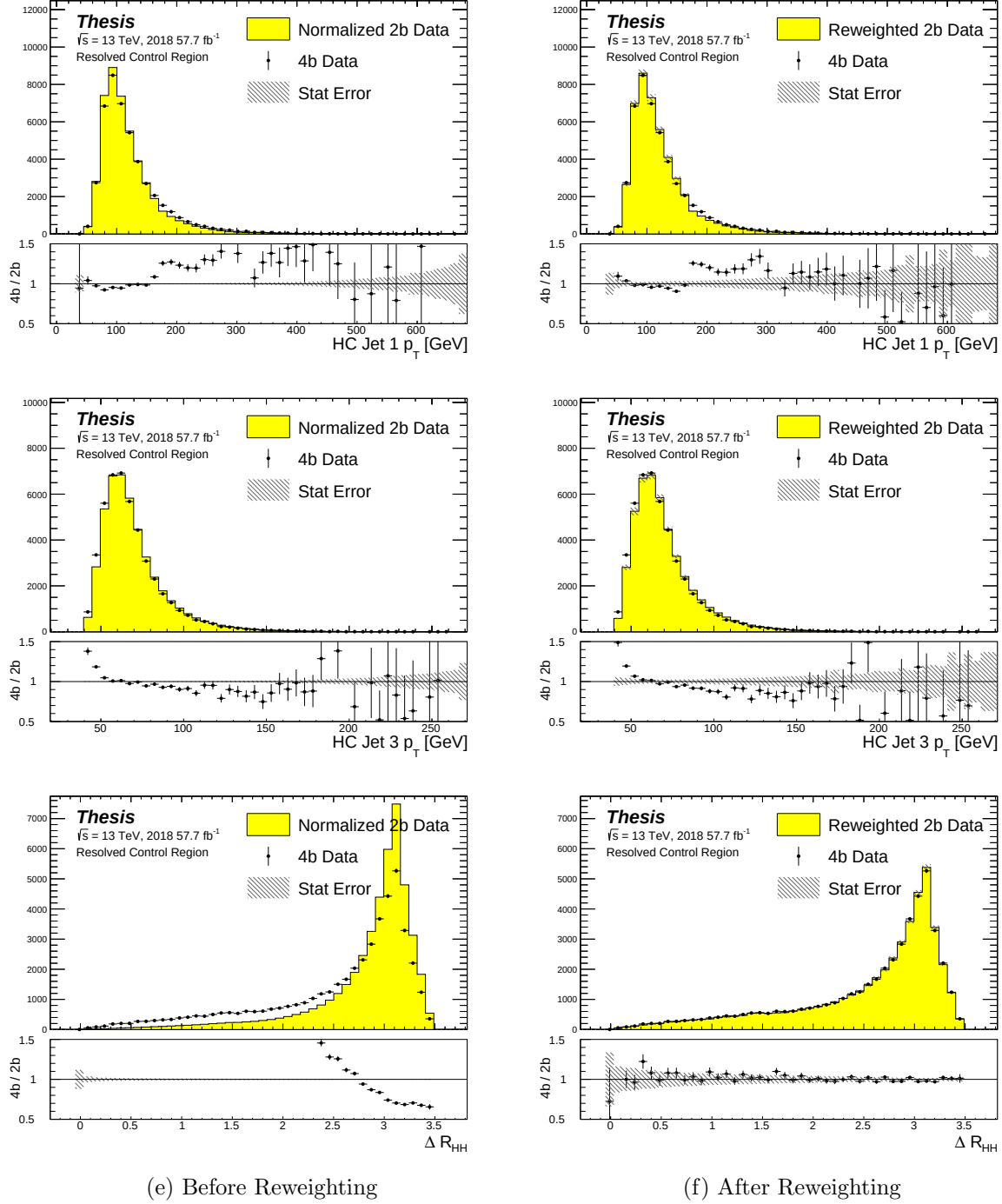


Figure 8.4: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

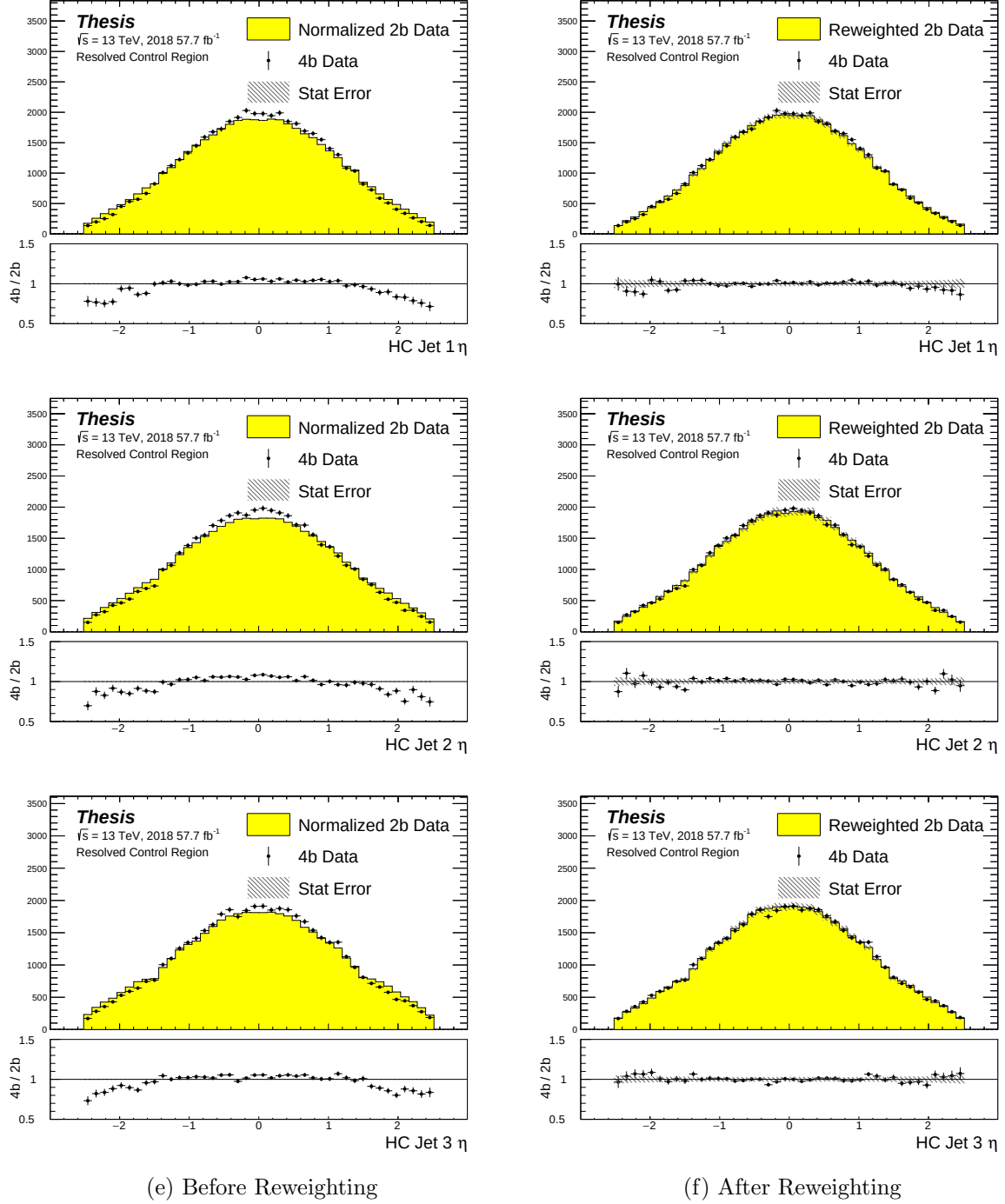


Figure 8.5: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

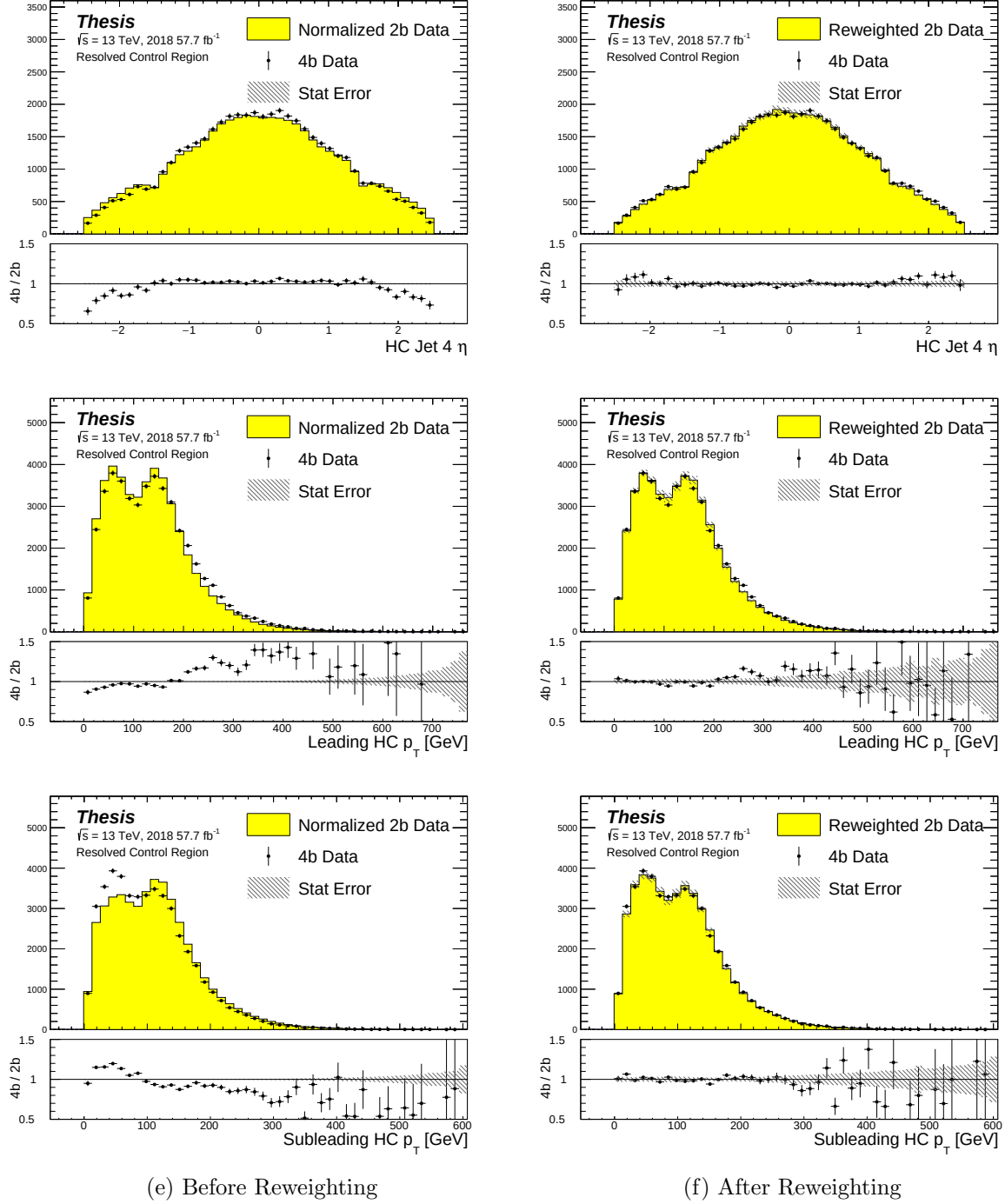


Figure 8.6: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

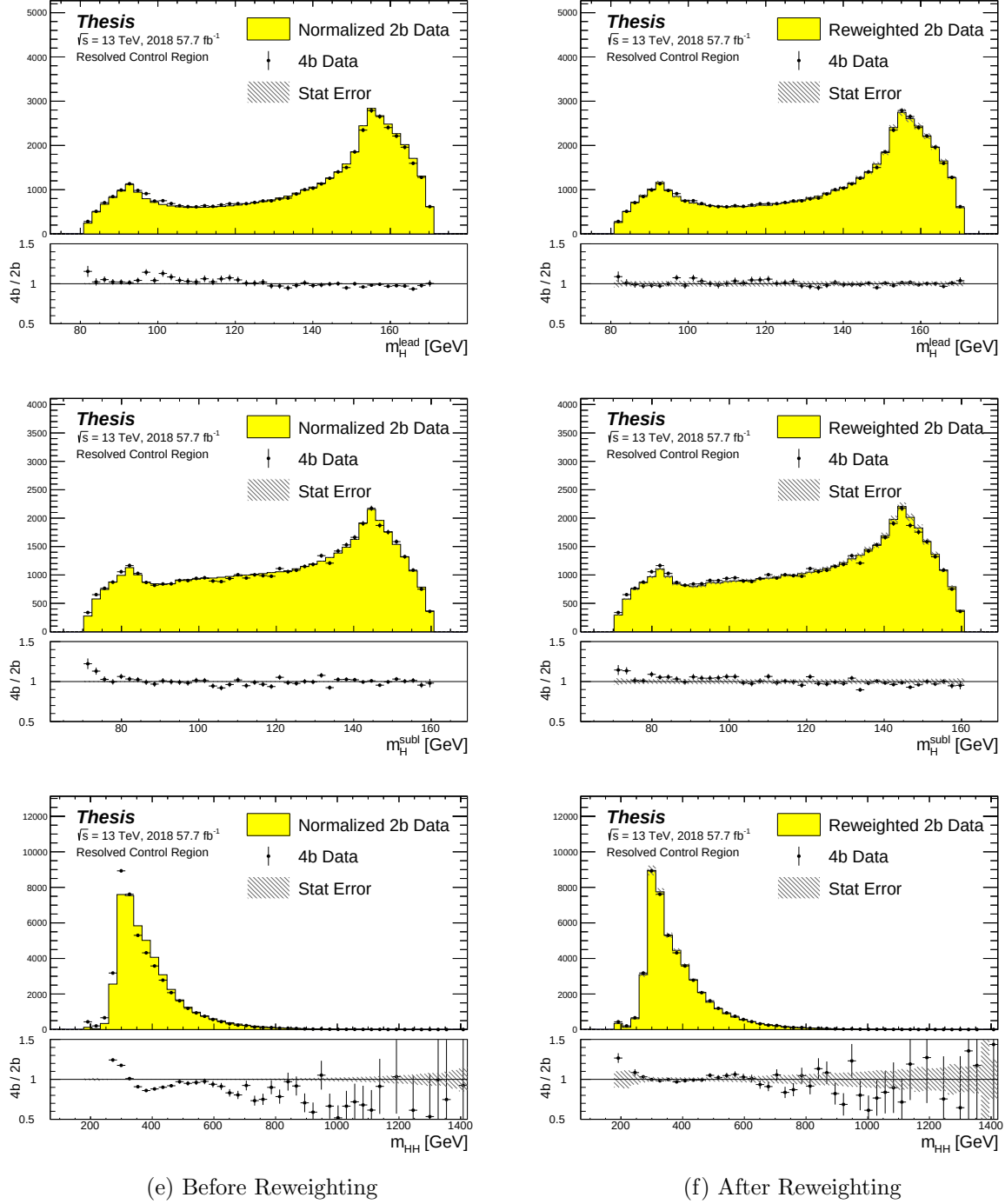


Figure 8.7: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

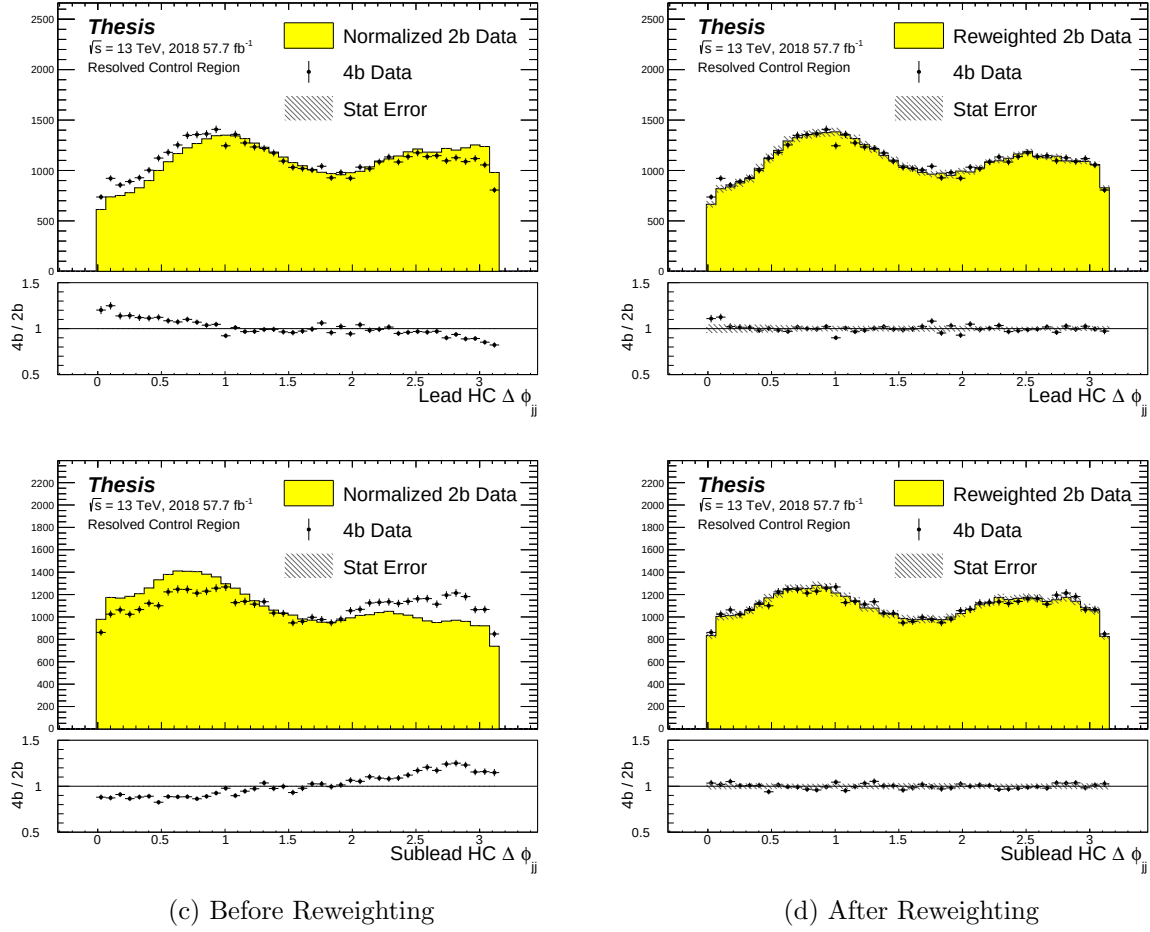


Figure 8.8: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

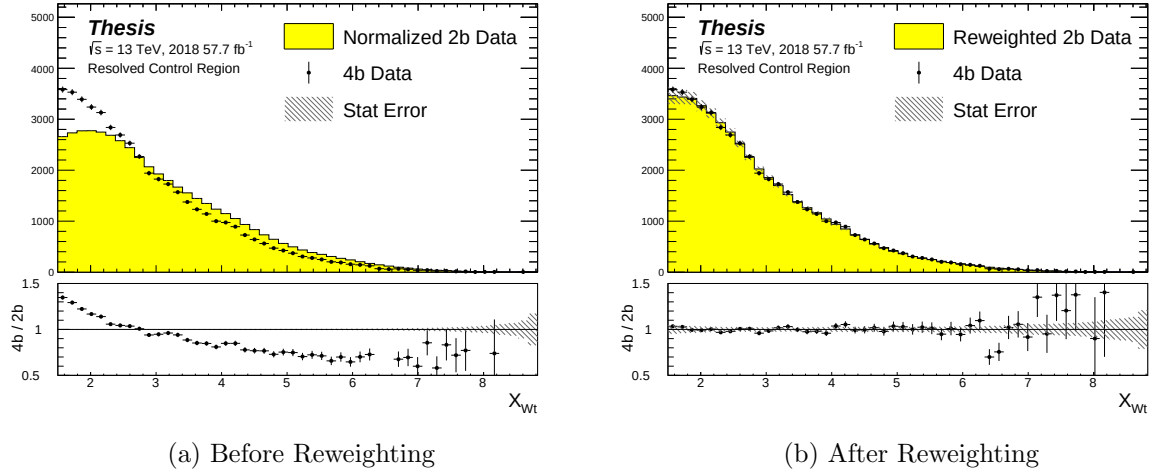


Figure 8.9: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied

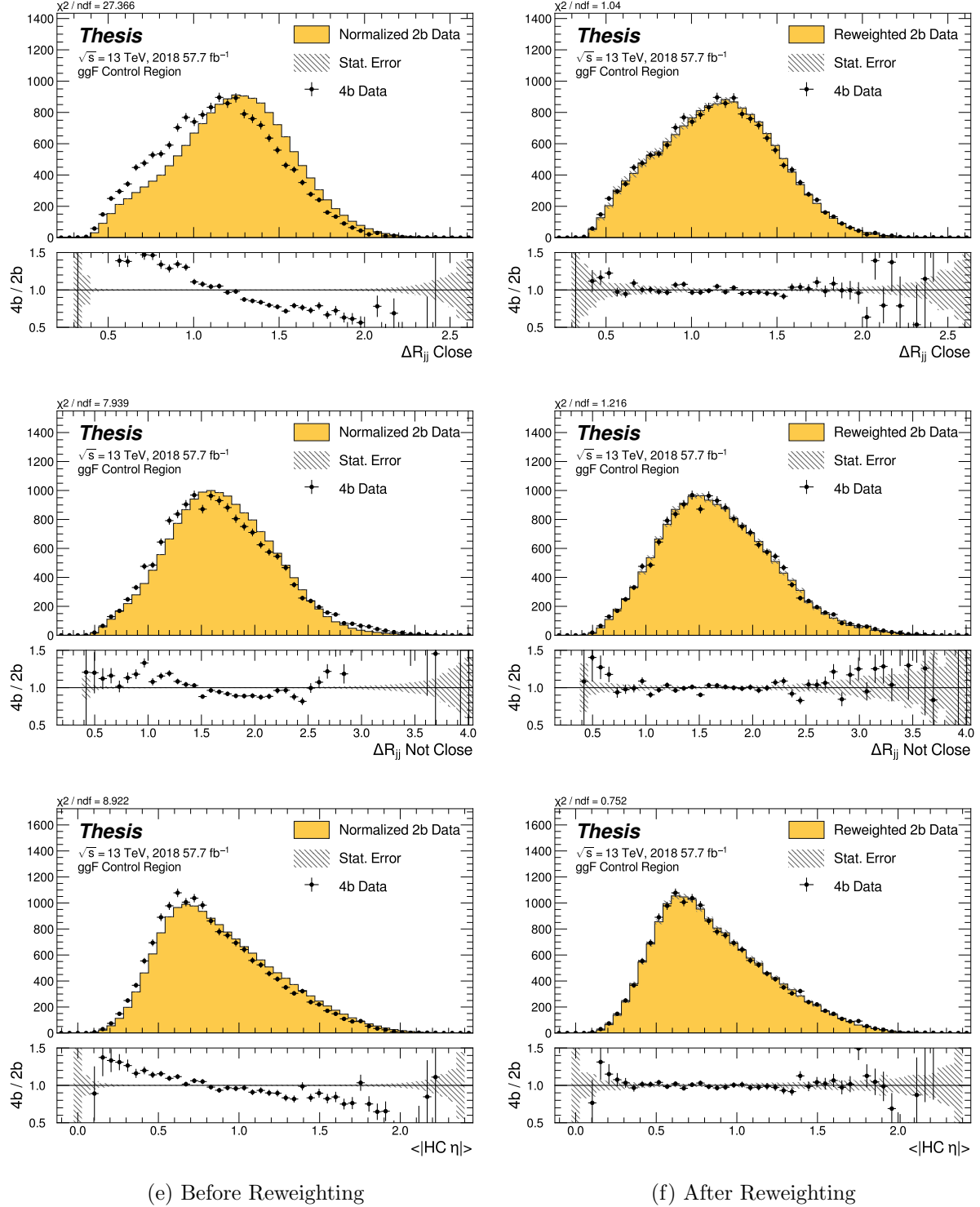


Figure 8.10: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

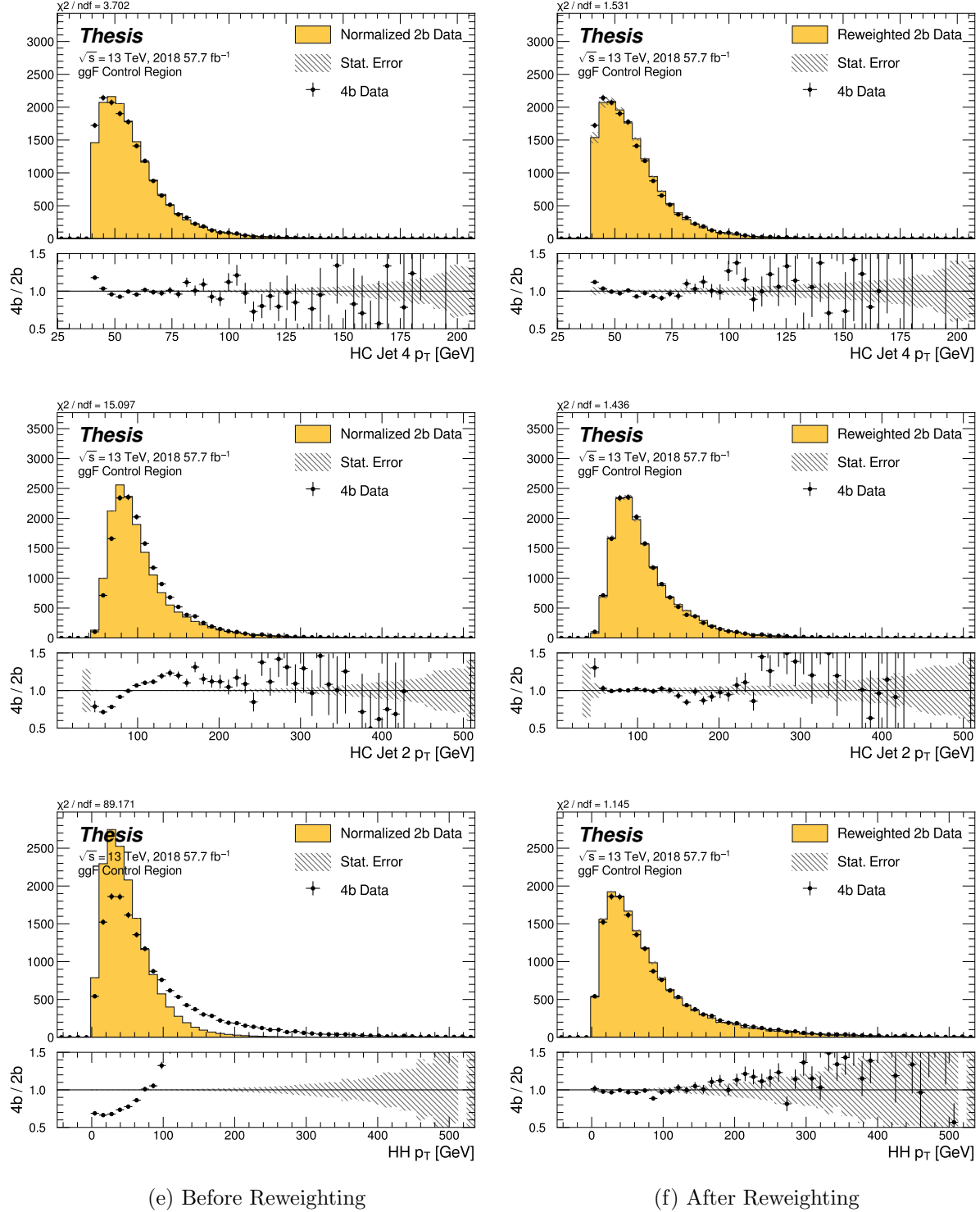


Figure 8.11: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

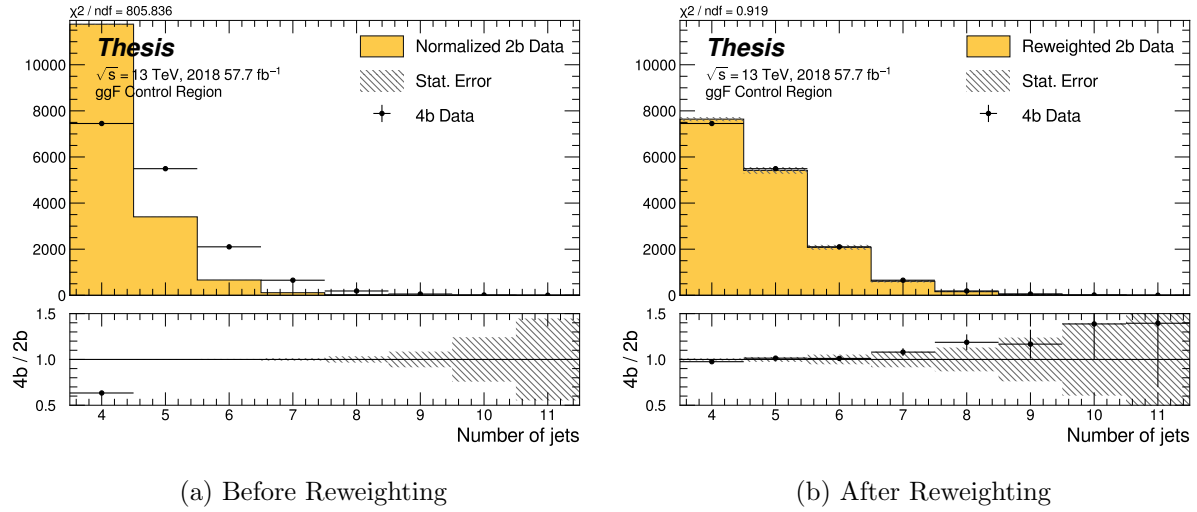


Figure 8.12: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

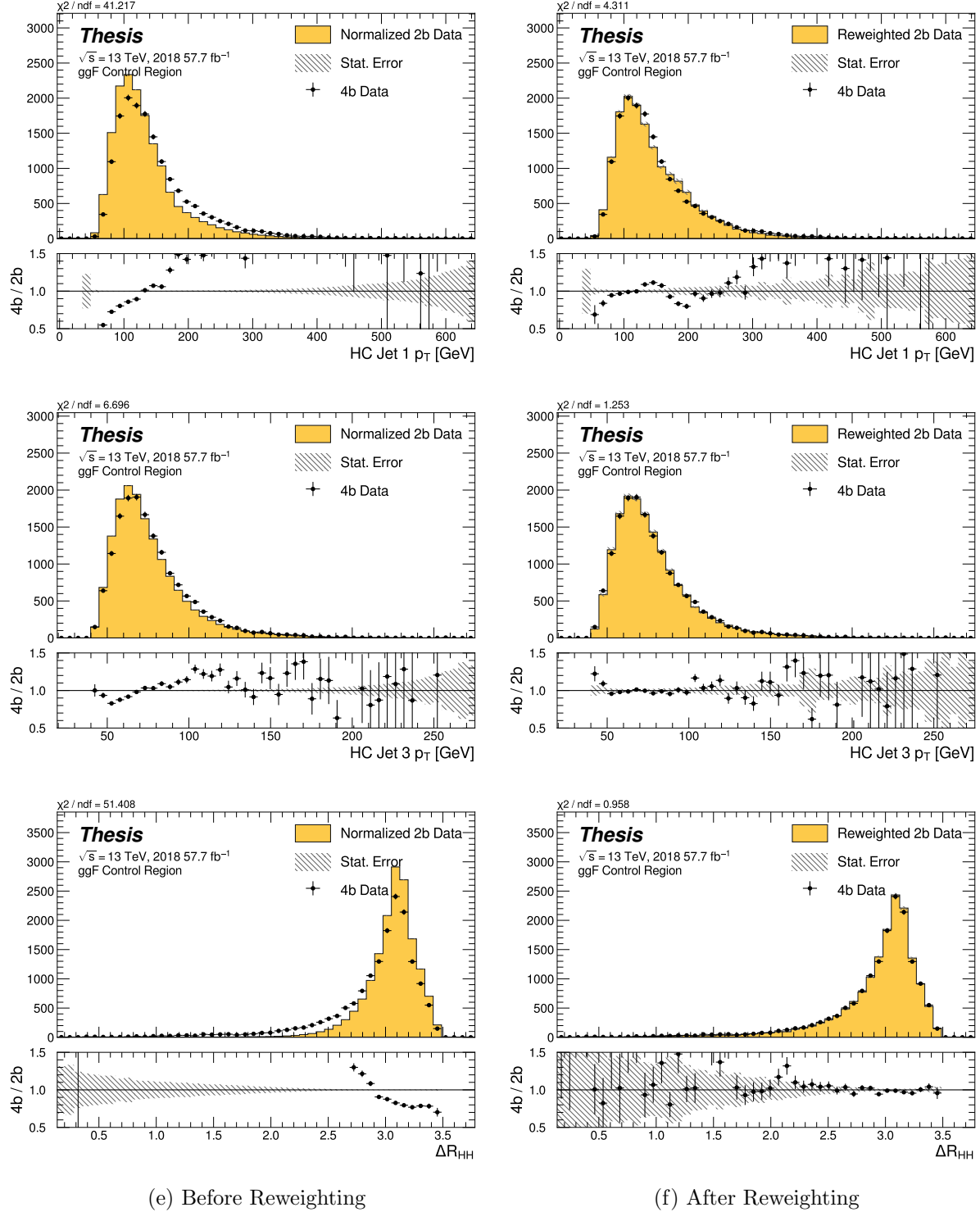


Figure 8.13: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

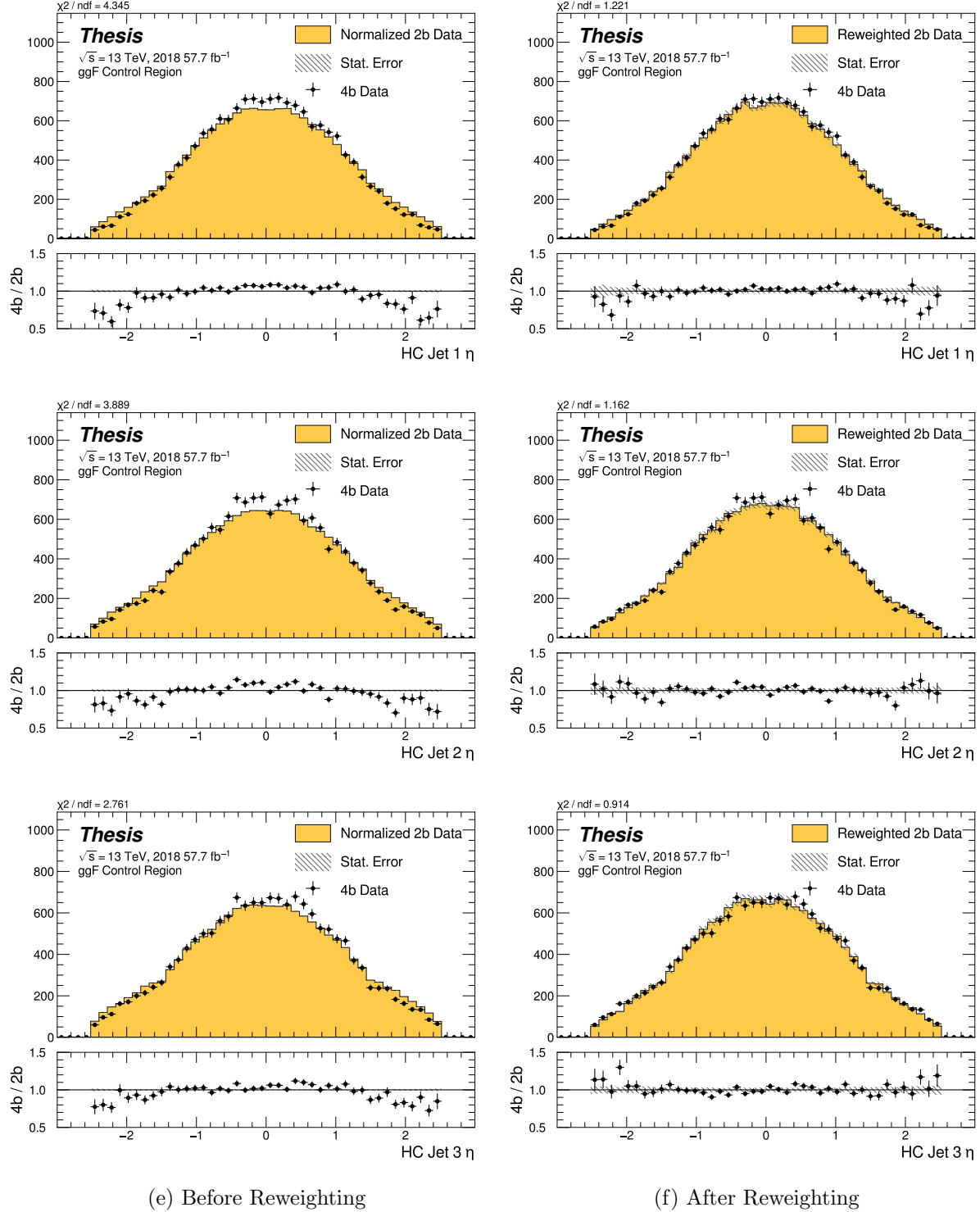


Figure 8.14: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

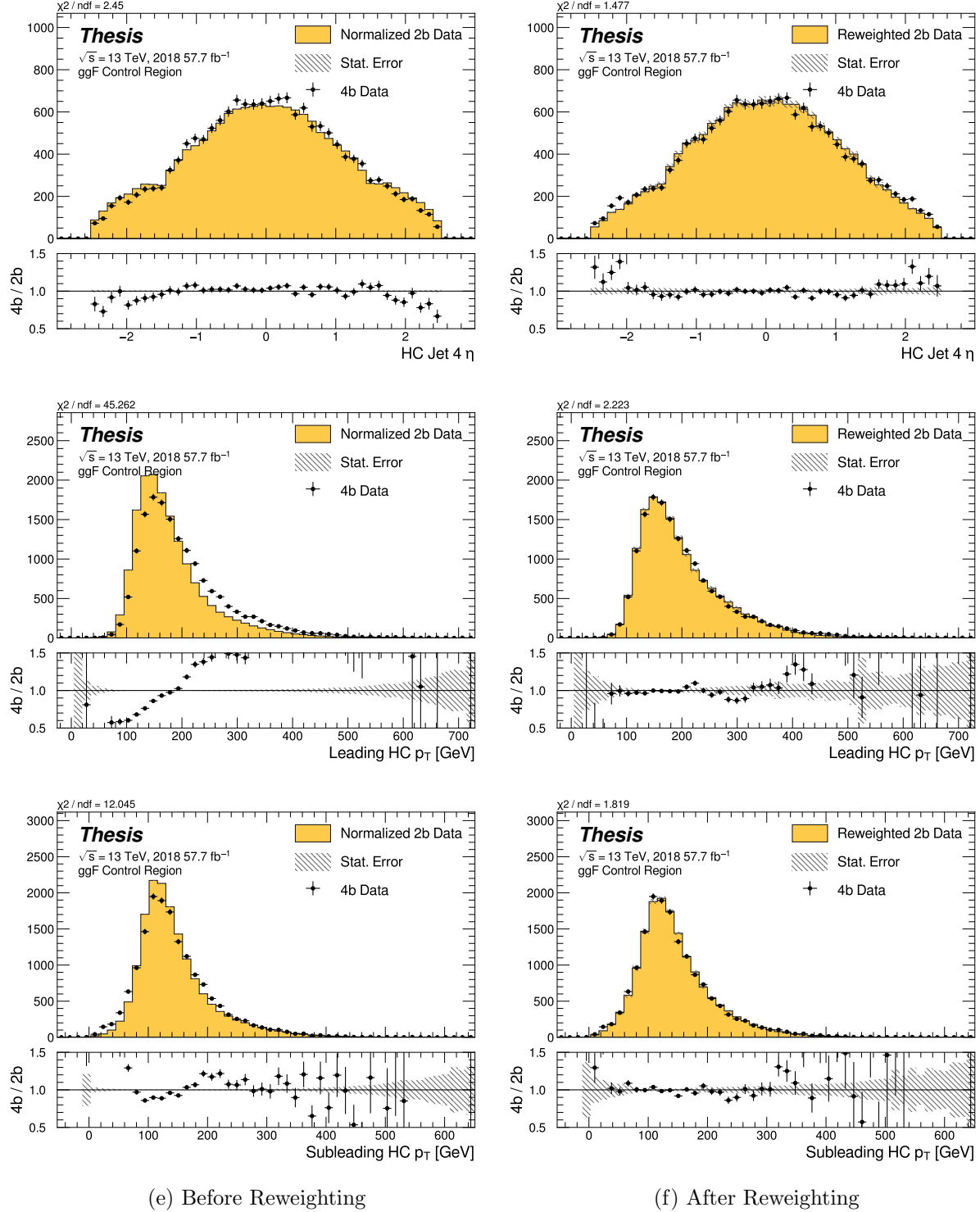


Figure 8.15: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

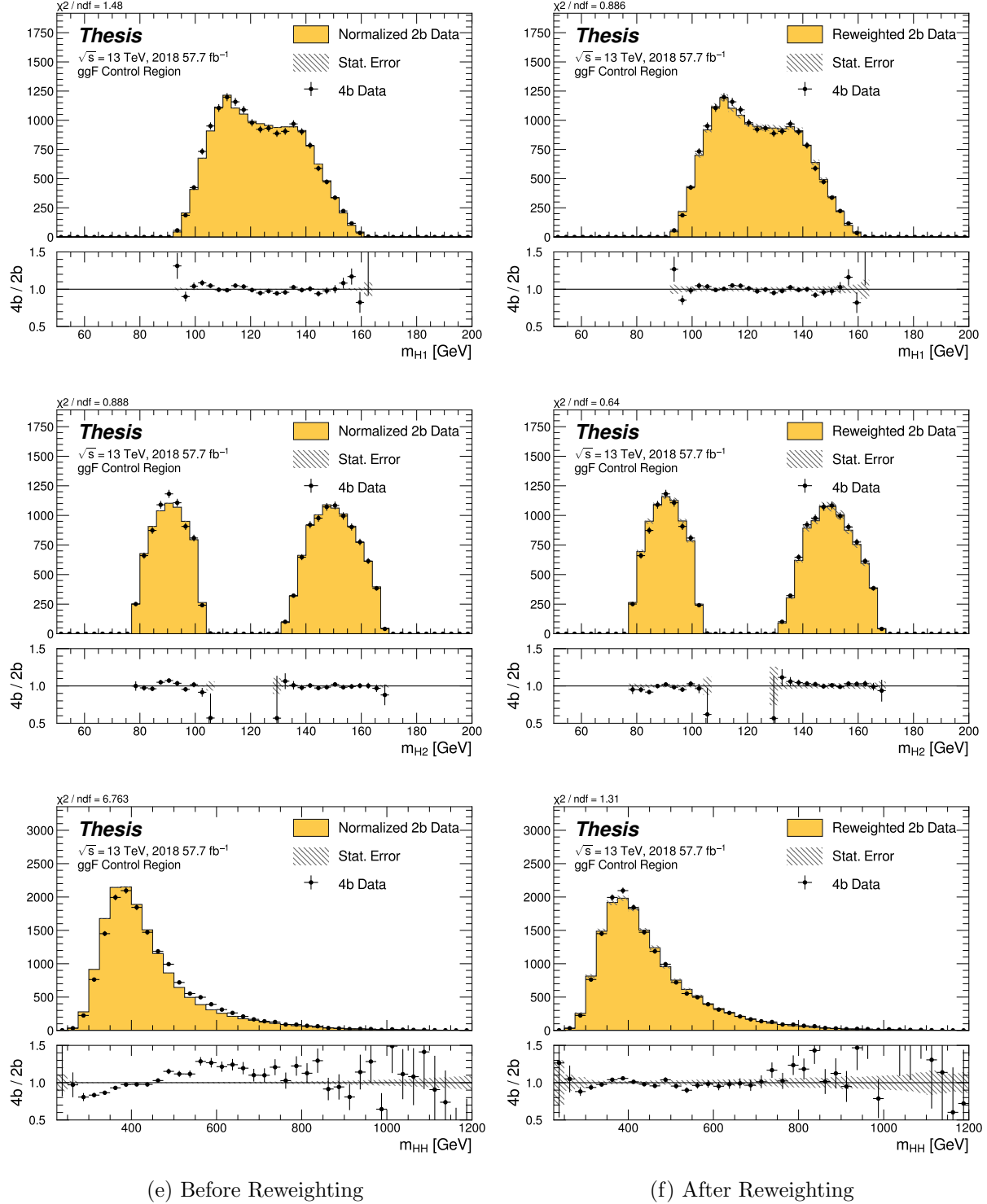


Figure 8.16: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

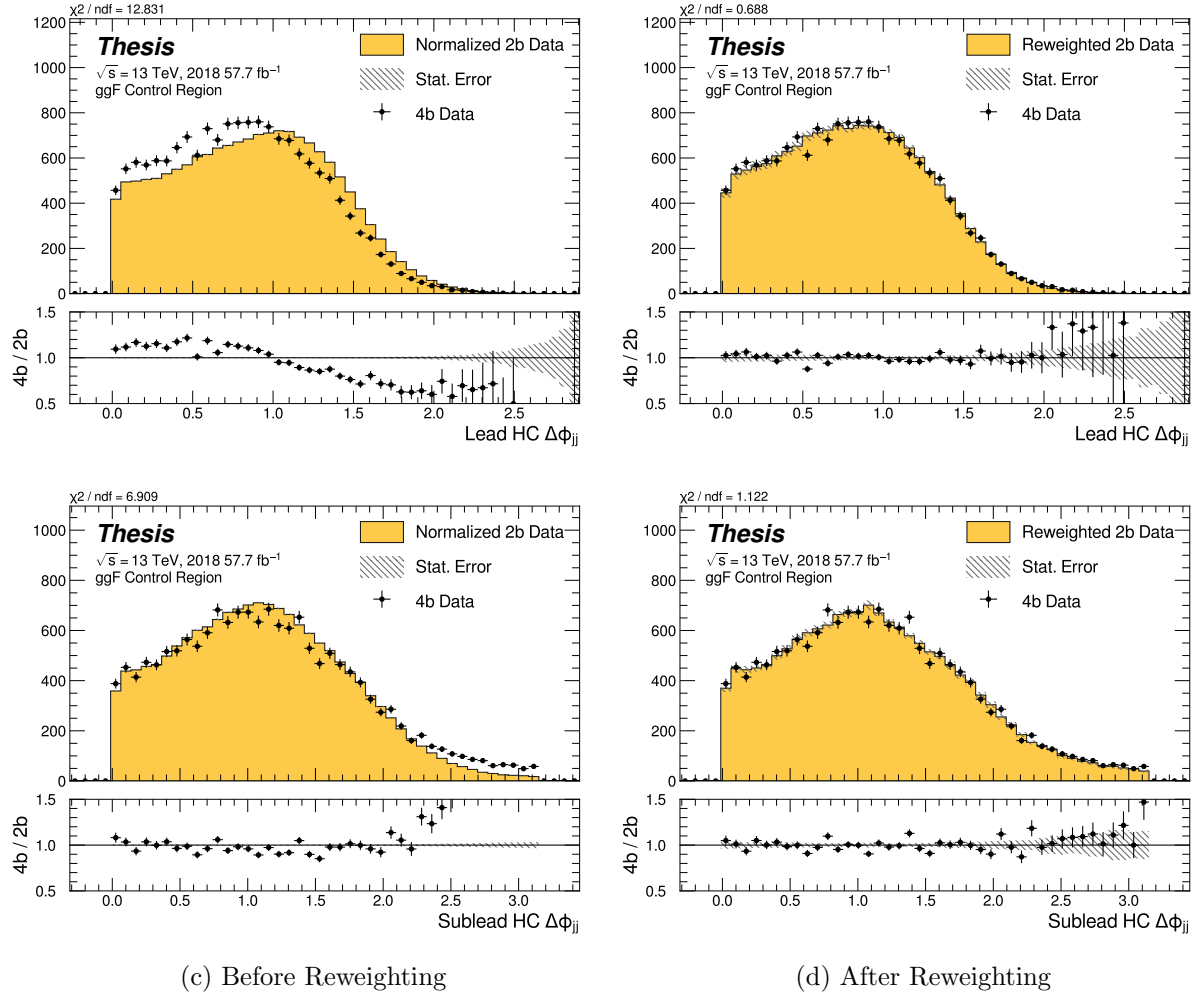


Figure 8.17: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

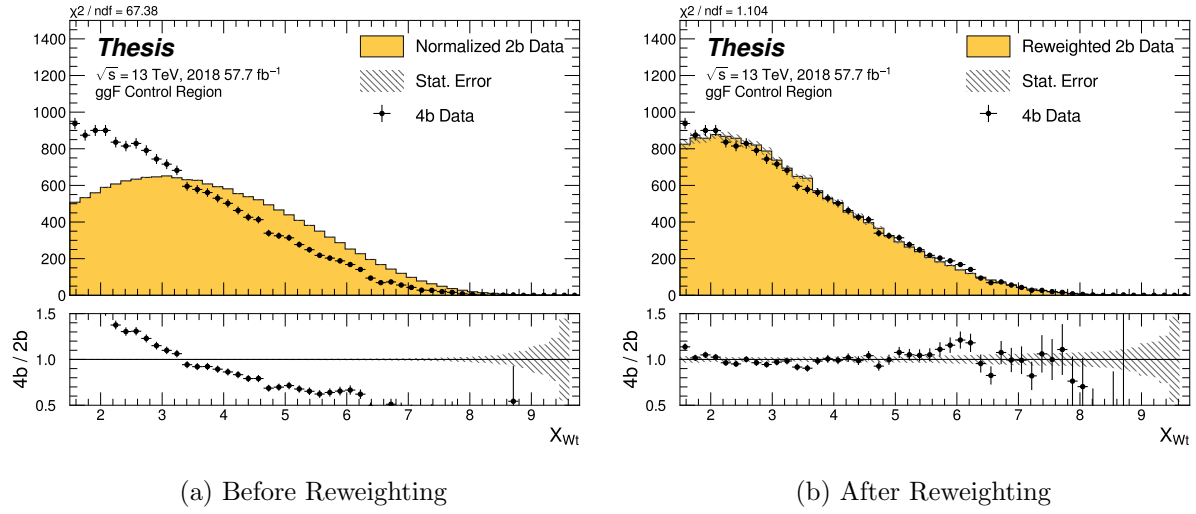


Figure 8.18: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.

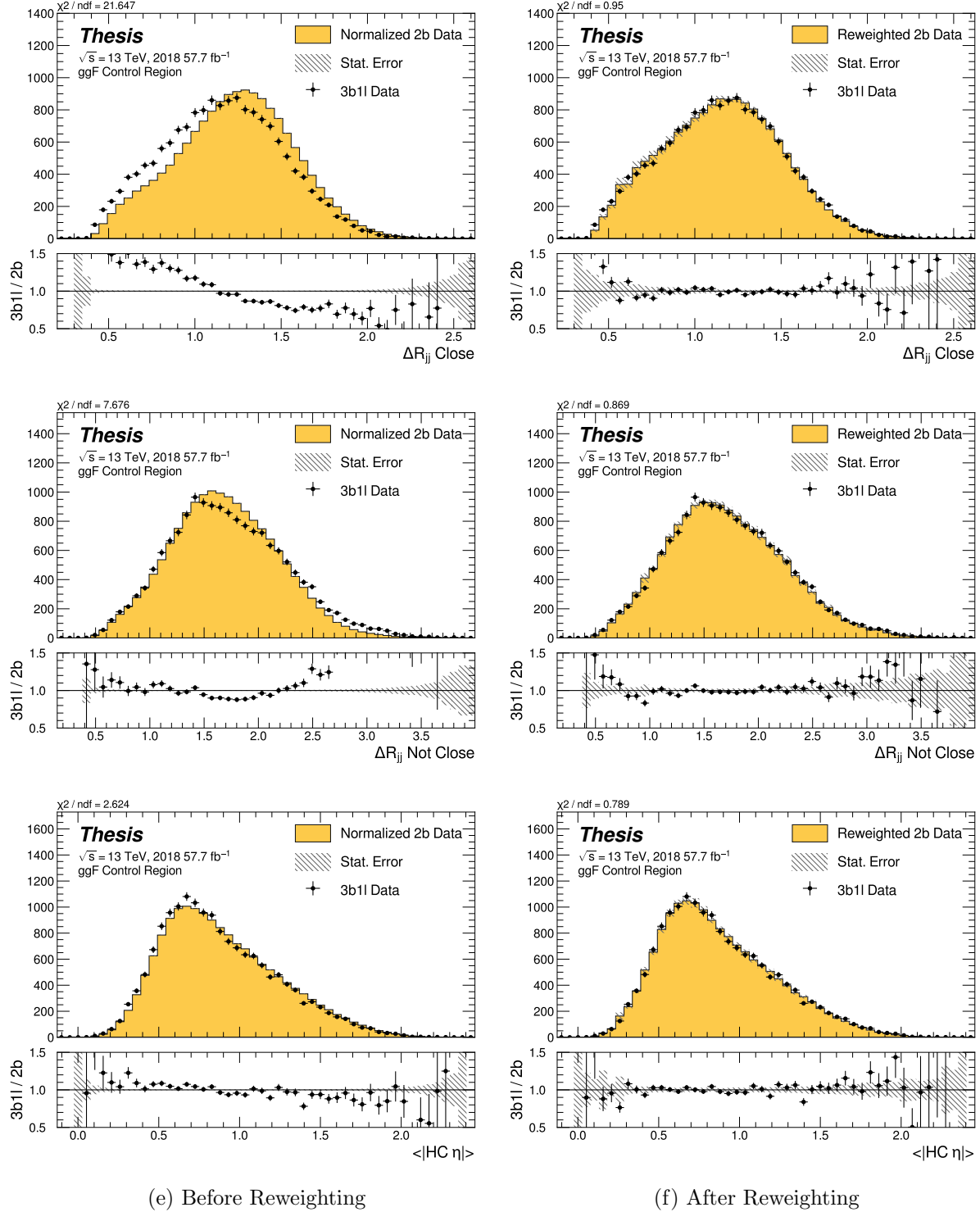


Figure 8.19: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

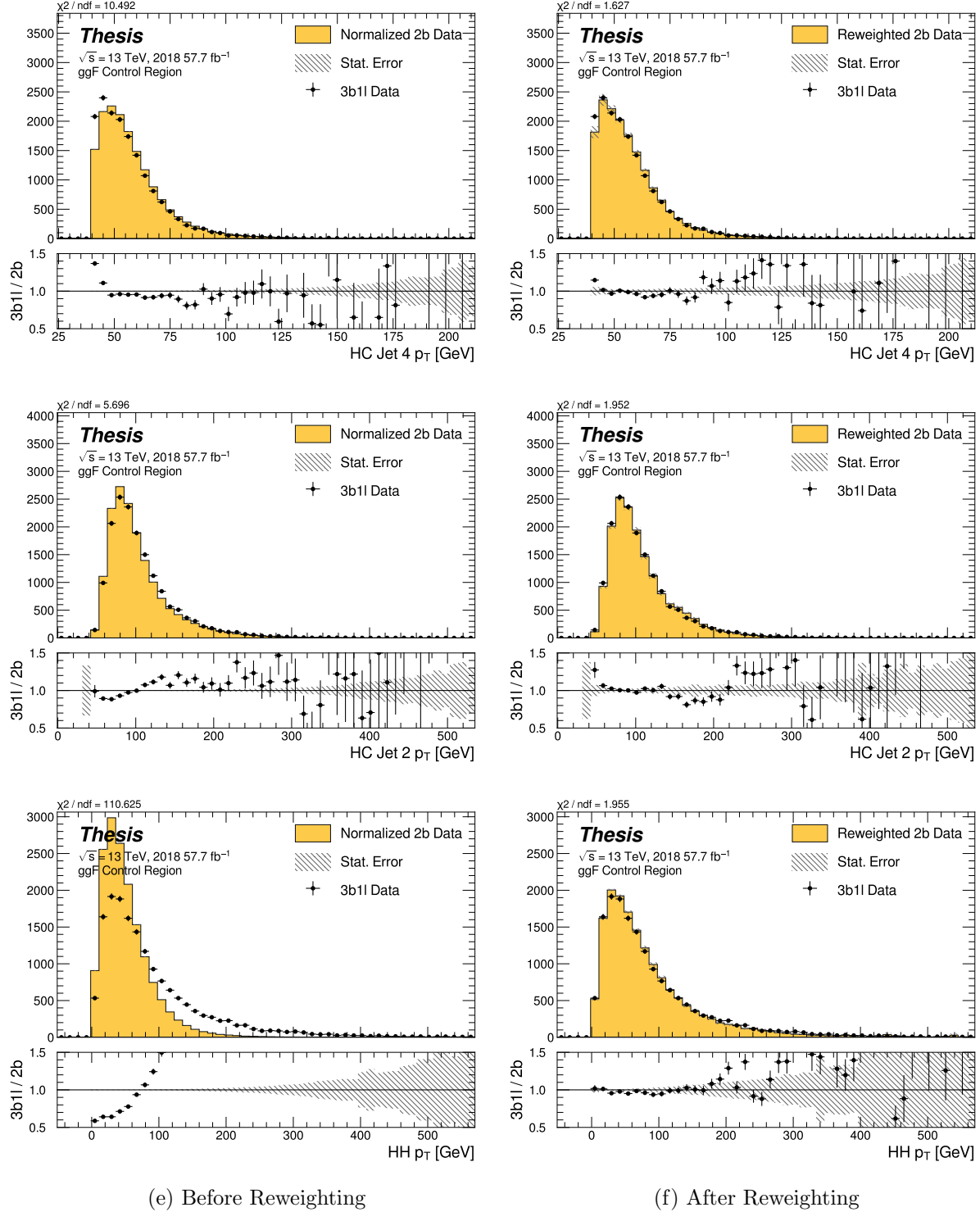


Figure 8.20: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

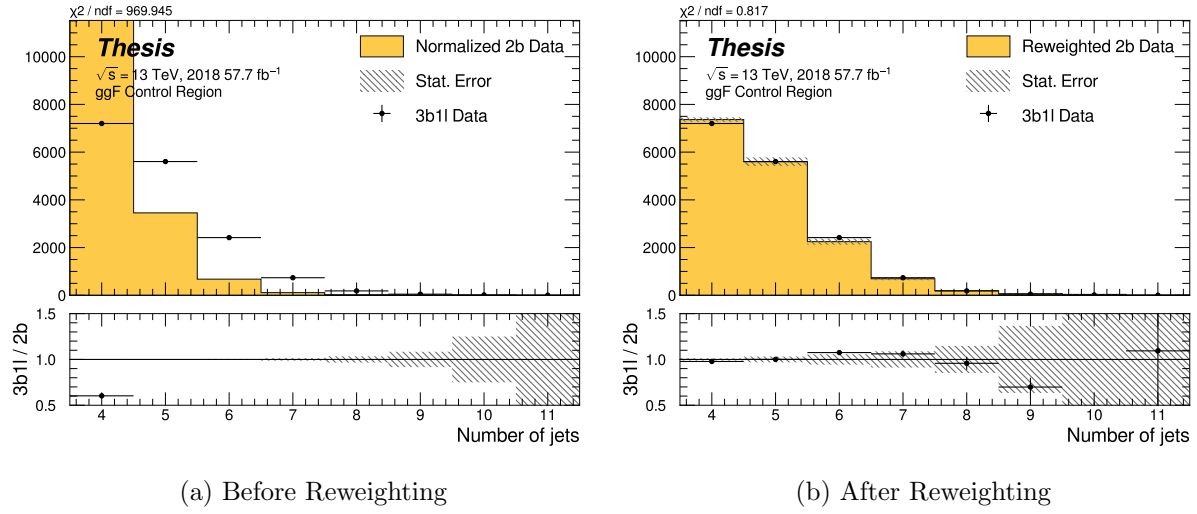
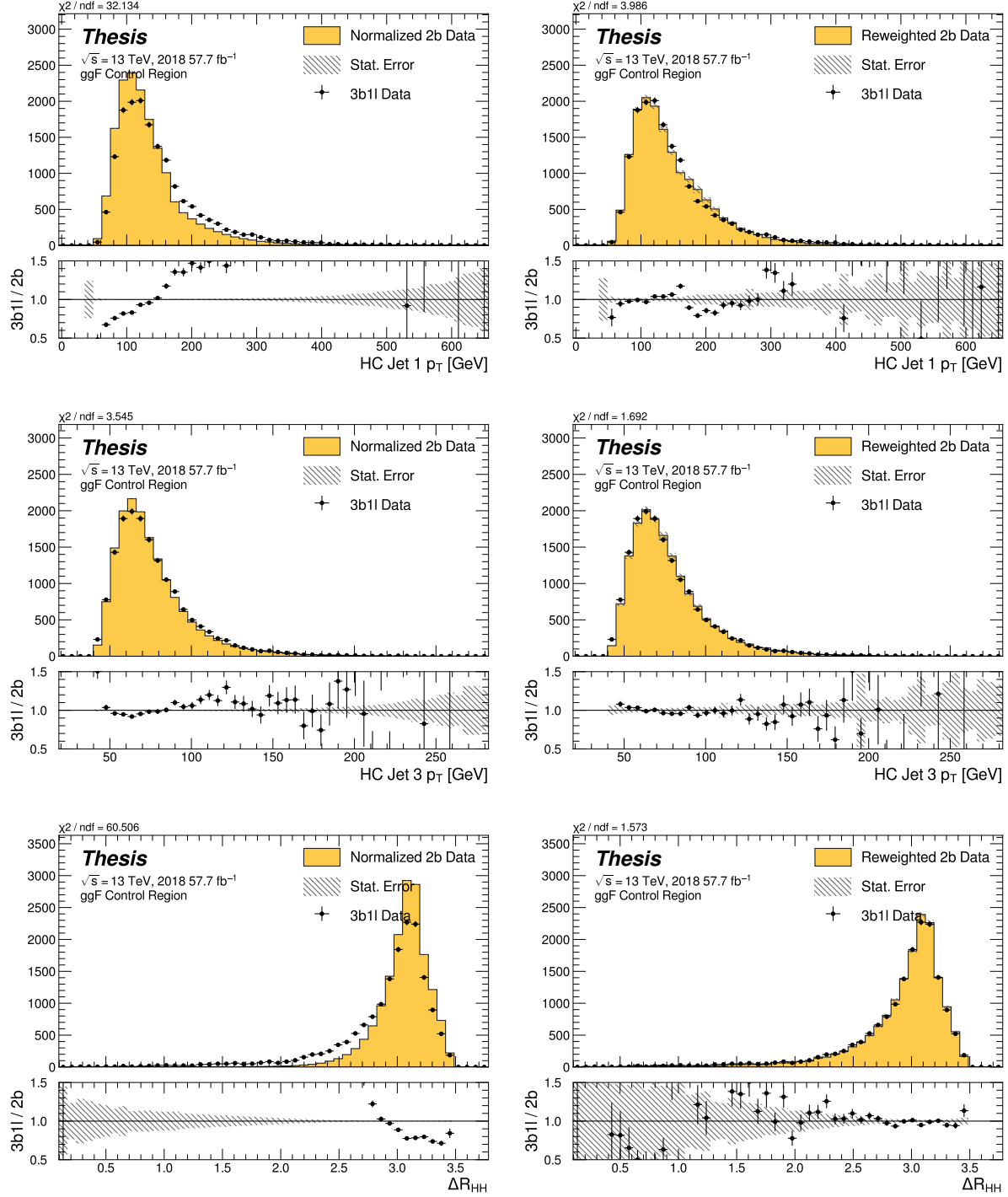


Figure 8.21: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.



(e) Before Reweighting

(f) After Reweighting

Figure 8.22: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

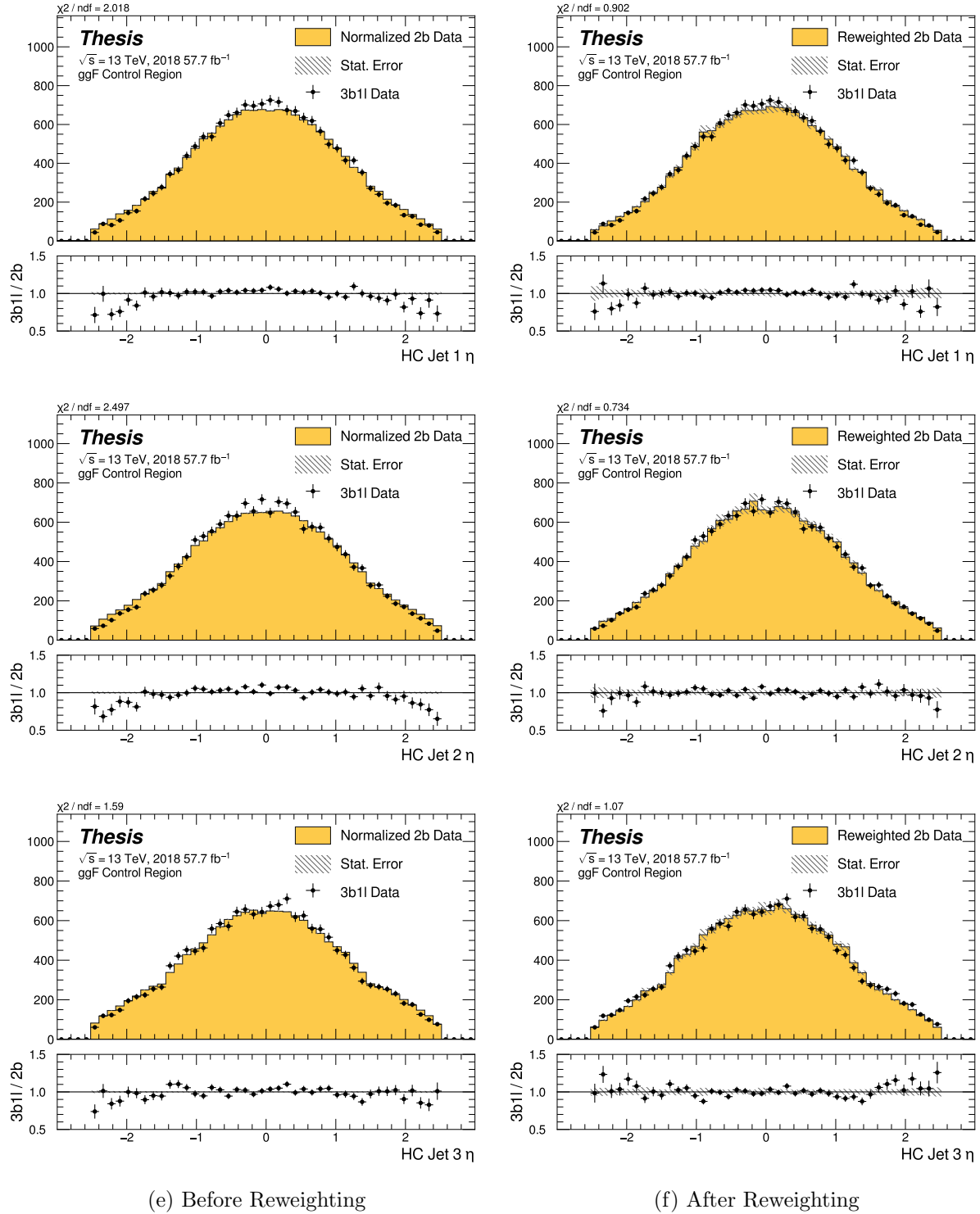


Figure 8.23: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

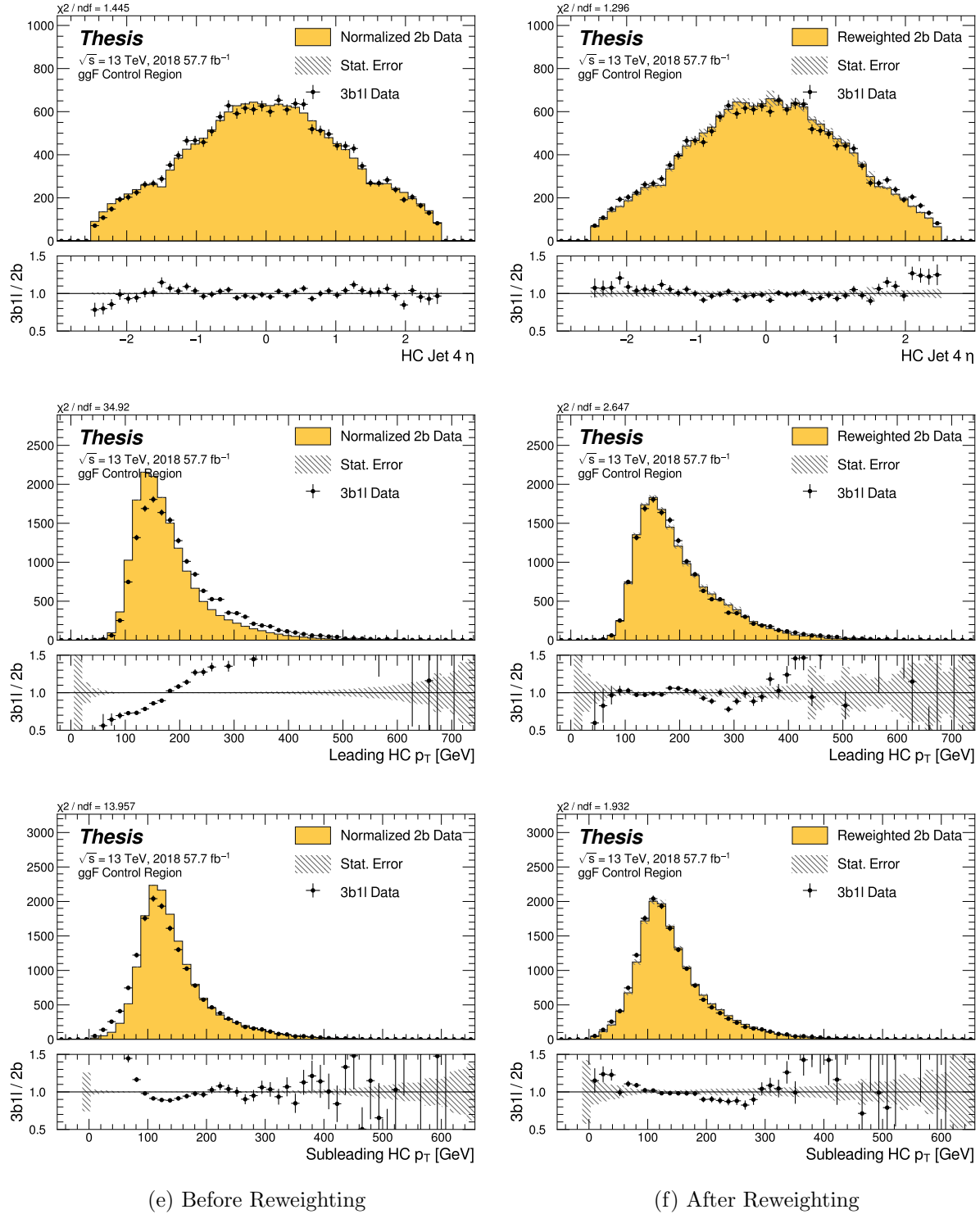


Figure 8.24: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

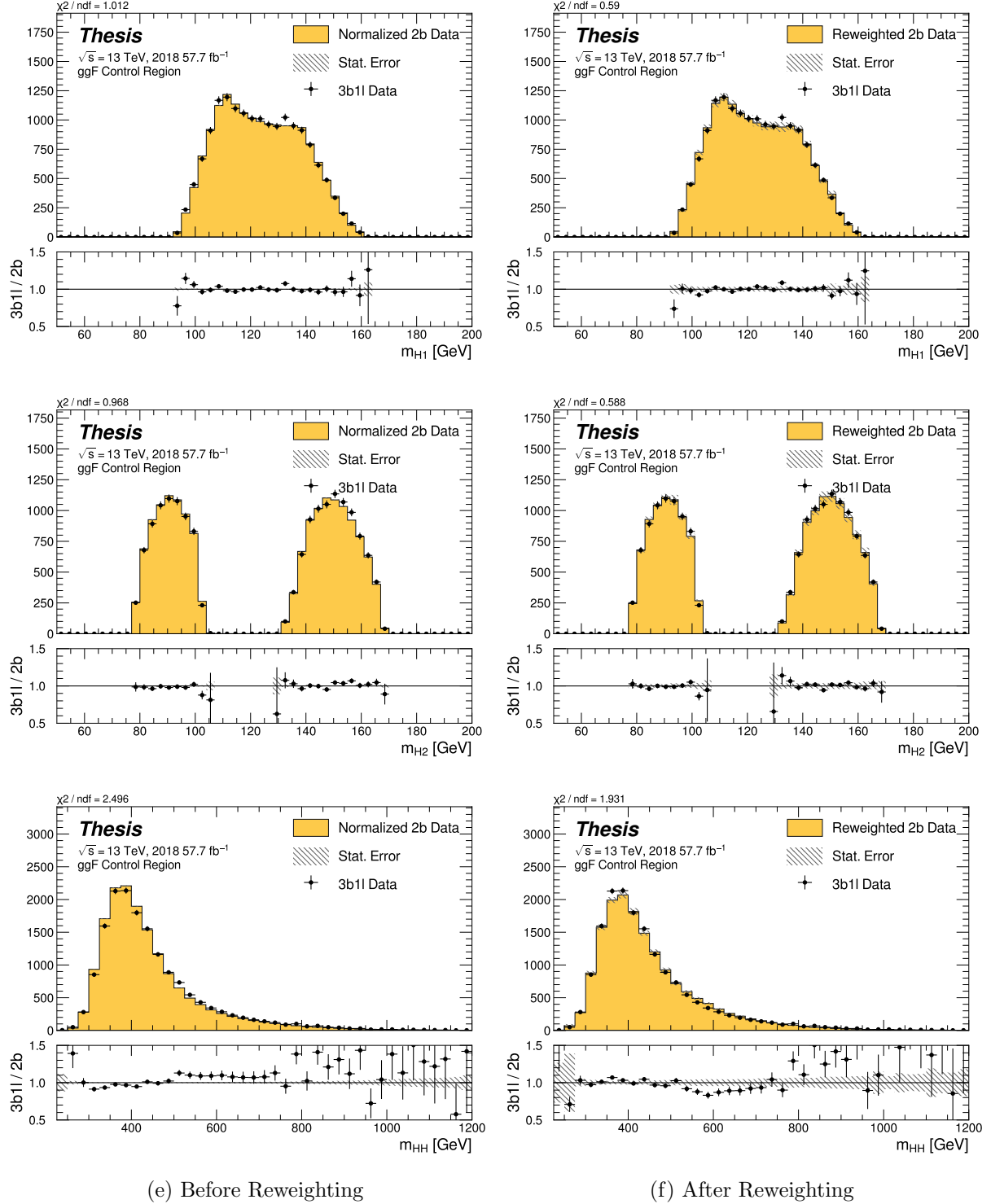


Figure 8.25: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

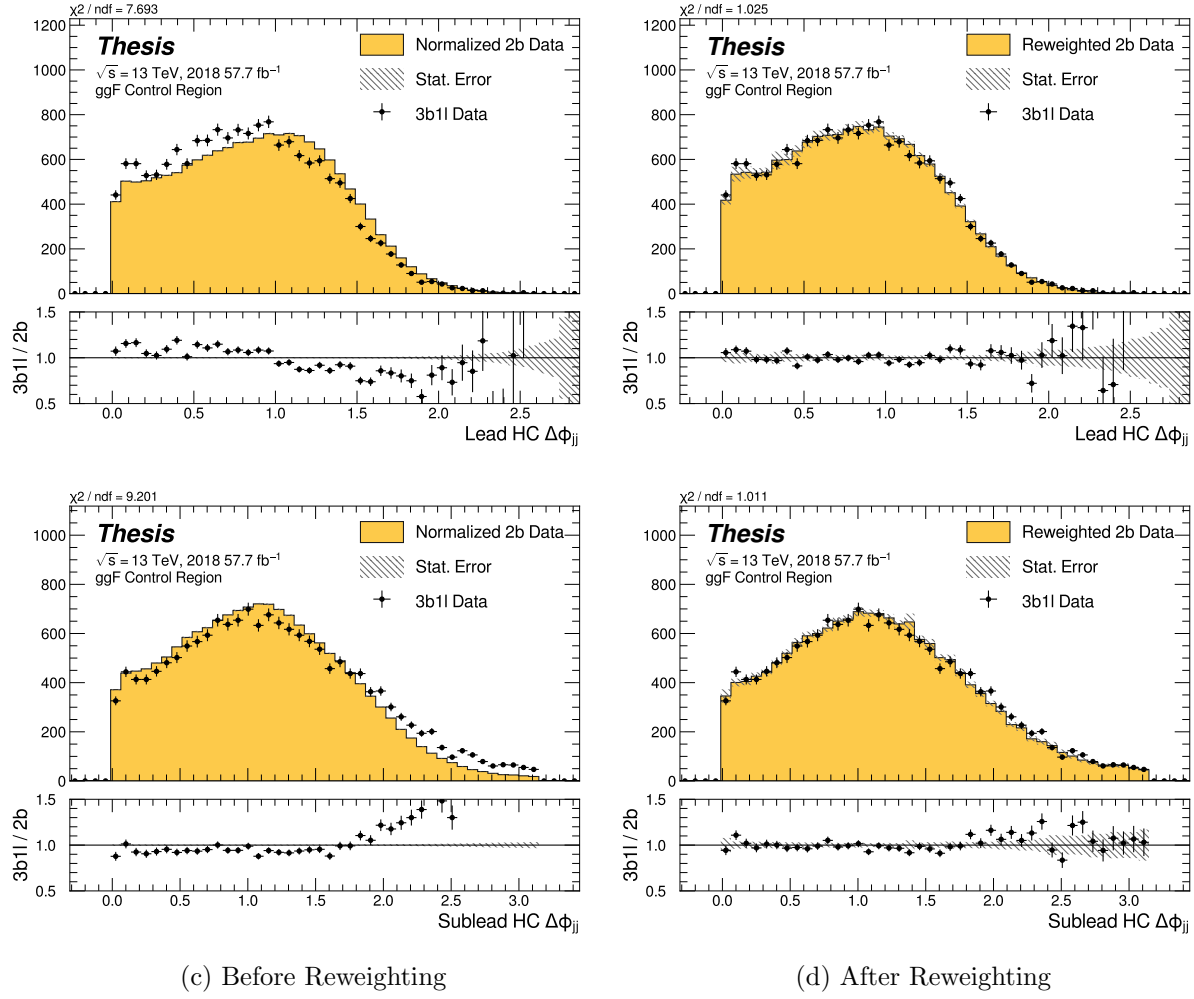


Figure 8.26: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

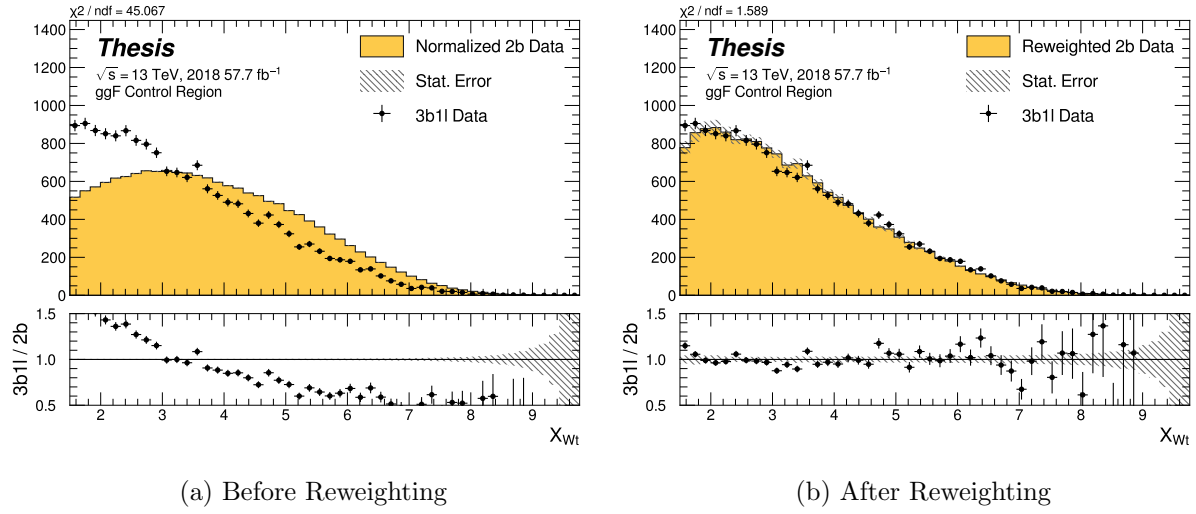


Figure 8.27: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.

Chapter 9

UNCERTAINTIES AND VALIDATION

A variety of uncertainties are assigned to account for known biases in the underlying methods, calibrations, and objects used for this analysis. The largest such uncertainty is associated with the kinematic bias inherent in deriving the background estimate outside of the signal region. However, a statistical biasing of this same estimate also has a significant impact. Additionally, due to the use of Monte Carlo for signal modelling and b -tagging calibration, uncertainties related to mis-modelings in simulation must also be accounted for. Note that the results for the non-resonant analysis presented here are preliminary, and therefore do not include any of the Monte Carlo uncertainties on the signal. Therefore, the discussion of signal systematics *only* applies for the resonant search. The uncertainties on the background are included, however, and are expected to be dominant.

9.1 Statistical Uncertainties and Bootstrapping

There are two components to the statistical error for the neural network background estimate. The first is standard Poisson error, i.e., a given bin, i , in the background histogram has value $n_i = \sum_{j \in i} w_j$, where w_j is the weight for an event j which falls in bin i . Standard techniques then result in statistical error $\delta n_i = \sqrt{\sum_{j \in i} w_j^2}$, which reduces to the familiar $\sqrt{N}$ Poisson error when all w_j are equal to 1.

However, this procedure does not take into account the statistical uncertainty on the w_j due to the finite training dataset. Due to the large size difference between the two tag and four tag datasets, it is the statistical uncertainty due to the four tag training data that dominates that on the background. A standard method for estimating this uncertainty is the bootstrap resampling technique [112]. Conceptually, a set of statistically equivalent sets is

constructed by sampling with replacement from the original training set. The reweighting network is then trained on each of these separately, resulting in a set of statistically equivalent background estimates. Each of these sets is below referred to as a replica.

In practice, as the original training set is large, the resampling procedure is able to be simplified through the relation $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \text{Binomial}(n, 1/n) = \text{Poisson}(1)$, which dictates that sampling with replacement is approximately equivalent to applying a randomly distributed integer weight to each event, drawn from a Poisson distribution with a mean of 1.

Though the network configuration itself is the same for each bootstrap training, the network initialization is allowed to vary. It should therefore be noted that the bootstrap uncertainties implicitly capture the uncertainty due to this variation in addition to the previously mentioned training set variation.

The variation from this bootstrapping procedure is used to assign a bin-by-bin uncertainty which is treated as a statistical uncertainty in the fit. Due to practical constraints, a procedure for approximating the full bootstrap error band is developed which demonstrates good agreement with the full bootstrap uncertainty. This procedure is described below.

9.1.1 Calculating the Bootstrap Error Band

The standard procedure to calculate the bootstrap uncertainty would proceed as follows: first, each network trained on each bootstrap replica dataset would be used to produce a histogram in the variable of interest. This would result in a set of replica histograms (e.g. for 100 bootstrap replicas, 100 histograms would be created). The nominal estimate would then be the mean of bin values across these replica histograms, with errors set by the corresponding standard deviation.

In practice, such an approach is inflexible and demanding both in computation and in storage, in so far as we would like to produce histograms in many variables, with a variety of different cuts and binnings. This motivates a derivation based on event-level quantities. However, due to non-trivial correlations between replica weights, simple linear propagation of event weight variation is not correct.

We therefore adopt an approach which has been empirically found to produce results (for this analysis) in line with those produced by generating all of the histograms, as in the standard procedure. This approach is described below. Note that, for robustness to outliers and weight distribution asymmetry, the median and interquartile range (IQR) are used for the central value and width respectively (as opposed to the mean and standard deviation).

The components involved in the calculation have been mentioned in Chapter 8 and are as follows:

1. Replica weight (w_i): weight predicted for a given event by a network trained on replica dataset i .
2. Replica norm (α_i): normalization factor for replica i . This normalizes the reweighting prediction of the network trained on replica dataset i to match the corresponding target yield.
3. Median weight (w_{med}): median weight for a given event across replica datasets, used for the nominal estimate. Defined (for 100 bootstrap replicas) as

$$w_{med} \equiv \text{median}(\alpha_1 w_1, \dots, \alpha_{100} w_{100}) \quad (9.1)$$

4. Normalization correction (α_{med}): normalization factor to match the predicted yield of the median weights (w_{med}) to the target yield in the training region.

As mentioned in Chapter 8, the *nominal estimate* is constructed from the set of median weights and the normalization correction, i.e. $\alpha_{med} \cdot w_{med}$.

For the bootstrap error band, a “varied” histogram is then generated by applying, for each event, a weight equal to the median weight (with no normalization correction) plus half the interquartile range of the replica weights: $w_{varied} = w_{med} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(w_1, \dots, w_{100})$.

This varied histogram is scaled to match the yield of the nominal estimate. To account for variation of the nominal estimate yield, a normalization variation is calculated from the

interquartile range of the replica norms: $\frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{100})$. This variation, multiplied into the nominal estimate, is used to set a baseline for the varied histogram described above.

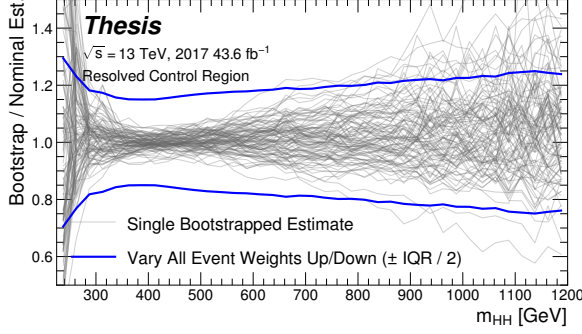
Denoting $H(\text{weights})$ as a histogram constructed from a given set of weights, $Y(\text{weights})$ as the predicted yield for a given set of weights, the final varied histogram is thus:

$$H(w_{med} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(w_1, \dots, w_{100})) \cdot \frac{Y(\alpha_{med} w_{med})}{Y(w_{med} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(w_1, \dots, w_{100}))} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{100}) \cdot H(\alpha_{med} w_{med}) \quad (9.2)$$

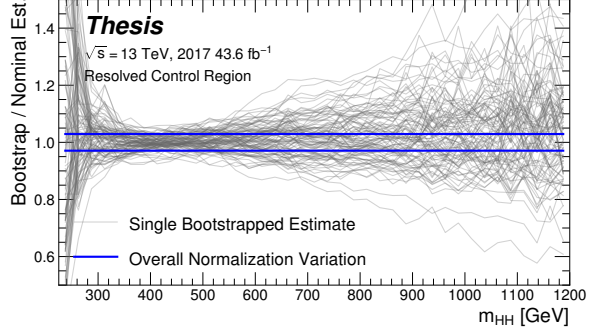
where the first term roughly describes the behavior of the bootstrap variation across the distribution of the variable of interest while the second term describes the normalization variation of the bootstrap replicas.

The difference between the varied histogram and the nominal histogram is then taken to be the bootstrap statistical uncertainty on the nominal histogram.

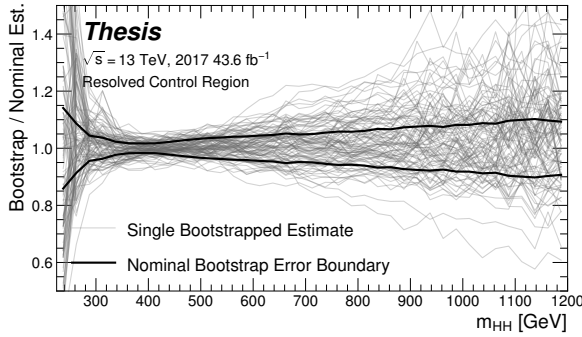
Figure 9.1 demonstrates how each of the components described above contribute to the uncertainty envelope for the non-resonant 2017 Control Region and compares this approximate band to the variation of histograms from individual bootstrap estimates. The error band constructed from the above procedure is seen to provide a good description of the bootstrap variation.



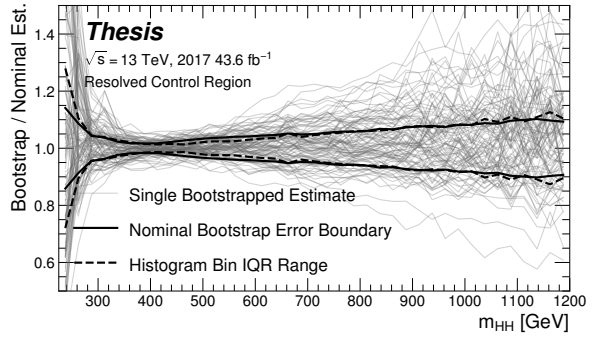
(a) IQR varied histogram (before normalizing)



(b) Normalization correction



(c) Final bootstrap error band



(d) Comparison with histogram bin IQR

Figure 9.1: Illustration of the approximate bootstrap band procedure, shown as a ratio to the nominal estimate for the 2017 non-resonant background estimate. Each grey line is from the m_{HH} prediction for a single bootstrap training. Figure 9.1(a) shows the variation histograms constructed from median weight $\pm$ the IQR of the replica weights. It can be seen that this captures the rough shape of the bootstrap envelope, but is not good estimate for the overall magnitude of the variation. Figure 9.1(b) demonstrates the applied normalization correction, and Figure 9.1(c) shows the final band (normalized Figure 9.1(a) + Figure 9.1(b)). Comparing this with the IQR variation for the prediction from each bootstrap in each bin in Figure 9.1(d), the approximate envelope describes a very similar variation.

9.2 Background Shape Uncertainties

To account for the systematic bias associated with deriving the reweighting function in the control region and extrapolating to the signal region, an alternative background model is derived in the validation region. Because of the fully data-driven nature of the background model, this is an uncertainty assessed on the full background. The alternative model and the baseline are consistent with the observed data in their training regions, and differences between the alternative and baseline models are used to define a shape uncertainty on the m_{HH} spectrum, with a two-sided uncertainty defined by symmetrizing the difference about the baseline.

For the resonant analysis, this uncertainty is split into two components to allow for two independent variations of the m_{HH} spectrum: a low- H_T and a high- H_T component, where H_T is the scalar sum of the p_T of the four jets constituting the Higgs boson candidates, and serves as a proxy for m_{HH} , while avoiding introducing a sharp discontinuity. The boundary value is 300 GeV. The low- H_T shape uncertainty primarily affects the m_{HH} spectrum below 400 GeV (close to the kinematic threshold) by up to around 5%, and the high- H_T uncertainty mainly m_{HH} above this by up to around 20% relative to nominal. These separate m_{HH} regimes are by design – the H_T split is introduced to prevent low mass bins from constraining the high mass uncertainty and vice-versa.

This was the *status quo* shape uncertainty decomposition from the Early Run 2 analysis. A decomposition in terms of orthogonal polynomials, which would provide increased flexibility, was also evaluated. This study revealed that both decompositions are able to account for the systematic deviations between four tag data and the background estimate (evaluated in the kinematic validation region), and produce almost identical limits. The simpler *status quo* decomposition is therefore kept.

For the non-resonant analysis, the quadrant nature of the background estimation leads to a natural breakdown of the nuisance parameters: quadrants are defined in the signal region along the same axes as those used for the control and validation region definitions. Variations

are then assessed in each of these signal region quadrants, corresponding to regions that are “closer to” and “further away from” the nominal and alternate estimate regions, fully leveraging the power of the two equivalent but systematically different estimates.

Figure 9.2 shows an example of the variation in each H_T region for the 2018 resonant analysis. Figure 9.3 shows the example quadrant variation for the 2018 $4b$ non-resonant analysis.

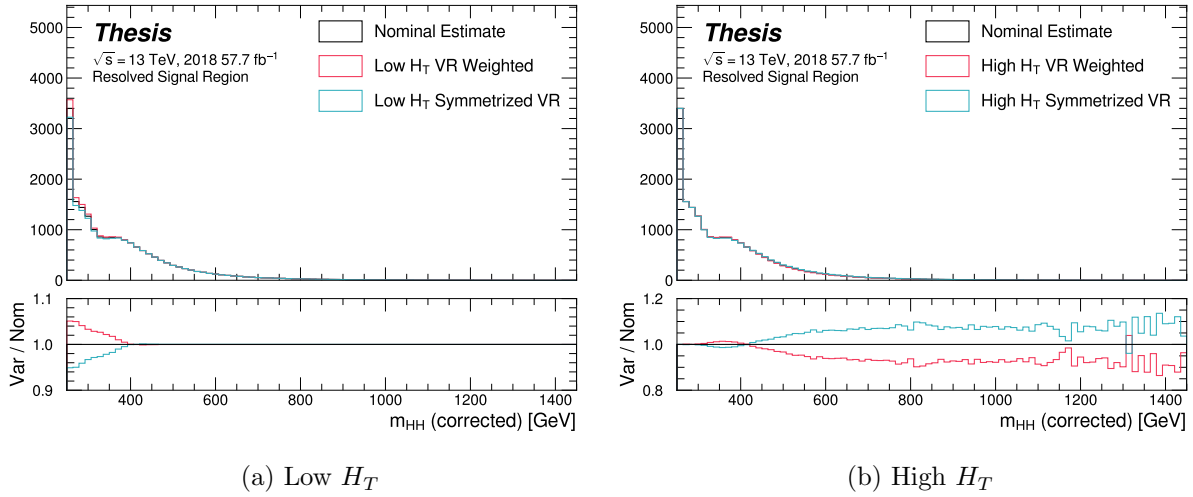
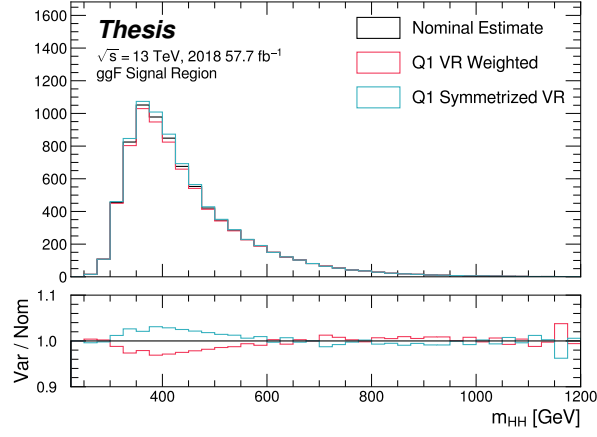
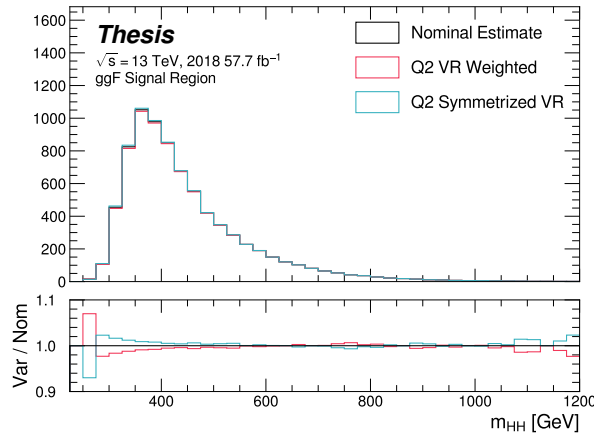


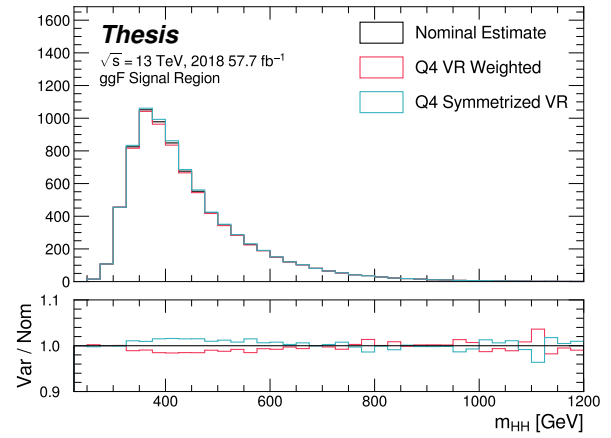
Figure 9.2: **Resonant Search:** Example of CR vs VR variation in each H_T region for 2018. The variation nicely factorizes into low and high mass components.



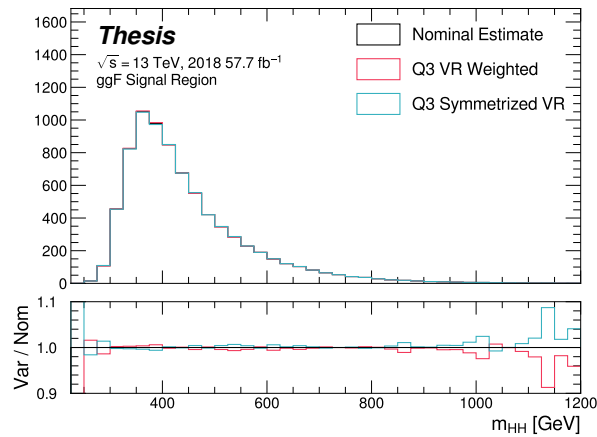
(a) Q1 (top)



(b) Q2 (left)



(c) Q4 (right)



(d) Q3 (bottom)

Figure 9.3: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Example of CR vs VR variation in each signal region quadrant for 2018. Significantly different behavior is seen between quadrants, with the largest variation in quadrant 1 and the smallest in quadrant 4.

9.3 *Signal Uncertainties*

A variety of uncertainties are assessed on the the signal Monte Carlo simulation. As the background estimate is fully data driven, such uncertainties are not needed for the background estimate. Note again that, for the results presented in this thesis, such uncertainties are only assigned in the resonant search.

Detector modeling and reconstruction uncertainties account for differences between Monte Carlo simulation and real data due to mis-modeling of the detector as well as due to the different performance of algorithms on simulation compared to data. In this analysis they consist of uncertainties related to jet properties and uncertainties stemming from the flavor tagging procedure. The jet uncertainties are treated according to the prescription in [113] and are implemented as variations of the jet properties. These cover uncertainty in jet energy scale and resolution. Uncertainties in b -tagging efficiency are treated according to the prescription in Ref. [86] and implemented as scale factors applied to the Monte Carlo event weights.

Trigger uncertainties stem from imperfect knowledge of the ratio between the efficiency of a given trigger in data to its efficiency in Monte Carlo simulation. This ratio is applied as a scale factor to all simulated events, with the systematic variations produced by varying the scale factor up or down by one sigma. Such variations are evaluated based on measurements of per-jet online efficiencies for both jet reconstruction and b -tagging, and these are used to compute event-level uncertainties. These are then applied as overall weight variations on the simulated events.

An uncertainty on the total integrated luminosity used in this analysis is also applied, and is measured to be 1.7% [103], obtained using the LUCID-2 detector for the primary luminosity measurements [114].

A variety of theoretical uncertainties are also assessed on the signal. Such uncertainties are assessed by generating samples following the configuration of the baseline samples, but with modifications to probe various aspects of the simulation. These include uncertainties in the parton density functions (PDFs); uncertainties due to missing higher order terms in the

matrix elements; and uncertainties in the modelling of the underlying event, which includes multi-parton interactions, of hadronic showers and of initial and final state radiation.

Uncertainties due to modelling of the parton shower and the underlying event are evaluated by comparing results from using two different generators, namely HERWIG 7.1.3 and PYTHIA 8.235. No significant dependence on the variable of interest, m_{HH} , is observed. Therefore, a 5% flat systematic uncertainty is assigned to all signal samples, extracted from the acceptance comparison for the full 4-tag selection.

Uncertainties in the matrix element calculation are evaluated by varying the factorization and renormalization scales used in the generator up and down by a factor of two, both independently and simultaneously. This results in an effect smaller than 1% for all variations and all masses; the impact of such uncertainties is therefore neglected.

PDF uncertainties are evaluated using the PDF4LHC_NLO_MC set [104] by calculating the signal acceptance for each PDF replica and taking the standard deviation. In all cases, these uncertainties result in an effect smaller than 1% on the signal acceptance; therefore these are also neglected.

Theoretical uncertainties on the $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio [115] are also included.

9.4 Background Validation

In addition to checking the performance of the background estimate in the control and validation regions, a variety of alternative selections are defined to allow for a full “dress rehearsal” of the background estimation procedure.

Both the resonant and non-resonant analyses make use of a *reversed* $\Delta\eta$ region, in which the kinematic cut on $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ is reversed, so that events are required to have $\Delta\eta_{HH} > 1.5$. This is orthogonal to the nominal signal region and has minimal sensitivity, allowing for the comparison of the background estimate $4b$ data in the corresponding “signal region”. For this validation, a new reweighting is trained following nominal procedures, but entirely in the $\Delta\eta_{HH} > 1.5$ region. An example of such a validation is shown for the resonant search in Figure 9.4.

The non-resonant analysis additionally makes use of the $3b + 1$ fail region mentioned above, which again is orthogonal to the nominal signal regions and has minimal sensitivity. The reweighting in this case is between $2b$ and $3b + 1$ fail events rather than between $2b$ and $3b + 1$ loose or $2b$ and $4b$. However, the kinematic selections of signal region events are otherwise identical, allowing for a complementary test of the background estimate. This validation is shown in Figure 9.5.

Additional validation regions are also being explored, including those based on shifting the position of the set of analysis regions in the Higgs candidate mass plane and rederiving the background estimate in these shifted regions. Though each of these validations is different in some way from the set of regions in which the analysis is performed, evaluation of the performance of the background estimate in these regions is useful for developing and gaining confidence in the background estimation method and the corresponding uncertainties. Non-closure of the method in such regions may additionally be used for assessing uncertainties, but this is not considered here.

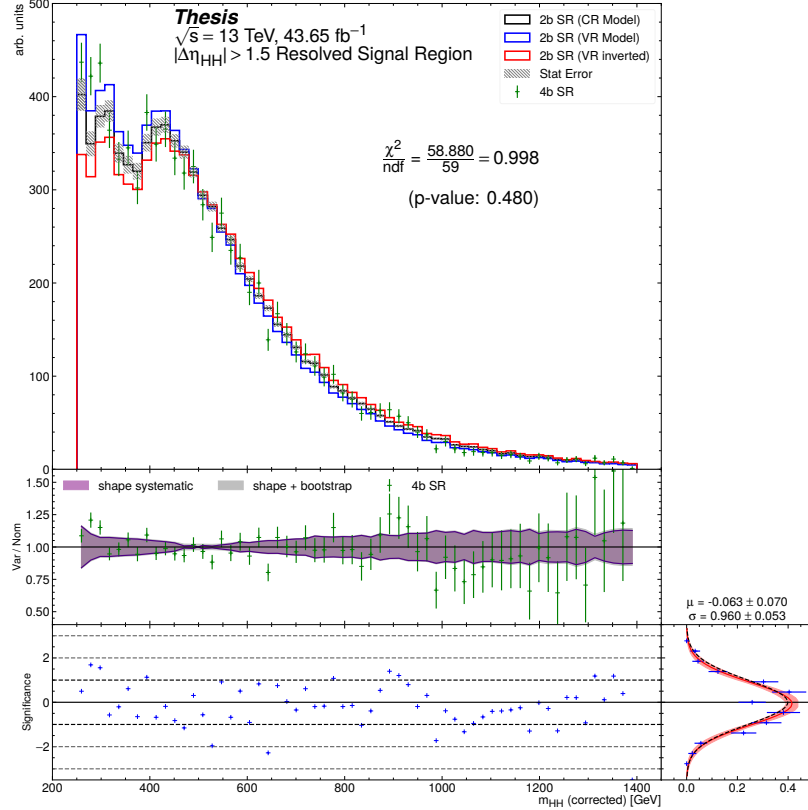


Figure 9.4: **Resonant Search:** Performance of the background estimation method in the resonant analysis reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ kinematic signal region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures entirely within the reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region, and the resulting model, including uncertainties, is compared with $4b$ data in the corresponding signal region. Good agreement is shown. The the quoted p -value uses the χ^2 test statistic, and demonstrates no evidence that the data differs from the assessed background.

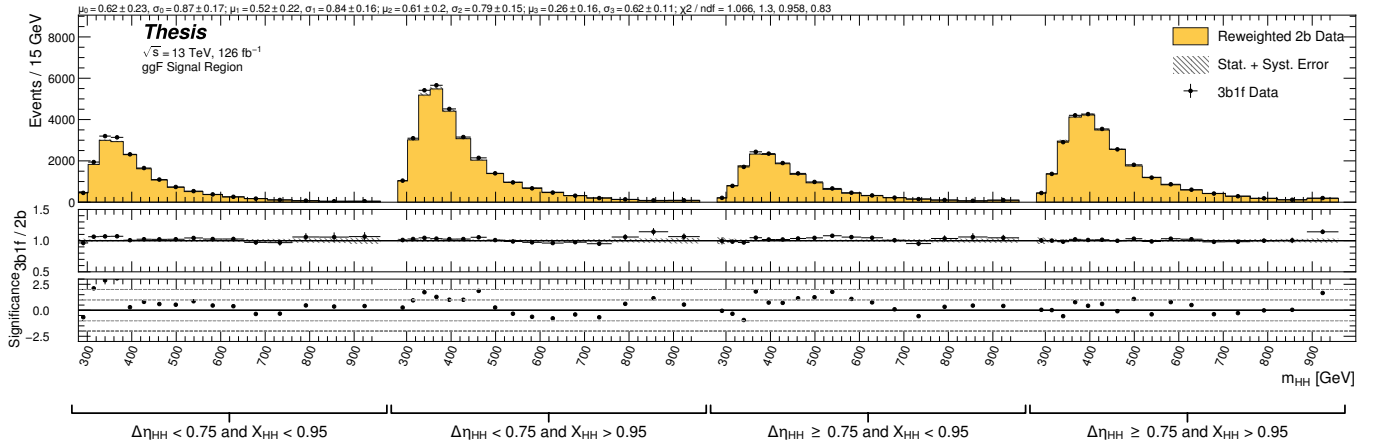


Figure 9.5: **Non-resonant Search:** Performance of the background estimation method in the $3b + 1$ fail validation region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures but with a reweighting from $2b$ to $3b + 1$ fail events. Generally good agreement is seen, though there is some deviation at very low masses in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ low X_{HH} category.

Chapter 10

RESULTS

10.1 m_{HH} Distributions

10.1.1 Resonant Search

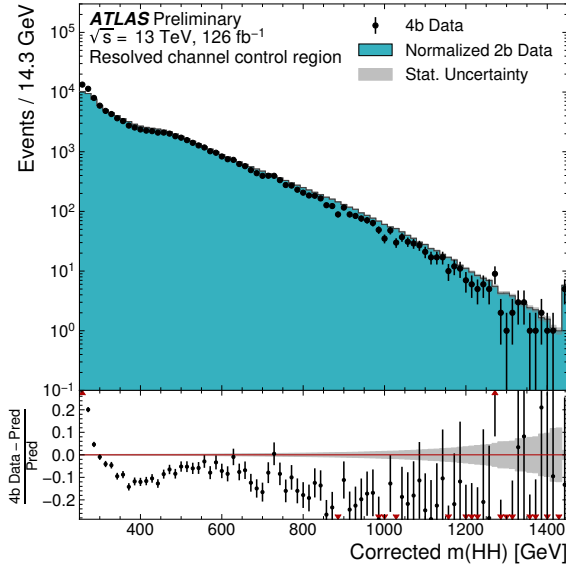
The final discriminant used for the resonant search is corrected m_{HH} . Histogram binning was optimized for the resonant search to be 84 equal width bins from 250 GeV to 1450 GeV, corresponding to a bin width of 14.3 GeV, and overflow events (events above 1450 GeV) are included in the last bin. A demonstration of the performance of the reweighting on this distribution is shown in Figure 10.1 for the the control region and Figure 10.2 for the the validation region. A background-only profile likelihood fit is run for the distribution in the signal region, and results with representative signals overlaid are shown in Figure 10.3. *4b* data yields, estimated background, and signal event yields are extracted for representative mass hypotheses in a corrected m_{HH} window containing roughly 90 % of the corresponding signal after this same background-only fit in the signal region. These results are shown in Tables 10.1 and 10.2 for spin-0 and spin-2 respectively. Note that the plots and tables show the sum across all years, but the signal extraction fit and background estimate are run with the years separately. Agreement is generally good throughout.

Table 10.1: Resolved $4b$ signal region data, estimated background, and signal event yields in corrected m_{HH} windows containing roughly 90% of each signal, for representative spin-0 mass hypotheses. The signal is normalized to the overall expected limit on its cross-section; its uncertainties are evaluated by adding all individual components in quadrature. The background yields and uncertainties are evaluated after a background-only fit to the data. [3].

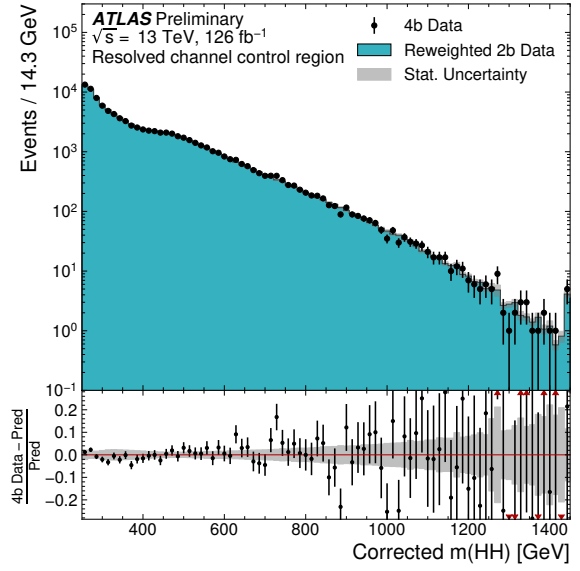
$m(X)$ [GeV]	Corrected m_{HH} range [GeV]	Data	Background model			Spin-0 signal model		
260	[250, 321]	18 554	18 300	$\pm$	110	503	$\pm$	43
500	[464, 536]	2 827	2 866	$\pm$	22	105.40	$\pm$	5.70
800	[750, 850]	358	366.2	$\pm$	7.3	37.70	$\pm$	1.70
1200	[1079, 1250]	68	52.6	$\pm$	1.7	11.71	$\pm$	0.62

Table 10.2: Resolved $4b$ signal region data, estimated background, and signal event yields in corrected m_{HH} windows containing roughly 90% of each signal, for representative spin-2 mass hypotheses. The signal is normalized to the overall expected limit on its cross-section; its uncertainties are evaluated by adding all individual components in quadrature. The background yields and uncertainties are evaluated after a background-only fit to the data. [3].

$m(G_{KK}^*)$ [GeV]	Corrected m_{HH} range [GeV]	Data	Background model			Spin-2 signal model		
260	[250, 393]	26 775	26 650	$\pm$	130	368	$\pm$	25
500	[464, 636]	4 655	4 719	$\pm$	37	138.60	$\pm$	5.70
800	[707, 950]	795	811	$\pm$	13	52.10	$\pm$	1.90
1200	[993, 1279]	146	120.6	$\pm$	2.8	14.45	$\pm$	0.67



(a) Before Reweighting



(b) After Reweighting

Figure 10.1: **Resonant Search:** Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on corrected m_{HH} , with Figure 10.1(a) showing $2b$ events normalized to the total $4b$ yield and Figure 10.1(b) applying the reweighting procedure. Agreement is much improved with the reweighting. Note that overall reweighted $2b$ yield agrees with $4b$ yield in the control region by construction.

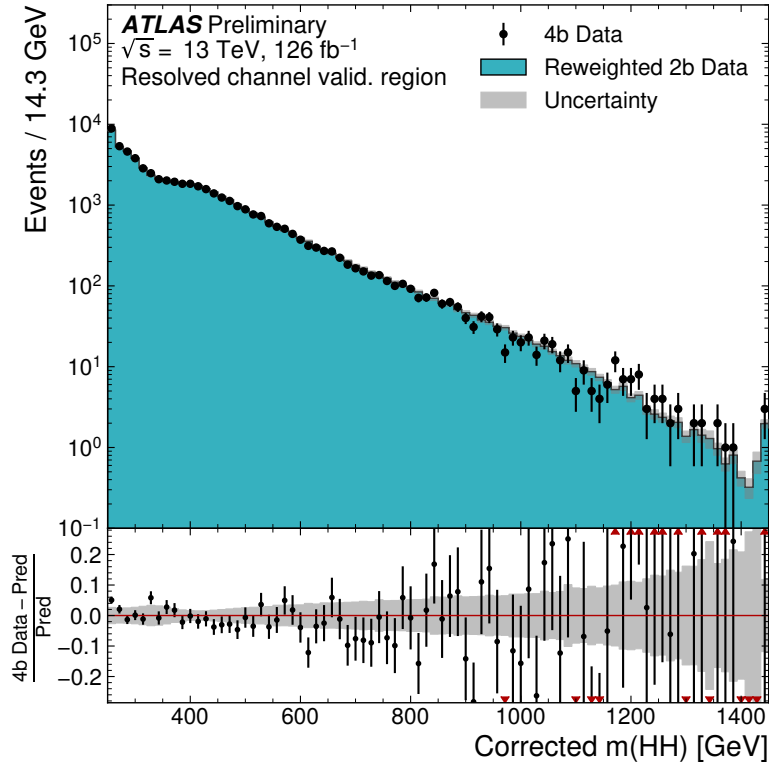


Figure 10.2: **Resonant Search:** Demonstration of the performance of the control region derived reweighting in the validation region on corrected m_{HH} . Agreement is generally good for this extrapolated estimate. Note that the uncertainty band includes the extrapolation systematic, which is defined by a reweighting trained in the validation region.

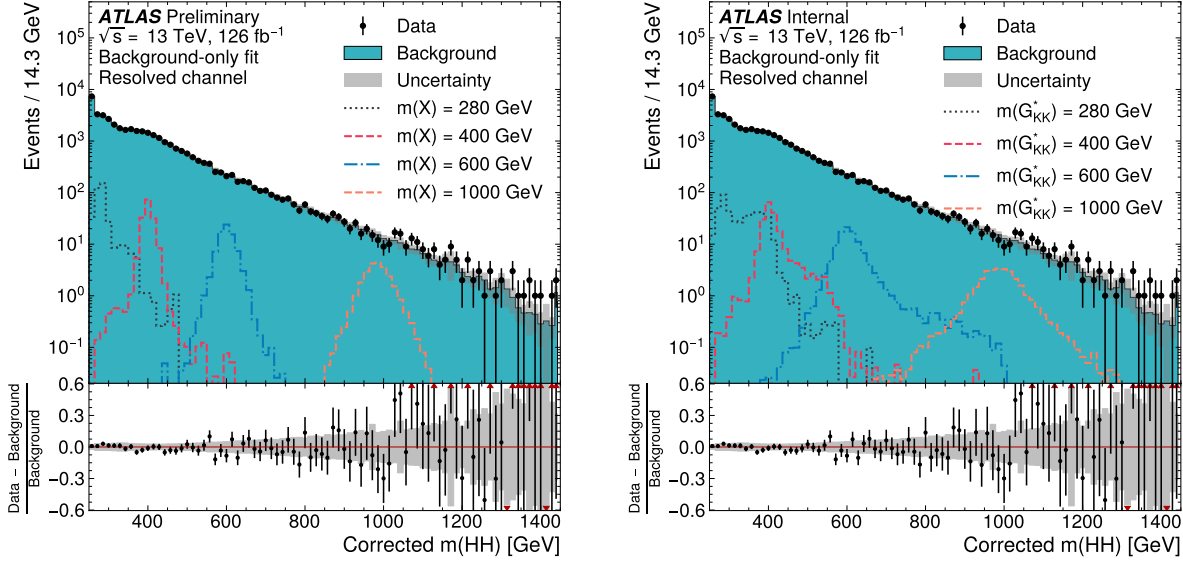


Figure 10.3: **Resonant Search:** Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit. The left plot overlays a variety of representative spin-0 signals, while the right does the same for spin-2. The background and data are identical between the two. The closure is generally quite good, though there is an evident deficit in the background estimate relative to the data for higher values of corrected m_{HH} . Note that the spin-2 signals are significantly wider than the spin-0 signals. Near the kinematic threshold of 250 GeV, this leads to, e.g., the double peaked structure of the 280 GeV signal, which is understood to be an effect of the limited kinematic phase space in this region.

10.1.2 Non-resonant Search

As discussed above, the non-resonant search splits the signal extraction into two categories of $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ ($0 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} < 0.75$ and $0.75 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} < 1.5$), and two categories of X_{HH} ($0 \leq X_{HH} < 0.95$ and $0.95 \leq X_{HH} < 1.6$). To maintain reasonable statistics in each bin entering the signal extraction fit, a variable width binning is considered defined by a resolution parameter, r , and a set range in m_{HH} , where bin edges are determined iteratively as

$$b_{low}^{i+1} = b_{low}^i + r \cdot b_{low}^i, \quad (10.1)$$

where b_{low}^i is the low edge of bin i . The parameters used here are $r = 0.08$ over a range from 280 GeV to 975 GeV, and underflow and overflow are included in the initial and final bin contents respectively. m_{HH} with no correction is used as the final discriminant in each category.

A demonstration of the performance of the reweighting on distributions unrolled across categories is shown in Figures 10.4 and 10.5 for the control region and Figures 10.6 and 10.7 for the validation region. A background-only profile likelihood fit is run for the distribution in the signal region, and results with the Standard Model HH signal and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid are shown for $4b$ in Figure 10.8 and $3b1l$ in Figure 10.9. Note that the plots show the sum across all years, but the signal extraction fit and background estimate are run with the years separately. All bins are normalized to represent a density of Events / 15 GeV.

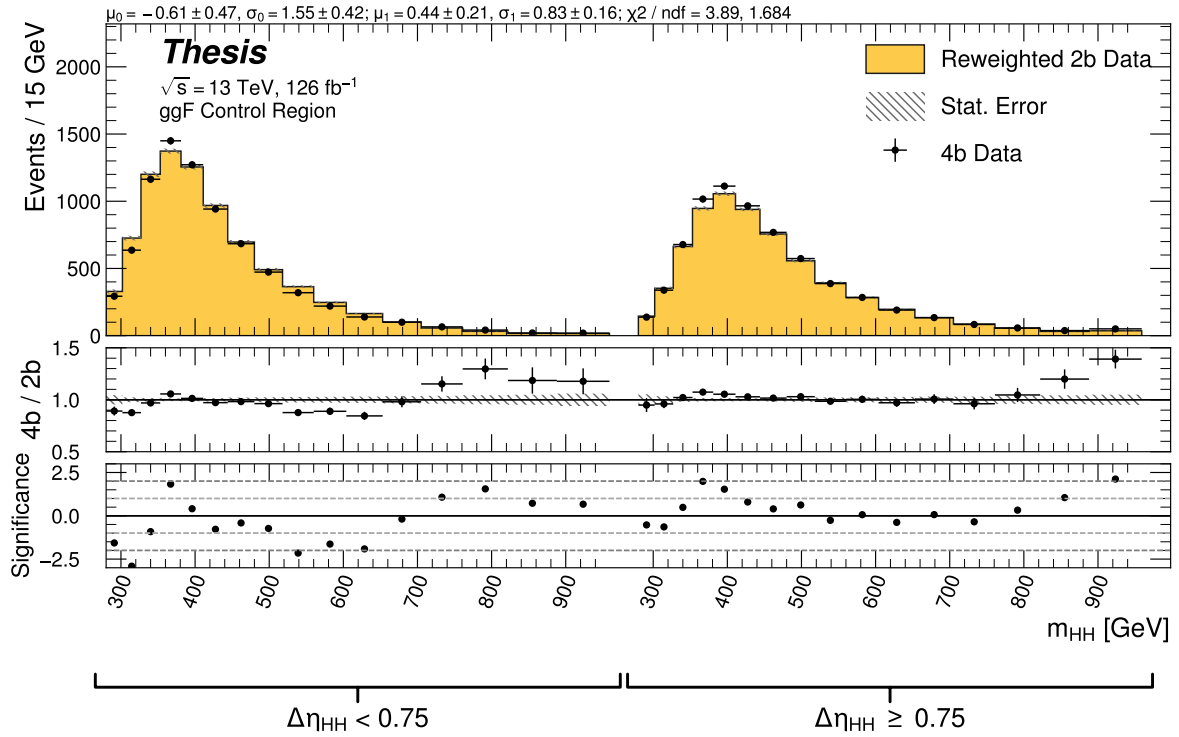


Figure 10.4: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with some residual mis-modeling in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region near 600 GeV.

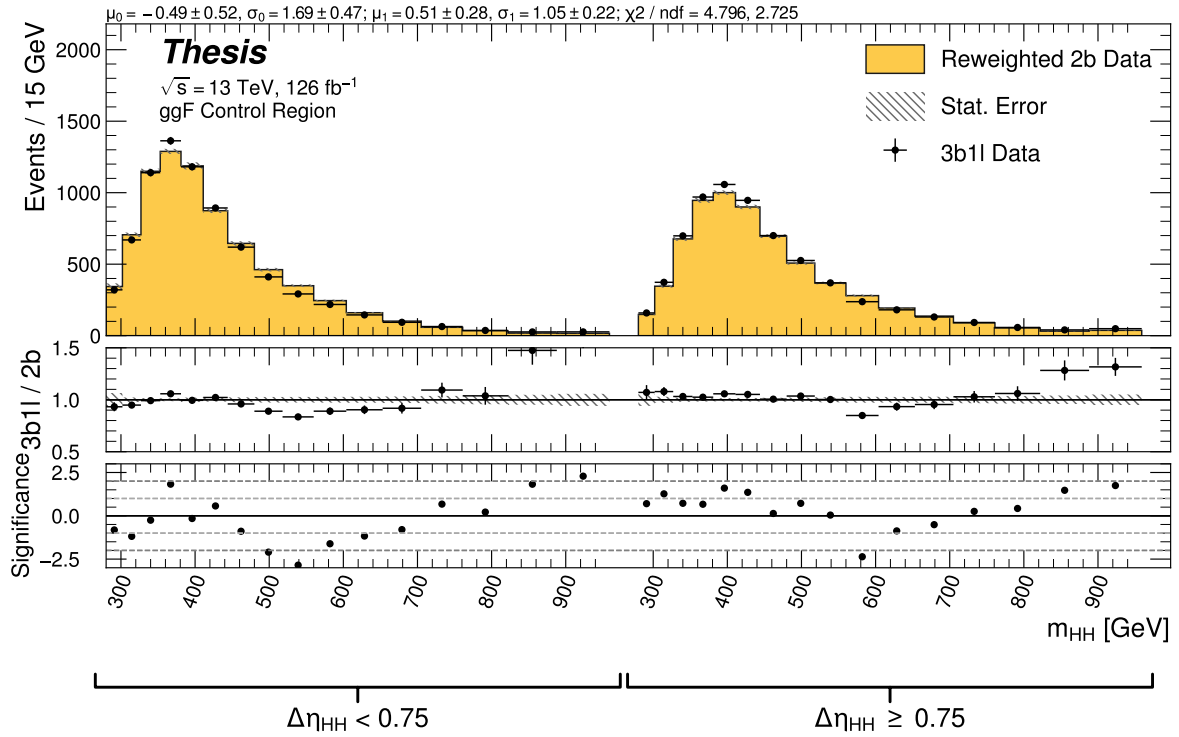


Figure 10.5: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with similar conclusions as for the $4b$ region.

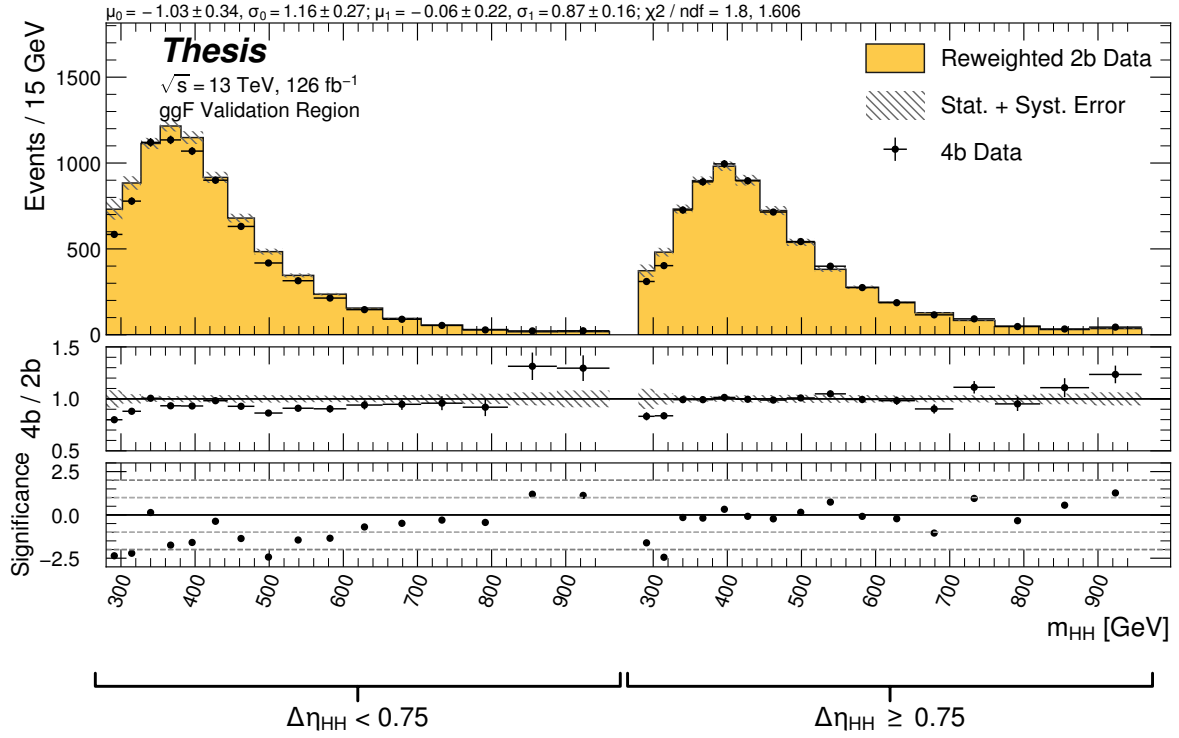


Figure 10.6: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. The low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region is consistently overestimated, but, systematic uncertainties are defined via the difference between VR and CR estimates.

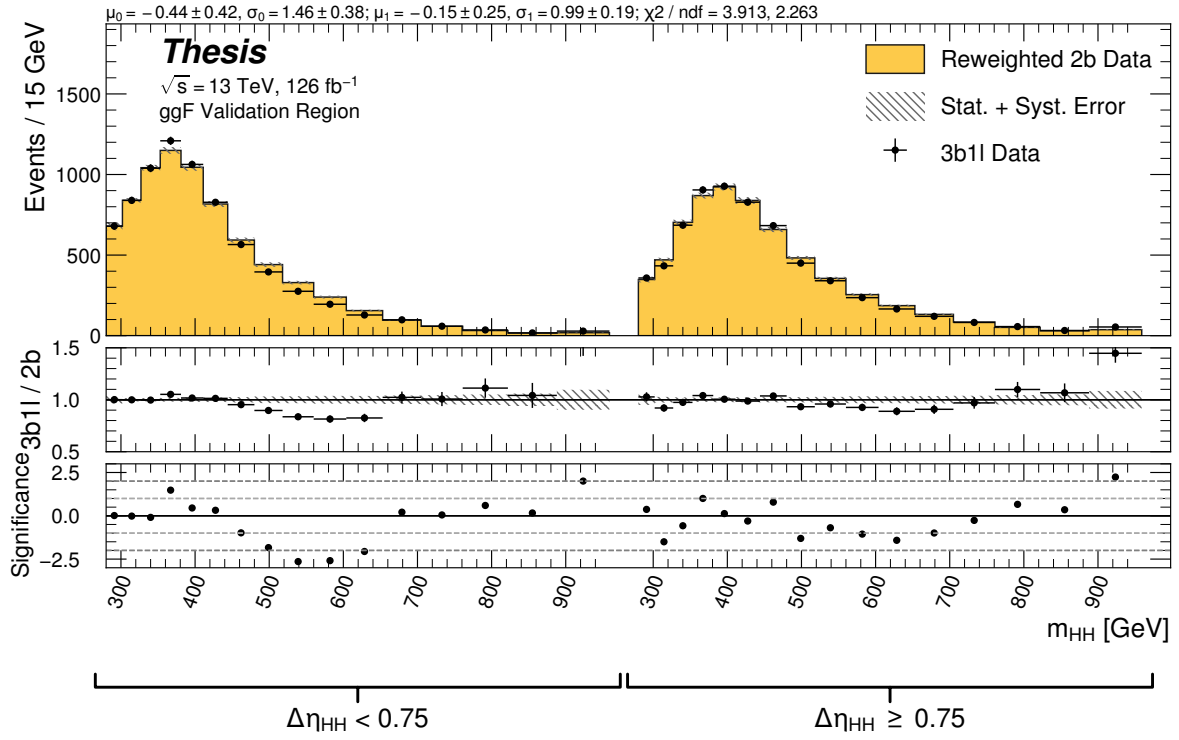


Figure 10.7: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. A deficit is present near 600 GeV, but agreement is fairly good otherwise.

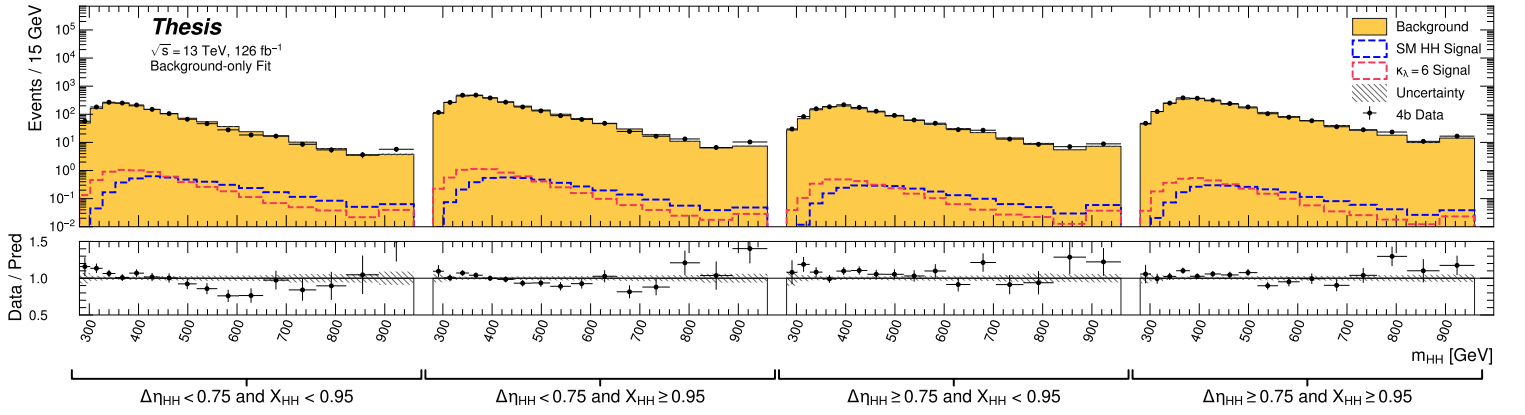


Figure 10.8: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the 4b channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Modeling is generally quite good near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements are seen at very low and high masses. A deficit is present in low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ bins near 600 GeV.

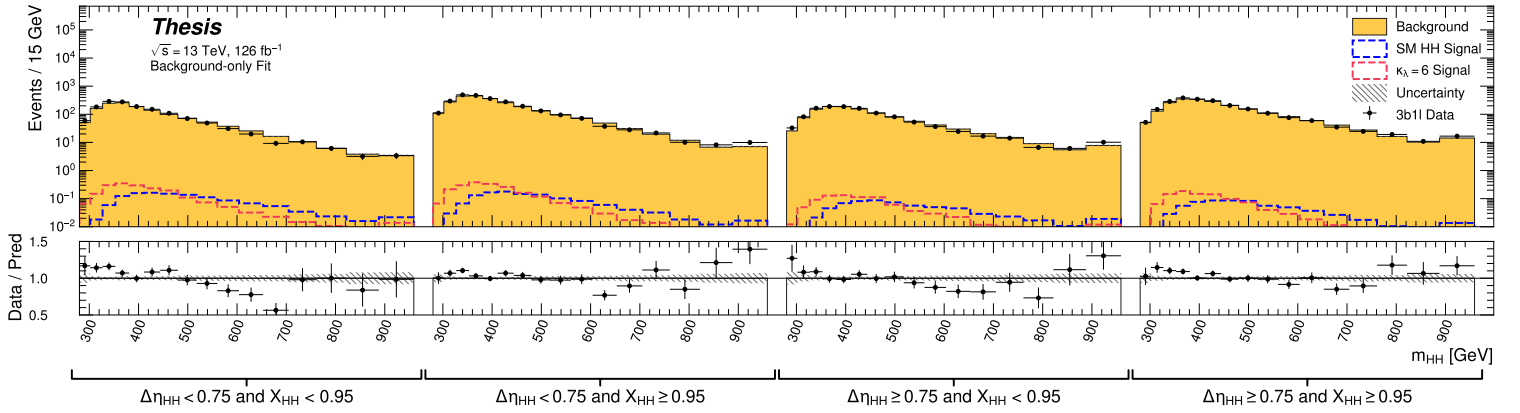


Figure 10.9: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the $3b1l$ channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Conclusions are very similar to the $4b$ channels, with generally good modeling near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements at very low and high masses. A deficit is present near 600 GeV.

10.2 Statistical Analysis

The resonant analysis is used to set a 95% confidence level upper limit on the $pp \rightarrow X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ and $pp \rightarrow G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ cross-sections, while the non-resonant analysis is used to set a 95% confidence level upper limit on the $pp \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ cross sections for a variety of values of the trilinear Higgs coupling.

The upper limit is extracted using the CL_s method [116]. The test statistic used is q_μ [117], where μ is the signal strength, and θ represents the nuisance parameters. A single hat represents the maximum likelihood estimate of a parameter, while $\hat{\hat{\theta}}(x)$ represents the conditional maximum likelihood estimate of the nuisance parameters if the signal cross-section is fixed at x .

$$q_\mu = \begin{cases} -2 \ln \left(\frac{\mathcal{L}(\mu, \hat{\hat{\theta}}(\mu))}{\mathcal{L}(\hat{\mu}, \hat{\theta})} \right) & \hat{\mu} \leq \mu \\ 0 & \hat{\mu} > \mu \end{cases} \quad (10.2)$$

CL_s for some test value of μ is then defined by

$$\text{CL}_s = \frac{\text{CL}_{s+b}}{\text{CL}_b} = \frac{p(q_\mu \geq q_{\mu, \text{obs}} | s + b)}{p(q_\mu \geq q_{\mu, \text{obs}} | b)}, \quad (10.3)$$

where the p -values are calculated in the asymptotic approximation [117], which is valid in the large sample limit.

The signal cross-section μ fb is excluded at the 95% confidence level if $\text{CL}_s < 0.05$.

Nuisance parameter pulls and impacts for the background extrapolation uncertainties are shown for representative scalar resonances in Figure 10.10. Note that the fit includes all uncertainties. The H_T nuisance parameters are significantly pulled, corresponding to the expectation that the resonant validation region is more similar to the signal region than the resonant control region is, though the control region is where the nominal estimate is derived. A variety of cross-checks have been done to confirm the healthy behavior of the signal extraction fit, despite these large pulls.

Corresponding nuisance parameter pulls for the Standard Model non-resonant search are shown in Figure 10.11. There are significantly more parameters than the resonant search due to the category scheme, as well as due to the splitting of the control/validation region comparison systematic into four signal region quadrants. In general, however, the pulls are well behaved, and are generally consistent with 0. The largest deviating pulls are less constrained than in the resonant search, such that these deviations are still within 2σ of 0.

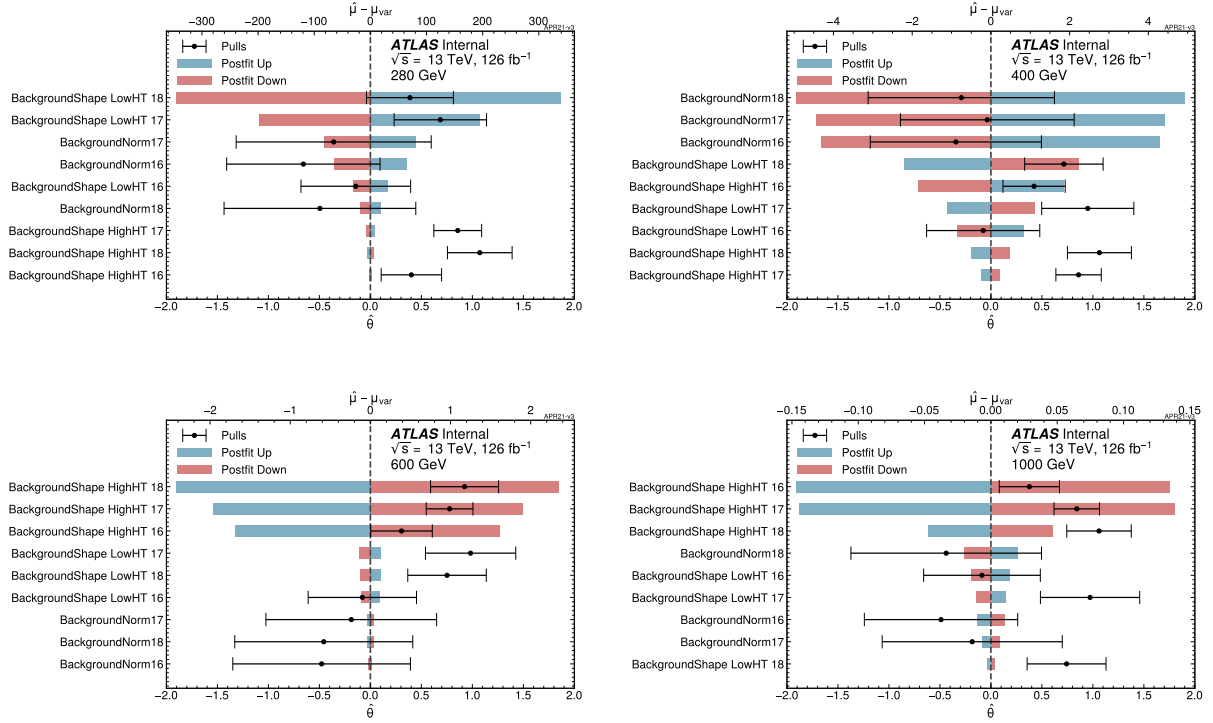


Figure 10.10: Pulls and impacts of the background extrapolation uncertainties for the resonant analysis, ranked by magnitude of post-fit impact and shown for a variety of representative scalar signals. Significant pulls of the H_T systematics are present, corresponding to the expectation that the validation region is more similar to the signal region than the control region is. Nuisance parameter pulls are generally consistent across signal mass, but impacts vary, with low H_T having the largest impact for low mass, and high H_T for high mass. 400 GeV is near the split between the two regimes.

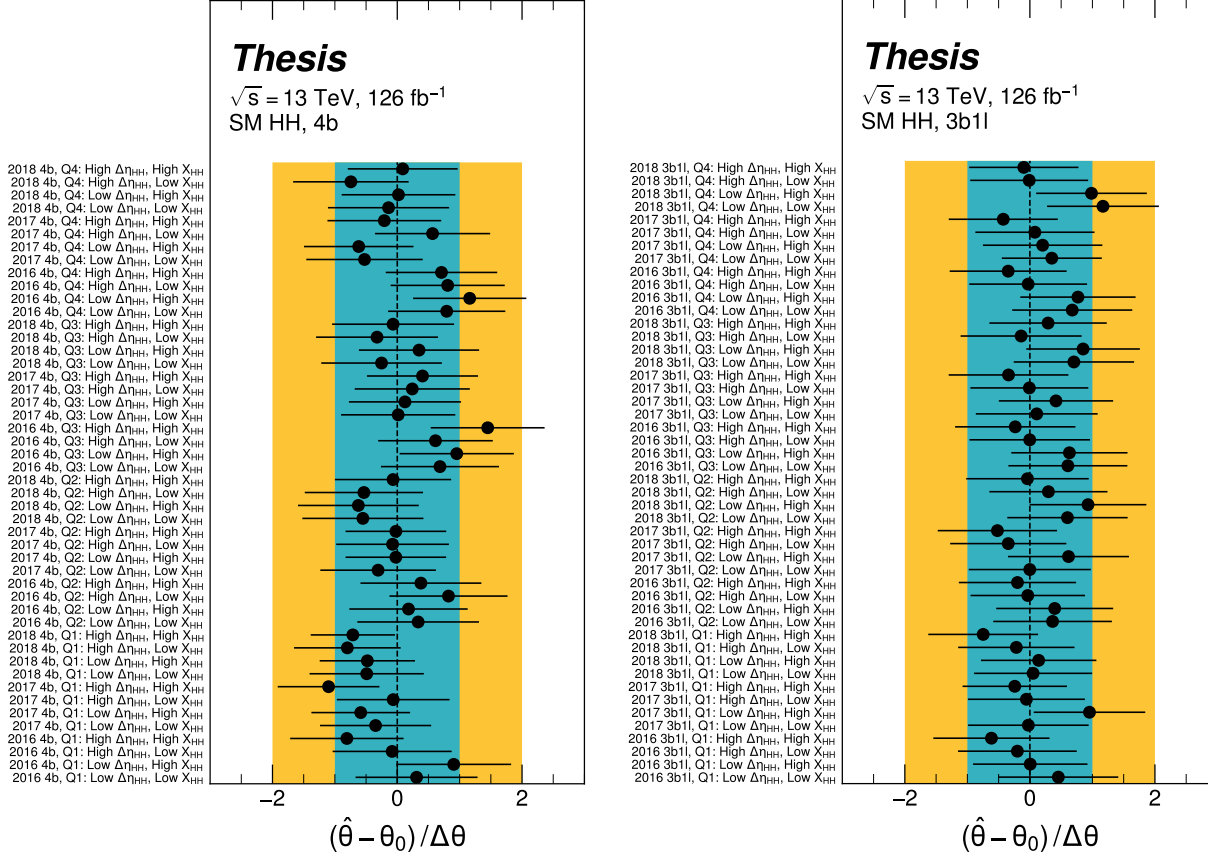


Figure 10.11: Background control/validation region systematic nuisance parameter pulls for the Standard Model non-resonant signal, shown for 4b (left) and 3b1l (right) separately, though the two channels are fit together. There are four signal region quadrant nuisance parameters for each category in the 2×2 scheme in $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ and X_{HH} , and each year is treated as a separate channel in the fit. Pulls are generally consistent with zero, though there are some trends: quadrant 1 4b tends to be pulled negatively, 2016 tends to be pulled positively. Note that 4b dominates the sensitivity relative to 3b1l.

10.3 Results

Figure 10.12 shows the expected limit for the spin-0 and spin-2 resonant search. The resolved channel covers the range between 251 and 1500 GeV and is combined with the boosted channel (see Appendix A) between 900 and 1500 GeV. The boosted channel then extends to 5 TeV. All results use the asymptotic approximation, though the validity of such an approximation for the boosted results above 3 TeV is being studied. The most significant excess is seen for a signal mass of 1100 GeV, with local significance of 2.6σ for the spin-0 signal and 2.7σ for the spin-2 signal. To account for the look-elsewhere effect, namely, the fact that the search is performed over many mass points rather than just one, a global significance is calculated following the procedure in [118]. Pseudo-experiments are generated from a background-only model which has been fit to data. These are used to construct a distribution of local p -values as a function of resonance mass. The number of level crossings below a reference level of $p = 0.5$ is used together with the local p -value to compute a global p -value. After this procedure, the local significance of the 1100 GeV excess is reduced to a global significance of 1.0σ and 1.2σ for spin-0 and spin-2 respectively.

The spin-2 bulk Randall-Sundrum model with $k/\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ is excluded for graviton masses between 298 and 1440 GeV.

Results from the early Run 2 $4b$ resonant search [2] are included in Figure 10.13 for comparison. The full Run 2 results of this thesis represent an improvement in sensitivity, with an expanded exclusion for the spin-2 search of graviton masses between 298 and 1440 GeV, relative to the early Run 2 result, with exclusion between 313 and 1362 GeV. An excess is present in the early Run 2 results at 280 GeV, with local (global) significance $3.6(2.3)\sigma$. This is no longer present in the full Run 2 results, indicative of improved background modeling in this low mass region.

Preliminary results are presented here for the gluon-gluon fusion non-resonant search, combining results from the $4b$ and $3b + 1l$ signal regions in the 2×2 category scheme in $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ and X_{HH} . These results will be further combined with a VBF channel (discussed in

Observed	-2σ	-1σ	Expected	$+1\sigma$	$+2\sigma$
4.4	3.1	4.2	5.9	8.2	11.0

Table 10.3: Limits on Standard Model $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ production, presented in units of the predicted Standard Model cross section. Results do not include signal systematics.

Appendix A), but this is left for future work. Results shown here include background all background uncertainties, but do not include signal systematics. Limits are set for κ_λ values from -20 to 20 . The cross section limit for HH production is set at 140 fb (180 fb) observed (expected), corresponding to an observed (expected) limit of 4.4 (5.9) times the Standard Model prediction (see Table 10.3). κ_λ is constrained to be within the range $-4.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 14.4$ observed ($-3.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 10.9$ expected). These results are shown in Figure 10.14.

This is a significant improvement over the early Run 2 result, which achieved an observed (expected) limit of 12.9 (20.7) times the Standard Model prediction. The dataset is 4.6 times larger, and a naive scaling of the early Run 2 result (Poisson statistics $\implies$ a factor of $1/\sqrt{4.6}$) would predict an observed (expected) limit of 6.0 (9.7) times the Standard Model. The result of 4.4 (5.9) observed (expected) presented here is therefore both an improvement by a factor of 3 (3.5) over the previous result and also beats the statistical scaling by around 30 (40) %, demonstrating the impact of the various analysis improvements presented here. Note again that these results do not include the complete set of uncertainties – however, the addition of the remaining uncertainties is expected to have no more than a few percent impact.

Further comparisons of both the resonant and non-resonant results are presented in Chapter 11.

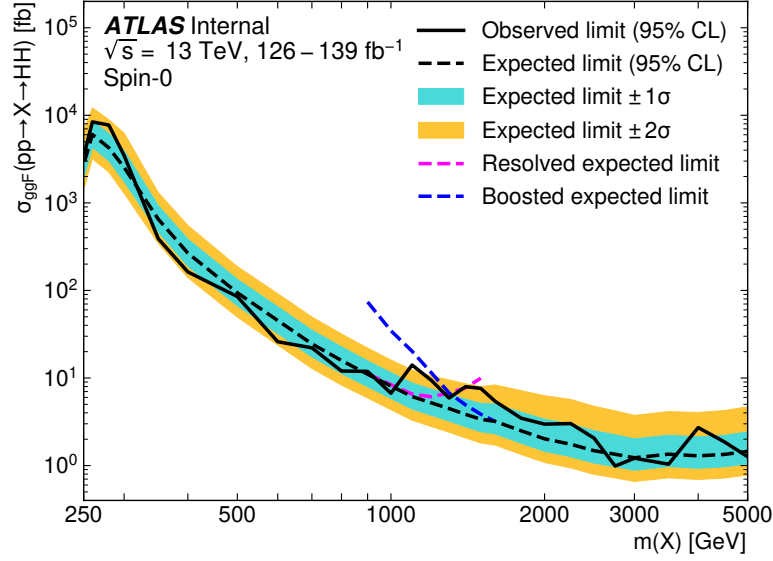
The observed limits presented in Figure 10.14 are consistently above the 2σ band for values of $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$, peaking at a local significance of 3.8σ for $\kappa_\lambda = 6$. As this analysis is optimized for points near the Standard Model, and as there is no excess present in more

sensitive channels in this same region (e.g. $HH \rightarrow bb\gamma\gamma$ [98]), it is not believed this is a real effect, but is rather due to a mis-modeling of the background at low mass, where the $\min \Delta R$ pairing has poor signal efficiency and the assumption of well behaved background in the mass plane breaks down. This is consistent with the location of the $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal in m_{HH} , as shown in Figures 10.8 and 10.9. It was considered, but not implemented, for this analysis to impose a cut on m_{HH} near 350 or 400 GeV to avoid such a low mass modeling issue.

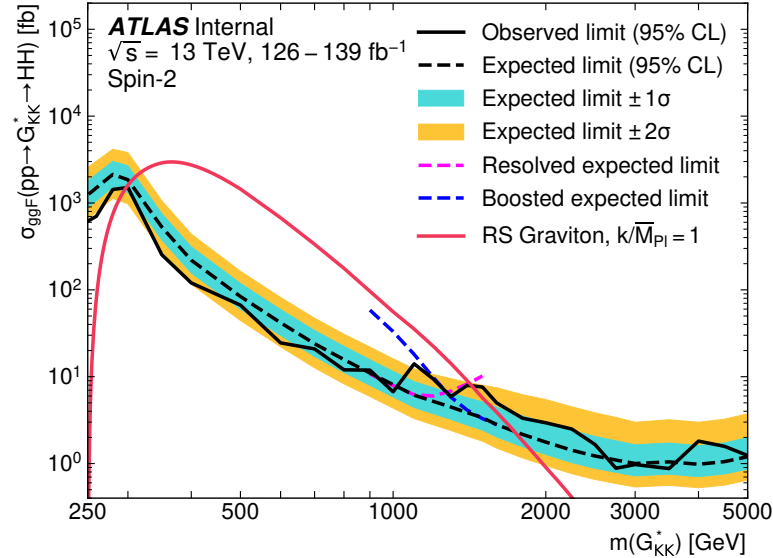
To check the impact of if such a cut would have been imposed, and to verify that the excess is due to the low mass regime, the same set of limits is run without the low mass bins. In this case, the first few bins in m_{HH} are simply dropped, such that everything else, including the higher mass bin edges, is kept the same. Due to the variable width binning, this corresponds to an m_{HH} cut of 381 GeV. The results of this check are shown in Figure 10.15, and the corresponding limits for Standard Model HH are quoted in Table 10.4. With the m_{HH} cut imposed, there is a slight degradation in the expected limits for larger positive and negative values of κ_λ , but the points near the Standard Model are nearly identical. Further, the observed excess is significantly reduced, with observed limits for $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$ now falling entirely within the expected 1σ band. Due to the preliminary nature of these results, further study is left for future work. However, in conjunction with the $HH \rightarrow bb\gamma\gamma$ results and expectations about the difficulty of the background estimation at low mass, it is believed that this is demonstrative of a mis-modeling rather than a real excess.

Observed	-2σ	-1σ	Expected	$+1\sigma$	$+2\sigma$
3.7	3.2	4.3	5.9	8.3	11.2

Table 10.4: Limits on Standard Model $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ production, presented in units of the predicted Standard Model cross section, corresponding to the $m_{HH} > 381$ GeV selection of Figure 10.15. Results do not include signal systematics. The deficit in the observed limit is larger than that of Table 10.3, but still within the 2σ band. There are only very minor differences in the expected limit band.

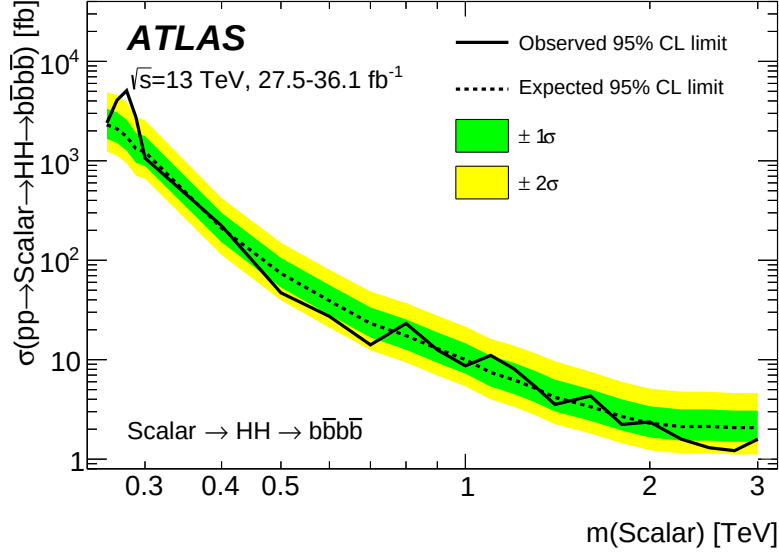


(a)

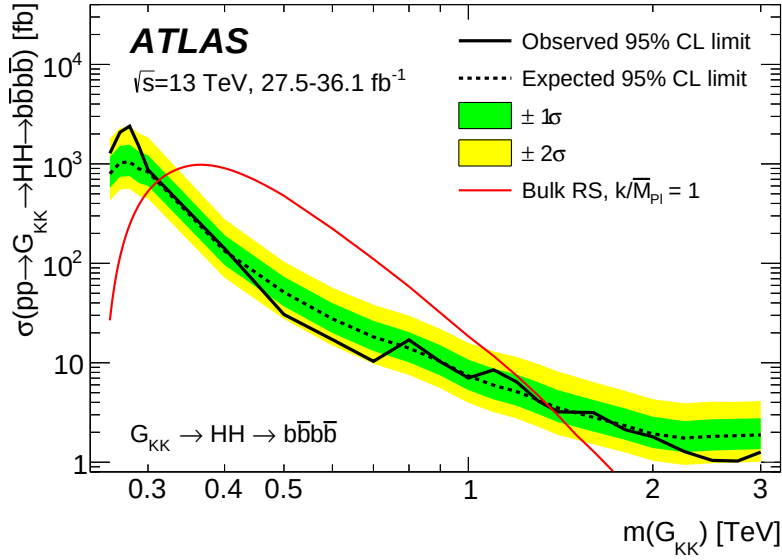


(b)

Figure 10.12: Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on the cross-section times branching ratio of resonant production for spin-0 ($X \rightarrow HH$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$). The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are shown in the colored bands. The resolved channel expected limit is shown in dashed pink and covers the range from 251 and 1500 GeV. It is combined with the boosted channel (dashed blue) between 900 and 1500 GeV. The theoretical prediction for the bulk RS model with $k/\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ [25] (solid red line) is shown, with the decrease below 350 GeV due to a sharp reduction in the $G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$ branching ratio. The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582. Note that all results use the asymptotic approximation, though the validity of this approximation for the boosted results above 3 TeV is being evaluated.



(a)



(b)

Figure 10.13: Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits or spin-0 ($\text{Scalar} \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK} \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) from the early Run 2 $4b$ search [2], to be compared with the results in Figure 10.12. Note that the y -axis scaling differs from Figure 10.12 by a factor of the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ branching ratio. An excess is present at 280 GeV, with local (global) significance $3.6(2.3)\sigma$. The spin-2 bulk Randall-Sundrum model with $k/\bar{M}_{Pl} = 1$ is excluded for graviton masses between 313 and 1362 GeV.

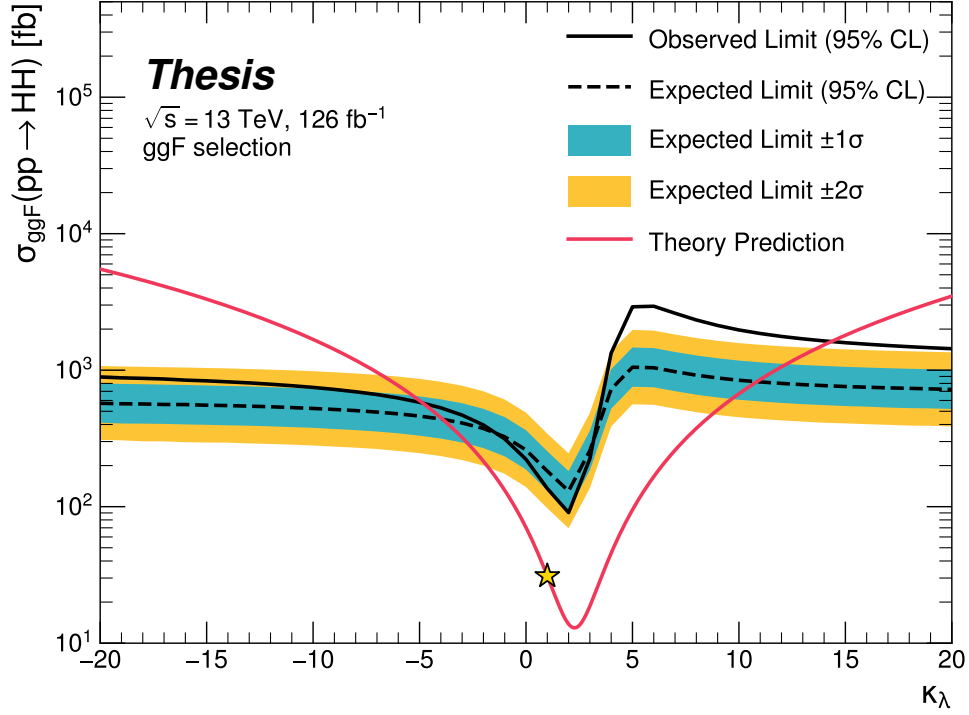


Figure 10.14: Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on the cross-section times branching ratio of non-resonant production for a range of values of the Higgs self-coupling, with the Standard Model value ($\kappa_\lambda = 1$) illustrated with a star. The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are shown in the colored bands. The cross section limit for HH production is set at 140 fb (180 fb) observed (expected), corresponding to an observed (expected) limit of 4.4 (5.9) times the Standard Model prediction. κ_λ is constrained to be within the range $-4.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 14.4$ observed ($-3.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 10.9$ expected). The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582. The excess present for $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$ is thought to be due to a low mass background mis-modeling, present due to the optimization of this analysis for the Standard Model point, and is not present in more sensitive channels in this same region (e.g. $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ [98]).

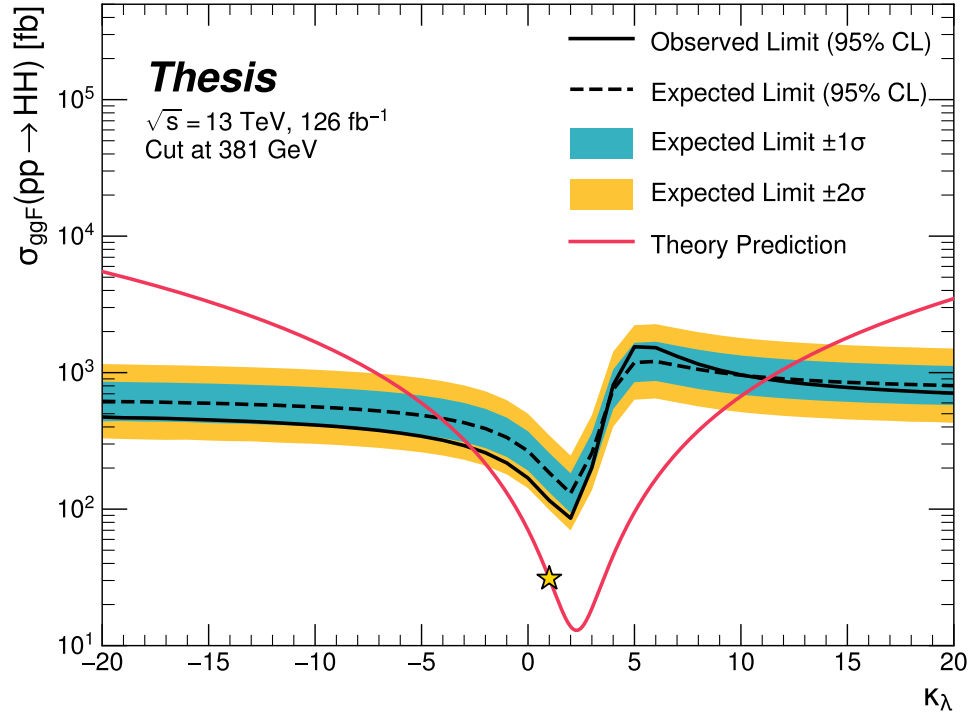


Figure 10.15: Limits including only events above 381 GeV in m_{HH} , to be compared with the limits in Figure 10.14. Such a cut is accomplished by dropping m_{HH} bins below 381 GeV, with the value of 381 GeV determined by the optimized variable width binning. All other aspects of the procedure and inputs are kept the same as in Figure 10.14. The excess at and above $\kappa_\lambda = 5$ is significantly reduced, demonstrating that such an excess is driven by low mass. Notably, there is minimal impact on the expected sensitivity with this m_{HH} cut.

Chapter 11

COMPARISONS WITH OTHER CHANNELS

ATLAS has published comparisons of the released Full Run 2 results [119], shown for the spin-0 resonant results in Figure 11.1 and the non-resonant results in Figure 11.2. The results of this thesis for the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel are included in the resonant plot up to 3 TeV. The preliminary non-resonant results presented here are not yet included. Both figures include a comparison with the combined early Run 2 result [26].

For the resonant, the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel has the leading sensitivity above a mass of around 700 GeV, and is competitive across much of the considered range, though it has limited sensitivity at very low masses. The individual channels shown in general represent improvements over the early Run 2 combined result, a promising indicator for a large increase in sensitivity with the full Run 2 combination across channels, for which the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel will be a strong contributor.

The Standard Model non-resonant limits presented in this thesis are 4.4(5.9) times the Standard Model observed (expected) for the gluon-gluon fusion channel only. This is a significant gain on its own above the early Run 2 combined result. Though the leading channels presented in Figure 11.2 include both VBF and ggF production modes, and are normalized as such, the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ results of this thesis can still be seen to be quite competitive, again demonstrating a strong contribution to the ATLAS experimental results for HH . Roughly estimating the combined result for full Run 2 $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$, $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$, and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ yields a limit of around 2 to 3 times the Standard Model. Such a result sets the stage for a very exciting Run 3 – with a projected factor of around $2\times$ increase in luminosity, plus any additional analysis improvements, sensitivity to HH may be just on the horizon.

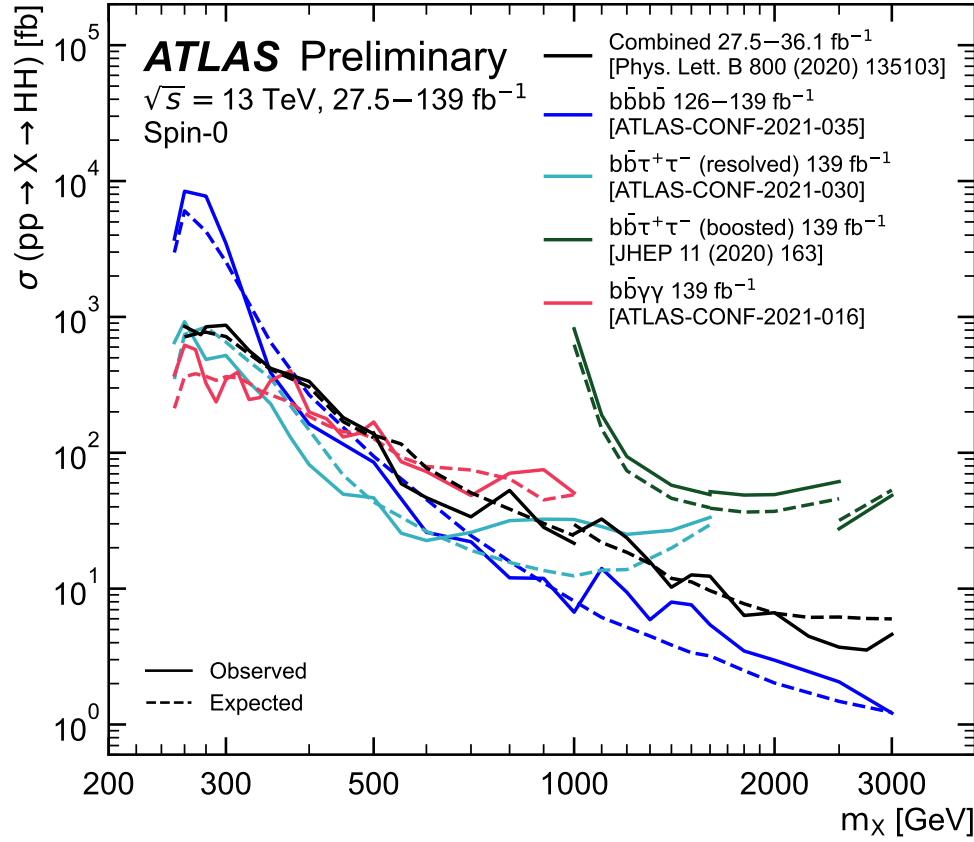


Figure 11.1: Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for spin-0 resonances. The $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel (blue) is compared with full Run 2 results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ (both resolved and boosted) and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, as well as the combined early Run 2 results. The $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel has leading sensitivity above a mass of around 700 GeV, and is competitive with other channels across much of the mass range, demonstrating a strong contribution to the ATLAS HH experimental results. [119]

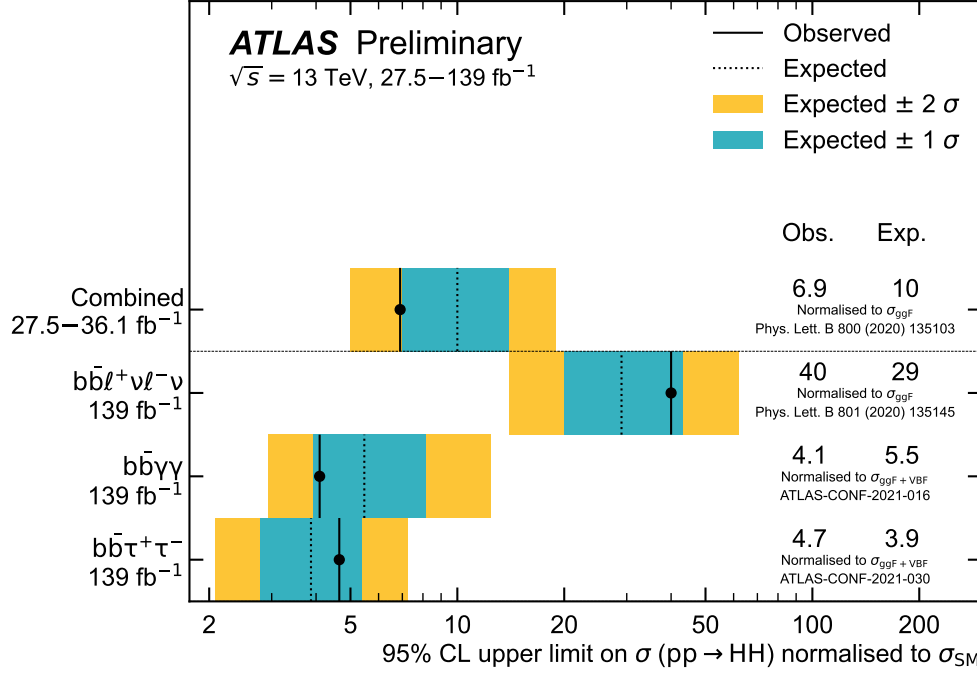


Figure 11.2: Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for Standard Model HH production. The preliminary results presented in this thesis are not yet included in these results. However, the results presented in Table 10.3 are quite competitive with the results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, two of the ATLAS channels with leading sensitivity in the search for HH . Note that these results include signals produced via both gluon-gluon fusion (ggF) and vector boson fusion (VBF), and are normalized as such, while the results of this thesis only include (and are normalized to) ggF production [119]

Chapter 12

CONCLUSIONS

This thesis has provided an overview of the Standard Model, with an emphasis on pair production of Higgs bosons and how this process may be used to both verify the Standard Model and to search for new physics. An overview of the Large Hadron Collider and the ATLAS detector has been provided, and the design and use of simulation infrastructure has been explained, including work to improve hadronic shower modeling in fast detector simulation. The translation of detector level information to analysis level information has been explained, with an emphasis on jets and the identification of B hadron decay. Finally, two searches for Higgs boson pair production have been presented, with a complete set of results for resonant production included, focusing on searches beyond the Standard Model, and a preliminary set of results for non-resonant production, targeting Standard Model production, with variations of the Higgs self-coupling.

This thesis represents a powerful contribution in multiple areas. My simulation work provides two powerful options for the improvement of hadronic showering in fast calorimeter simulation, and is emblematic of a hybrid approach to fast simulation which may leverage both expert knowledge and the power of machine learning methods. The HH results presented in this thesis are leading contributions to the full Run 2 statement from ATLAS about Higgs boson pair production, and improve on previous results in a variety of ways.

Within these HH searches, I was responsible for the development of the background estimation and corresponding uncertainties, one of the most important aspects of the $4b$ channel. For the resonant search, I contributed strongly to the development of the selection, the documentation, and final development of the result. No significant excesses are observed, but a low mass mis-modeling has been reduced relative to the early Run 2 searches, and the

limits set by the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel are very competitive with the other full Run 2 ATLAS results.

For the non-resonant search, in addition to the background estimation, I was behind many of the changes that were made relative to the resonant search. These changes result in a very competitive limit of 4.4(5.9) times the Standard Model observed (expected), a result which is both competitive with the other leading channels, and beats a projection of the early Run 2 result (from luminosity scaling) by 30 (40) %. This represents a significant improvement in the analysis strategy, and sets the stage for a very promising set of HH results, both from the full Run 2 combination and looking towards Run 3. Though an excess is seen for values of $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$, such an excess is demonstrated to be due to the low mass regime, where $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ has limited sensitivity.

With the contributions of this thesis work, the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel remains one of the leading HH channels in sensitivity. With further increases in luminosity, as well as development of even more advanced analysis techniques (see, e.g., Appendix B), the future is bright for HH at the LHC.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- [1] S. Gasiorowski and H. Gray, *Fast Calorimeter Simulation in ATLAS*, [EPJ Web Conf. **245** \(2020\) 02002. 7 p](#), URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2756298> (cit. on pp. [xxi](#), [59](#)).
- [2] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state using proton–proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, [JHEP **01** \(2019\) 030](#), arXiv: [1804.06174 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on pp. [xxii](#), [79](#), [88](#), [98](#), [105](#), [167](#), [172](#)).
- [3] *Search for resonant pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state using pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, tech. rep., All figures including auxiliary figures are available at <https://atlas.web.cern.ch/Atlas/GROUPS/PHYSICS/CONFNOTES/ATLAS-CONF-2021-035>: CERN, 2021, URL: <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2777861> (cit. on pp. [xxii](#), [152](#)).
- [4] A. Shmakov et al., *SPANet: Generalized Permutationless Set Assignment for Particle Physics using Symmetry Preserving Attention*, 2021, arXiv: [2106.03898 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. [xxiii](#)).
- [5] D. M. Reiman, J. Tamanas, J. X. Prochaska, and D. Ďurovčíková, *Fully probabilistic quasar continua predictions near Lyman- α with conditional neural spline flows*, 2020, arXiv: [2006.00615 \[astro-ph.CO\]](#) (cit. on p. [xxiii](#)).
- [6] *A New Map of All the Particles and Forces*, <https://www.quantamagazine.org/a-new-map-of-the-standard-model-of-particle-physics-20201022/>, Accessed: 2021-07-23 (cit. on pp. [3](#), [27](#)).
- [7] J. D. Jackson, *Classical electrodynamics; 2nd ed.* Wiley, 1975 (cit. on p. [2](#)).

- [8] M. Thomson, *Modern particle physics*, Cambridge University Press, 2013, ISBN: 978-1-107-03426-6 (cit. on pp. 2, 48).
- [9] M. Srednicki, *Quantum Field Theory*, Cambridge Univ. Press, 2007 (cit. on p. 2).
- [10] M. Gell-Mann, *A schematic model of baryons and mesons*, [Physics Letters 8 \(1964\) 214](#), ISSN: 0031-9163, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0031916364920013> (cit. on p. 11).
- [11] G. Zweig, *An SU_3 model for strong interaction symmetry and its breaking; Version 1*, tech. rep., CERN, 1964, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/352337> (cit. on p. 11).
- [12] O. W. Greenberg, *Spin and Unitary-Spin Independence in a Paraquark Model of Baryons and Mesons*, [Phys. Rev. Lett. 13 \(20 1964\) 598](#), URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.598> (cit. on p. 11).
- [13] M. Y. Han and Y. Nambu, *Three-Triplet Model with Double $SU(3)$ Symmetry*, [Phys. Rev. 139 \(4B 1965\) B1006](#), URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRev.139.B1006> (cit. on p. 11).
- [14] F. L. Wilson, *Fermi's Theory of Beta Decay*, [American Journal of Physics 36 \(1968\) 1150](#), eprint: <https://doi.org/10.1119/1.1974382>, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1119/1.1974382> (cit. on p. 14).
- [15] *The Nobel Prize in Physics 1979*, <https://www.nobelprize.org/prizes/physics/1979/summary/>, Accessed: 2021-07-23 (cit. on p. 15).
- [16] F. Englert and R. Brout, *Broken Symmetry and the Mass of Gauge Vector Mesons*, [Phys. Rev. Lett. 13 \(9 1964\) 321](#), URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.321> (cit. on p. 20).
- [17] P. W. Higgs, *Broken Symmetries and the Masses of Gauge Bosons*, [Phys. Rev. Lett. 13 \(16 1964\) 508](#), URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.508> (cit. on p. 20).

- [18] G. S. Guralnik, C. R. Hagen, and T. W. B. Kibble, *Global Conservation Laws and Massless Particles*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **13** (20 1964) 585, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.585> (cit. on p. 20).
- [19] ATLAS Collaboration, *Observation of a new particle in the search for the Standard Model Higgs boson with the ATLAS detector at the LHC*, *Phys. Lett. B* **716** (2012) 1, arXiv: [1207.7214 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 20).
- [20] CMS Collaboration, *Observation of a new boson at a mass of 125 GeV with the CMS experiment at the LHC*, *Phys. Lett. B* **716** (2012) 30, arXiv: [1207.7235 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 20).
- [21] S. Weinberg, *A Model of Leptons*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **19** (21 1967) 1264, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.19.1264> (cit. on p. 25).
- [22] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ process via vector-boson fusion production using proton-proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, *JHEP* **07** (2020) 108, arXiv: [2001.05178 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on pp. 31, 78, 105, 197, 199), Erratum: *JHEP* **01** (2021) 145.
- [23] G. Branco et al., *Theory and phenomenology of two-Higgs-doublet models*, *Physics Reports* **516** (2012) 1, Theory and phenomenology of two-Higgs-doublet models, ISSN: 0370-1573, URL: <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0370157312000695> (cit. on pp. 32, 33).
- [24] K. Agashe, H. Davoudiasl, G. Perez, and A. Soni, *Warped gravitons at the CERN LHC and beyond*, *Phys. Rev. D* **76** (3 2007) 036006, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.76.036006> (cit. on pp. 32, 33).
- [25] A. Carvalho, *Gravity particles from Warped Extra Dimensions, predictions for LHC*, 2018, arXiv: [1404.0102 \[hep-ph\]](#) (cit. on pp. 32, 33, 171).

- [26] ATLAS Collaboration, *Combination of searches for Higgs boson pairs in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, *Phys. Lett. B* **800** (2020) 135103, arXiv: [1906.02025 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1906.02025) (cit. on pp. 33, 36, 78, 175).
- [27] P. D. Group et al., *Review of Particle Physics*, *Progress of Theoretical and Experimental Physics* **2020** (2020), 083C01, ISSN: 2050-3911, eprint: <https://academic.oup.com/ptep/article-pdf/2020/8/083C01/34673722/ptaa104.pdf>, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/ptaa104> (cit. on p. 35).
- [28] T. van Ritbergen and R. G. Stuart, *On the precise determination of the Fermi coupling constant from the muon lifetime*, *Nuclear Physics B* **564** (2000) 343, ISSN: 0550-3213, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0550-3213\(99\)00572-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0550-3213(99)00572-6) (cit. on p. 35).
- [29] S. Dawson, A. Ismail, and I. Low, *What's in the loop? The anatomy of double Higgs production*, *Physical Review D* **91** (2015), ISSN: 1550-2368, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.91.115008> (cit. on p. 35).
- [30] A. M. Sirunyan et al., *Measurement of the top quark Yukawa coupling from $t\bar{t}$ kinematic distributions in the dilepton final state in proton-proton collisions at $\sqrt{s}=13$ TeV*, *Physical Review D* **102** (2020), ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.102.092013> (cit. on p. 35).
- [31] S. Dawson, S. Dittmaier, and M. Spira, *Neutral Higgs-boson pair production at hadron colliders: QCD corrections*, *Physical Review D* **58** (1998), ISSN: 1089-4918, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.58.115012> (cit. on pp. 37, 197).
- [32] S. Borowka et al., *Higgs Boson Pair Production in Gluon Fusion at Next-to-Leading Order with Full Top-Quark Mass Dependence*, *Physical Review Letters* **117** (2016), ISSN: 1079-7114, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.117.012001> (cit. on pp. 37, 197).

- [33] J. Baglio et al., *Gluon fusion into Higgs pairs at NLO QCD and the top mass scheme*, *The European Physical Journal C* **79** (2019), ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-019-6973-3> (cit. on pp. 37, 197).
- [34] D. de Florian and J. Mazzitelli, *Higgs Boson Pair Production at Next-to-Next-to-Leading Order in QCD*, *Physical Review Letters* **111** (2013), ISSN: 1079-7114, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.111.201801> (cit. on pp. 37, 197).
- [35] D. Y. Shao, C. S. Li, H. T. Li, and J. Wang, *Threshold resummation effects in Higgs boson pair production at the LHC*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2013** (2013), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP07\(2013\)169](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP07(2013)169) (cit. on pp. 37, 197).
- [36] D. de Florian and J. Mazzitelli, *Higgs pair production at next-to-next-to-leading logarithmic accuracy at the LHC*, 2015, arXiv: [1505.07122 \[hep-ph\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.07122) (cit. on pp. 37, 197).
- [37] M. Grazzini et al., *Higgs boson pair production at NNLO with top quark mass effects*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2018** (2018), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05\(2018\)059](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05(2018)059) (cit. on pp. 37, 197).
- [38] J. Baglio et al., *$gg \rightarrow HH$: Combined uncertainties*, *Physical Review D* **103** (2021), ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.103.056002> (cit. on pp. 37, 197).
- [39] F. Dulat, A. Lazopoulos, and B. Mistlberger, *iHixs 2 — Inclusive Higgs cross sections*, *Computer Physics Communications* **233** (2018) 243, ISSN: 0010-4655, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cpc.2018.06.025> (cit. on p. 37).
- [40] ATLAS Collaboration, *Measurement prospects of the pair production and self-coupling of the Higgs boson with the ATLAS experiment at the HL-LHC*, ATL-PHYS-PUB-2018-053, 2018, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2652727> (cit. on p. 37).

- [41] D. de Florian, I. Fabre, and J. Mazzitelli, *Triple Higgs production at hadron colliders at NNLO in QCD*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2020** (2020), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP03\(2020\)155](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP03(2020)155) (cit. on p. 37).
- [42] A. Papaefstathiou, T. Robens, and G. Tetlalmatzi-Xolocotzi, *Triple Higgs boson production at the Large Hadron Collider with Two Real Singlet scalars*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2021** (2021), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05\(2021\)193](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05(2021)193) (cit. on p. 37).
- [43] T. Robens, T. Stefaniak, and J. Wittbrodt, *Two-real-scalar-singlet extension of the SM: LHC phenomenology and benchmark scenarios*, *The European Physical Journal C* **80** (2020), ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-020-7655-x> (cit. on p. 37).
- [44] D. Egana-Ugrinovic, S. Homiller, and P. Meade, *Multi-Higgs boson production probes Higgs sector flavor*, *Physical Review D* **103** (2021), ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.103.115005> (cit. on p. 37).
- [45] CERN, *CERN's accelerator complex*, <https://home.cern/science/accelerators/accelerator-complex>, Accessed: 27 July 2021 (cit. on p. 39).
- [46] *Letter of Intent for the Phase-II Upgrade of the ATLAS Experiment*, (2012) (cit. on p. 40).
- [47] H.-L. Project, *The HL-LHC project*, <https://hilumilhc.web.cern.ch/content/hl-lhc-project>, Accessed: 16 August 2021 (cit. on p. 40).
- [48] J. Pequenaio, “Computer generated image of the whole ATLAS detector”, 2008, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1095924> (cit. on p. 41).
- [49] ATLAS Collaboration, *The ATLAS Experiment at the CERN Large Hadron Collider*, *JINST* **3** (2008) S08003 (cit. on p. 42).

- [50] J. Pequenaio and P. Schaffner, “How ATLAS detects particles: diagram of particle paths in the detector”, 2013, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1505342> (cit. on p. 43).
- [51] ATLAS Collaboration, *ATLAS Insertable B-Layer: Technical Design Report*, ATLAS-TDR-19; CERN-LHCC-2010-013, 2010, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1291633> (cit. on p. 44), Addendum: ATLAS-TDR-19-ADD-1; CERN-LHCC-2012-009, 2012, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1451888>.
- [52] B. Abbott et al., *Production and integration of the ATLAS Insertable B-Layer*, **JINST** **13** (2018) T05008, arXiv: 1803.00844 [physics.ins-det] (cit. on p. 44).
- [53] A. Outreach, “ATLAS Fact Sheet : To raise awareness of the ATLAS detector and collaboration on the LHC”, 2010, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1457044> (cit. on p. 46).
- [54] ATLAS Collaboration, *Performance of the ATLAS trigger system in 2015*, **Eur. Phys. J. C** **77** (2017) 317, arXiv: 1611.09661 [hep-ex] (cit. on p. 47).
- [55] ATLAS Collaboration, *The ATLAS Collaboration Software and Firmware*, ATL-SOFT-PUB-2021-001, 2021, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2767187> (cit. on p. 47).
- [56] S. Forte and S. Carrazza, *Parton distribution functions*, 2020, arXiv: 2008.12305 [hep-ph] (cit. on p. 51).
- [57] P. Nason, *A New method for combining NLO QCD with shower Monte Carlo algorithms*, **JHEP** **11** (2004) 040, arXiv: hep-ph/0409146 [hep-ph] (cit. on pp. 52, 82).
- [58] S. Frixione, P. Nason and C. Oleari, *Matching NLO QCD computations with parton shower simulations: the POWHEG method*, **JHEP** **11** (2007) 070, arXiv: 0709.2092 [hep-ph] (cit. on pp. 52, 82).
- [59] S. Alioli, P. Nason, C. Oleari, and E. Re, *A general framework for implementing NLO calculations in shower Monte Carlo programs: the POWHEG BOX*, **JHEP** **06** (2010) 043, arXiv: 1002.2581 [hep-ph] (cit. on pp. 52, 82).

- [60] J. Alwall et al., *The automated computation of tree-level and next-to-leading order differential cross sections, and their matching to parton shower simulations*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2014** (2014), URL: [https://doi.org/10.1007/jhep07\(2014\)079](https://doi.org/10.1007/jhep07(2014)079) (cit. on pp. 52, 81).
- [61] J. Bellm et al., *Herwig 7.0/Herwig++ 3.0 release note*, *The European Physical Journal C* **76** (2016), URL: <https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-016-4018-8> (cit. on pp. 52, 81).
- [62] M. Bähr et al., *Herwig++ physics and manual*, *The European Physical Journal C* **58** (2008) 639, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-008-0798-9> (cit. on pp. 52, 81).
- [63] T. Sjöstrand et al., *An introduction to PYTHIA 8.2*, *Computer Physics Communications* **191** (2015) 159, ISSN: 0010-4655, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0010465515000442> (cit. on pp. 52, 82).
- [64] D. J. Lange, *The EvtGen particle decay simulation package*, *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* **462** (2001) 152 (cit. on pp. 52, 81).
- [65] S. Höche, *Introduction to parton-shower event generators*, 2015, arXiv: [1411.4085](https://arxiv.org/abs/1411.4085) [hep-ph] (cit. on p. 53).
- [66] S. Agostinelli et al., *Geant4—a simulation toolkit*, *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* **506** (2003) 250, ISSN: 0168-9002, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900203013688> (cit. on p. 54).
- [67] P. Calafiura, J. Catmore, D. Costanzo, and A. Di Girolamo, *ATLAS HL-LHC Computing Conceptual Design Report*, tech. rep., CERN, 2020, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2729668> (cit. on p. 54).

- [68] A. Collaboration, *Computing and Software - Public Results*, <https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/bin/view/AtlasPublic/ComputingandSoftwarePublicResults>, Accessed: 27 July 2021 (cit. on p. 55).
- [69] HEPiX, *Benchmarking*, <https://w3.hepik.org/benchmarking.html>, Accessed: 17 August 2021 (cit. on p. 55).
- [70] ATLAS Collaboration, *The ATLAS Simulation Infrastructure*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **70** (2010) 823, arXiv: 1005.4568 [physics.ins-det] (cit. on pp. 54, 81).
- [71] ATLAS Collaboration, *The new Fast Calorimeter Simulation in ATLAS*, ATL-SOFT-PUB-2018-002, 2018, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2630434> (cit. on pp. 56–58).
- [72] ROOT, *TPrincipal Class Reference*, <https://root.cern.ch/doc/master/classTPrincipal.html>, Accessed: 27 July 2021 (cit. on p. 56).
- [73] M. Aharrouche et al., *Energy linearity and resolution of the ATLAS electromagnetic barrel calorimeter in an electron test-beam*, *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* **568** (2006) 601, ISSN: 0168-9002, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2006.07.053> (cit. on p. 57).
- [74] ATLAS Collaboration, *Evidence for prompt photon production in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, ATLAS-CONF-2010-077, 2010, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1281368> (cit. on p. 58).
- [75] D. P. Kingma and M. Welling, *Auto-Encoding Variational Bayes*, 2014, arXiv: 1312.6114 [stat.ML] (cit. on p. 59).
- [76] G. Aad et al., *Topological cell clustering in the ATLAS calorimeters and its performance in LHC Run 1*, *The European Physical Journal C* **77** (2017), ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-017-5004-5> (cit. on pp. 62, 64).

- [77] A. Ghosh and A. Collaboration, *Deep generative models for fast shower simulation in ATLAS*, *Journal of Physics: Conference Series* **1525** (2020) 012077, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1088/1742-6596/1525/1/012077> (cit. on p. 65).
- [78] R. Di Sipio, M. F. Giannelli, S. K. Haghighat, and S. Palazzo, *DijetGAN: a Generative-Adversarial Network approach for the simulation of QCD dijet events at the LHC*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2019** (2019), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP08\(2019\)110](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP08(2019)110) (cit. on p. 65).
- [79] ATLAS Collaboration, *Jet reconstruction and performance using particle flow with the ATLAS Detector*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **77** (2017) 466, arXiv: 1703.10485 [hep-ex] (cit. on pp. 67, 80).
- [80] ATLAS Collaboration, *Topological cell clustering in the ATLAS calorimeters and its performance in LHC Run 1*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **77** (2017) 490, arXiv: 1603.02934 [hep-ex] (cit. on p. 67).
- [81] ATLAS Collaboration, *Variable Radius, Exclusive- k_T , and Center-of-Mass Subjet Reconstruction for Higgs($\rightarrow b\bar{b}$) Tagging in ATLAS*, ATL-PHYS-PUB-2017-010, 2017, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2268678> (cit. on pp. 67, 196).
- [82] M. Cacciari, G. P. Salam, and G. Soyez, *The anti- k_t jet clustering algorithm*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2008** (2008) 063, ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1126-6708/2008/04/063> (cit. on p. 67).
- [83] G. P. Salam, *Towards jetography*, *The European Physical Journal C* **67** (2010) 637, ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-010-1314-6> (cit. on p. 67).
- [84] A. J. Larkoski, G. P. Salam, and J. Thaler, *Energy correlation functions for jet substructure*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2013** (2013), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP06\(2013\)108](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP06(2013)108) (cit. on p. 68).

- [85] A. Collaboration, *Configuration and performance of the ATLAS b-jet triggers in Run 2*, 2021, arXiv: [2106.03584 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 71).
- [86] ATLAS Collaboration, *ATLAS b-jet identification performance and efficiency measurement with $t\bar{t}$ events in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **79** (2019) 970, arXiv: [1907.05120 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on pp. 70, 80, 146).
- [87] ATLAS Collaboration, *Topological b-hadron decay reconstruction and identification of b-jets with the JetFitter package in the ATLAS experiment at the LHC*, ATL-PHYS-PUB-2018-025, 2018, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2645405> (cit. on p. 73).
- [88] R. Frühwirth, *Application of Kalman filtering to track and vertex fitting*, *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* **262** (1987) 444, ISSN: 0168-9002, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/0168900287908874> (cit. on p. 73).
- [89] ATLAS Collaboration, *Identification of Jets Containing b-Hadrons with Recurrent Neural Networks at the ATLAS Experiment*, ATL-PHYS-PUB-2017-003, 2017, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2255226> (cit. on p. 74).
- [90] *Expected performance of the 2019 ATLAS b-taggers*, <http://atlas.web.cern.ch/Atlas/GROUPS/PHYSICS/PLOTS/FTAG-2019-005/>, Accessed: 2021-07-14 (cit. on p. 76).
- [91] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $b\bar{b}WW^*$ decay mode at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, *JHEP* **04** (2019) 092, arXiv: [1811.04671 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [92] ATLAS Collaboration, *A search for resonant and non-resonant Higgs boson pair production in the $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ decay channel in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the*

- ATLAS detector*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **121** (2018) 191801, arXiv: [1808.00336 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78), Erratum: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **122** (2019) 089901.
- [93] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $WW^{(*)}WW^{(*)}$ decay channel using ATLAS data recorded at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV*, *JHEP* **05** (2019) 124, arXiv: [1811.11028 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [94] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $\gamma\gamma b\bar{b}$ final state with 13 TeV pp collision data collected by the ATLAS experiment*, *JHEP* **11** (2018) 040, arXiv: [1807.04873 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [95] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $\gamma\gamma WW^*$ channel using pp collision data recorded at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **78** (2018) 1007, arXiv: [1807.08567 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [96] ATLAS Collaboration, *Reconstruction and identification of boosted di- τ systems in a search for Higgs boson pairs using 13 TeV proton-proton collision data in ATLAS*, *JHEP* **11** (2020) 163, arXiv: [2007.14811 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [97] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for non-resonant Higgs boson pair production in the $b\bar{b}l\nu l\nu$ final state with the ATLAS detector in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV*, *Phys. Lett. B* **801** (2020) 135145, arXiv: [1908.06765 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [98] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the two bottom quarks plus two final state with in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, ATLAS-CONF-2021-016, 2021, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2759683> (cit. on pp. 78, 169, 173).
- [99] CMS Collaboration, *Search for production of Higgs boson pairs in the four b quark final state using large-area jets in proton-proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV*, *JHEP* **01** (2019) 040, arXiv: [1808.01473 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [100] *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the four b quark final state*, tech. rep., CERN, 2021, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2771912> (cit. on p. 78).

- [101] CMS Collaboration, *Combination of Searches for Higgs Boson Pair Production in Proton–Proton Collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **122** (2019) 121803, arXiv: [1811.09689 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 78).
- [102] G. Bartolini et al., *Performance of the ATLAS b-jet trigger in p p collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV*, tech. rep. ATL-COM-DAQ-2019-150, CERN, 2019, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2688819> (cit. on p. 81).
- [103] ATLAS Collaboration, *Luminosity determination in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV using the ATLAS detector at the LHC*, ATLAS-CONF-2019-021, 2019, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2677054> (cit. on pp. 81, 146).
- [104] J. Butterworth et al., *PDF4LHC recommendations for LHC Run II*, *J. Phys. G* **43** (2016) 023001, arXiv: [1510.03865 \[hep-ph\]](#) (cit. on pp. 82, 147).
- [105] T. Head et al., *scikit-optimize/scikit-optimize: v0.5.2*, version v0.5.2, 2018, URL: <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.1207017> (cit. on p. 89).
- [106] A. Carvalho et al., *Higgs pair production: choosing benchmarks with cluster analysis*, *Journal of High Energy Physics* **2016** (2016) 1, ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP04\(2016\)126](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP04(2016)126) (cit. on p. 101).
- [107] A. Rogozhnikov, *Reweighting with Boosted Decision Trees*, *Journal of Physics: Conference Series* **762** (2016) 012036, ISSN: 1742-6596, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1742-6596/762/1/012036> (cit. on p. 106).
- [108] G. V. Moustakides and K. Basioti, *Training Neural Networks for Likelihood/Density Ratio Estimation*, 2019, arXiv: [1911.00405 \[eess.SP\]](#) (cit. on p. 106).
- [109] T. Kanamori, S. Hido, and M. Sugiyama, *A Least-Squares Approach to Direct Importance Estimation*, *J. Mach. Learn. Res.* **10** (2009) 1391, ISSN: 1532-4435 (cit. on p. 106).

- [110] A. Andreassen and B. Nachman, *Neural networks for full phase-space reweighting and parameter tuning*, [Physical Review D](#) **101** (2020), ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.101.091901> (cit. on p. 107).
- [111] S. Fort, H. Hu, and B. Lakshminarayanan, *Deep Ensembles: A Loss Landscape Perspective*, 2020, arXiv: [1912.02757 \[stat.ML\]](#) (cit. on p. 108).
- [112] B. Efron, *Bootstrap Methods: Another Look at the Jackknife*, [Ann. Statist.](#) **7** (1979) 1, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1214/aos/1176344552> (cit. on p. 138).
- [113] ATLAS Collaboration, *Jet energy scale and resolution measured in proton–proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, (2020), arXiv: [2007.02645 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 146).
- [114] G. Avoni et al., *The new LUCID-2 detector for luminosity measurement and monitoring in ATLAS*, [JINST](#) **13** (2018) P07017. 33 p, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2633501> (cit. on p. 146).
- [115] D. de Florian et al., *Handbook of LHC Higgs Cross Sections: 4. Deciphering the Nature of the Higgs Sector*, CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, 869 pages, 295 figures, 248 tables and 1645 citations. Working Group web page: <https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/bin/view/LHCPhysics/> CERN, 2016, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2227475> (cit. on p. 147).
- [116] A. L. Read, *Presentation of search results: the CLs technique*, [Journal of Physics G: Nuclear and Particle Physics](#) **28** (2002) 2693, ISSN: 0954-3899 (cit. on p. 163).
- [117] G. Cowan, K. Cranmer, E. Gross, and O. Vitells, *Asymptotic formulae for likelihood-based tests of new physics*, [The European Physical Journal C](#) **71** (2011), ISSN: 1434-6052 (cit. on p. 163).
- [118] E. Gross and O. Vitells, *Trial factors for the look elsewhere effect in high energy physics*, [The European Physical Journal C](#) **70** (2010) 525, ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-010-1470-8> (cit. on p. 167).

- [119] *Summary of non-resonant and resonant Higgs boson pair searches from the ATLAS experiment*, tech. rep., All figures including auxiliary figures are available at <https://atlas.web.cern.ch/Atlas/GROUPS/PHYSICS/PUBNOTES/ATL-PHYS-PUB-2021-031>: CERN, 2021, URL: <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2777013> (cit. on pp. 175–177).
- [120] A. Sherstinsky, *Fundamentals of Recurrent Neural Network (RNN) and Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) network*, *Physica D: Nonlinear Phenomena* **404** (2020) 132306, ISSN: 0167-2789, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.physd.2019.132306> (cit. on p. 201).
- [121] M. Zaheer et al., *Deep Sets*, 2018, arXiv: [1703.06114](https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.06114) [cs.LG] (cit. on p. 201).
- [122] J. Zhou et al., *Graph Neural Networks: A Review of Methods and Applications*, 2021, arXiv: [1812.08434](https://arxiv.org/abs/1812.08434) [cs.LG] (cit. on p. 201).
- [123] A. Vaswani et al., *Attention Is All You Need*, 2017, arXiv: [1706.03762](https://arxiv.org/abs/1706.03762) [cs.CL] (cit. on p. 201).
- [124] I. Goodfellow, Y. Bengio, and A. Courville, *Deep Learning*, <http://www.deeplearningbook.org>, MIT Press, 2016 (cit. on p. 202).
- [125] K. P. Murphy, *Machine learning: a probabilistic perspective*, 2012 (cit. on p. 202).
- [126] I. Kobyzev, S. Prince, and M. Brubaker, *Normalizing Flows: An Introduction and Review of Current Methods*, *IEEE Transactions on Pattern Analysis and Machine Intelligence* (2020) 1, ISSN: 1939-3539, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1109/TPAMI.2020.2992934> (cit. on p. 207).
- [127] L. Dinh, J. Sohl-Dickstein, and S. Bengio, *Density estimation using Real NVP*, 2017, arXiv: [1605.08803](https://arxiv.org/abs/1605.08803) [cs.LG] (cit. on p. 208).
- [128] C. Durkan, A. Bekasov, I. Murray, and G. Papamakarios, *Neural Spline Flows*, 2019, arXiv: [1906.04032](https://arxiv.org/abs/1906.04032) [stat.ML] (cit. on p. 208).

- [129] F. Pedregosa et al., *Scikit-learn: Machine Learning in Python*, Journal of Machine Learning Research **12** (2011) 2825 (cit. on p. [210](#)).

Appendix A

OVERVIEW OF OTHER $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ CHANNELS

The results discussed above have been developed in conjunction with (1) a boosted channel for the resonant search and (2) a vector boson fusion (VBF) channel for the non-resonant search. Detailed discussions of these two channels are beyond the scope of this thesis, though a combined set of resolved and boosted results are presented below. The VBF results are not included in this thesis, but much of this thesis work has been useful in the development of that result. For completeness, both analyses are therefore summarized here.

A.0.1 Resonant: Boosted Channel

The boosted analysis selection targets resonance masses from 900 GeV to 5 TeV. In such events, H decays have a high Lorentz boost, such that the $b\bar{b}$ decays are very collimated. The resolved analysis fails to reconstruct such HH events, as the $R = 0.4$ jets start to overlap.

The boosted analysis instead reconstructs H decays as large radius, $R = 1.0$ jets, with corresponding b -quarks identified with variable radius subjets, that is jets with a radius that scales as ρ/p_T , the p_T is that of the jet in question, and ρ is a fixed parameter, here chosen to be 30 GeV, which is optimized to maintain truth-level double b-labeling efficiency across the full range of Higgs jet p_T [81].

Due to limited boosted b-tagging efficiency and to maintain sensitivity even when b -jets are highly collimated, the boosted analysis is divided into three categories based on the number of b -tagged jets associated to each large radius jet:

- $4b$ category: two b -tagged jets in each
- $2b - 1$ category: two b -tagged jets in one, one in the other

- $1b - 1$ category: one b -tagged jet in each

The analysis then proceeds in each of these categories.

The resolved and boosted channels are combined for resonance masses from 900 GeV to 1.5 TeV inclusive. To keep the channels statistically independent, the boosted channel vetoes events passing the resolved analysis selection.

A.0.2 Non-resonant: VBF Channel

The vector boson fusion channel is considered for the non-resonant search, and builds off of the work developed in [22]. While the sensitivity is in general much more limited than the gluon-gluon fusion analysis due to the much smaller production cross section (1.726 fb at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV [31–38]), VBF is sensitive to a variety of Beyond the Standard Model physics, both complementary and orthogonal to the theoretical scope of gluon-gluon fusion. Representative Feynman diagrams are shown in Figure A.1.

The VBF channel proceeds very similarly to the ggF, with the primary differences being the kinematic selections and the categorization, which are impacted by the presence of two *VBF jets*, resulting from the two initial state quarks. The ggF channel result presented here includes a veto on VBF events, such that if events pass the full VBF selection, they are not included in the set of events considered for the ggF result.

Beginning with the assumption of four HH jets and two VBF jets, the VBF channel first requires an event to have a minimum six jets. The VBF jets are reconstructed as the two jets with the highest di-jet invariant mass, m_{jj} , out of the set of all non-tagged jets in the event. If no such pair exists (i.e., there are less than two non-tagged jets), the event is placed in the ggF channel. To reduce the number of background events, three cuts are then applied, VBF jets are required to have $\Delta\eta > 3$ and a combined invariant mass of $m_{jj} > 1000$ GeV. HH jets are identified as in the ggF channel, and the vector sum of the p_T of the HH and VBF jets is required to be less than 65 GeV. The remainder of the analysis proceeds similarly to the ggF channel, and events failing any stage of this selection are considered for ggF.

Note that the background estimation for the VBF channel is inherited from the resonant and ggF analyses, a significant additional contribution of this thesis work.

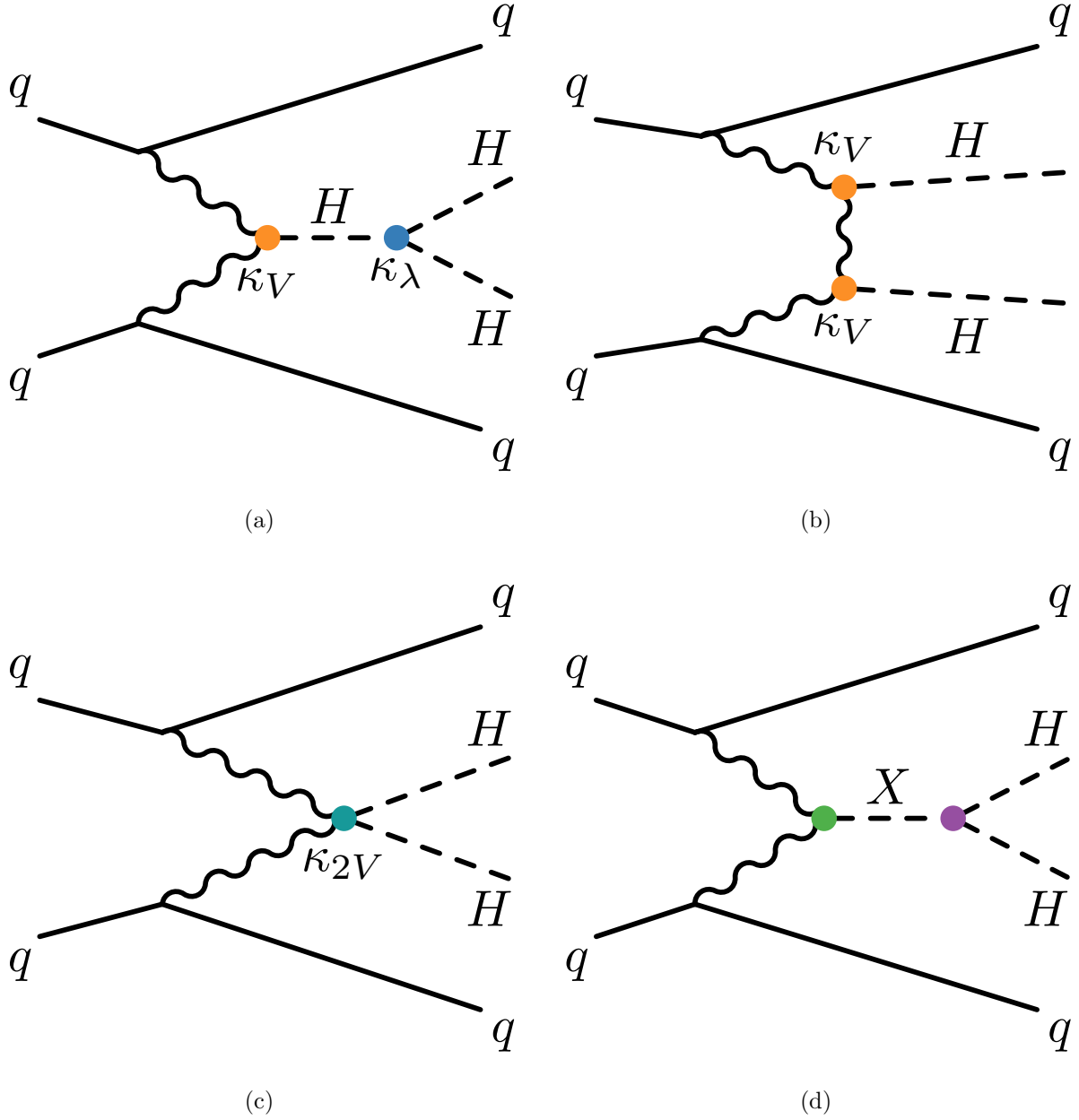


Figure A.1: Representative Feynman diagrams for the VBF channel. While this channel may be used for both resonant and non-resonant searches [22], this thesis work was developed concurrently with a focused non-resonant search. In addition to variations of the trilinear coupling, κ_λ , VBF is sensitive to various Higgs couplings to vector bosons, namely κ_V and κ_{2V} , attached to VVH and $VVHH$ vertices respectively.

Appendix B

FUTURE IDEAS FOR $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$

The searches presented in this thesis make use of a large suite of sophisticated techniques, selected through careful study and validation. During this process, a variety of interesting directions for the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ analysis were explored by this thesis author, in collaboration with a few others¹, but were not used due to a variety of constraints. Two such interesting directions are presented here, with the hope of encouraging further exploration of these techniques in future work.

B.1 pairAGraph: A New Method for Jet Pairing

As discussed in Chapter 7, one of the main problems to solve is the pairing of b -jets into Higgs candidates. Figure 7.1 demonstrates that the choice of the pairing method, while important for achieving good reconstruction of signal events, also significantly impacts the structure of non- HH events, leading to various biases in the background estimate. Evaluation of the pairing method therefore must take both of these factors into account. While some advantages have been presented in respective contexts for the pairing methods considered in this thesis, it is motivated to explore further improvements to this important component of the analysis.

To that end, we note that all of the pairing methods considered here share a common feature: four jets are selected, and the pairing is some discrimination between the available three pairings of these four jets. For the methods used in this analysis, the jet selection proceeds via a simple p_T ordering, with b -tagged jets receiving a higher priority than non-

¹Notably Nicole Hartman (SLAC), who spearheaded much of the development and proof of concept work, in collaboration with Michael Kagan and Rafael Teixeira De Lima.

tagged jets.

With the advent of a variety of machine learning methods for dealing with a variable number of inputs (e.g. recurrent neural networks [120], deep sets [121], graph neural networks [122], and transformers [123]), a natural place to improve on the pairing is to consider more than just four jets. The pairing and jet selection is then performed simultaneously, allowing for the incorporation of more event information in the pairing decision and the incorporation of jet correlation structure in the jet selection.

In practice, the majority of $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ events have either four or five jets which pass the kinematic preselection, and any gain from this additional freedom would come from events with greater than or equal to five jets. However, this five jet topology is particularly exciting for scenarios such as events with initial state radiation (ISR), in which the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ jets are offset by a single jet with p_T similar in magnitude to that of the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ system. Such events have explicit event level information which is not encoded with the inclusion of only the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ jets, and are pathological if the ISR jet happens to pass b -tagging requirements.

Additionally, with the use of lower tagged regions for background estimation and alternate signal regions, this extra flexibility in jet selection may provide a very useful bias – since the algorithm is trained on signal, the selected jets for the pairing will be the most “4b-like” jets available in the considered set.

For the studies considered here, a transformer [123] based architecture is used. This is best visualized by considering the event as a graph with jets corresponding to nodes and edges corresponding to potential connections – for this reason, we term this algorithm “pairAGraph”. The approach is as follows: each jet, i , is represented by some vector of input variables, $\vec{x}_i$, in our case the four-vector information, (p_T, η, ϕ, E) of each jet, plus information on the b -tagging decision. A multi-layer perceptron (MLP) is used to create a latent embedding, $\mathbf{h}(\vec{x}_i)$, of this input vector.

To describe the relationship between various jets in the event, we then define a vector $\vec{z}_i$

for each jet as

$$\vec{z}_i = \sum_j w_{ij} \mathbf{h}(\vec{x}_j) \quad (\text{B.1})$$

where j runs over all jets in the event (including $i = j$), the w_{ij} can be thought of as edge weights, and $\mathbf{h}(\vec{x}_j)$ is the latent embedding for jet j mentioned above.

Within this formula, both $\mathbf{h}$ and the w_{ij} are learnable. To learn an appropriate latent mapping and set of edge weights, we define a similarity metric corresponding to each possible jet pairing:

$$\vec{z}_{1a} \cdot \vec{z}_{1b} + \vec{z}_{2a} \cdot \vec{z}_{2b} \quad (\text{B.2})$$

where subscripts $1a$ and $1b$ correspond to the two jets in pair 1, $2a$ and $2b$ to the jets in pair 2 for a given pairing of four distinct jets.

This similarity metric is calculated for all possible pairings, which are then passed through a softmax [124] activation function, which compresses these scores to between 0 and 1 with sum of 1, lending an interpretation as probability of each pairing.

In training, the ground truth pairing is set by *truth matching* jets to the b -jets in the HH signal simulation – a jet is considered to match if it is < 0.3 in ΔR away from a b -jet in the simulation record. Given this ground truth, a cross-entropy loss [125] is used on the softmax outputs, and w_{ij} and $\mathbf{h}$ are updated correspondingly. Training in such a way corresponds to updating w_{ij} and $\mathbf{h}$ to maximize the similarity metric for the correct pairing.

In evaluation, the pairings with a higher score (and therefore higher softmax output) given the trained h and w_{ij} therefore correspond to the pairings that are most “HH-like”. The maximum over these scores is therefore the pairing used as the predicted result from the algorithm.

Because the majority of $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ events have either four or five jets, it was found to be sufficient to only consider a maximum of 5 jets. Consideration of more is in principle possible, but the quickly expanding combinatorics leads to a rapidly more difficult problem. The jets considered are the five leading jets in p_T . Notably, this set of jets may include jets which are not b -tagged, even for the nominal $4b$ region – therefore events with 4 b -tagged jets

are not required to use all of them in the construction of Higgs candidates, in contrast to the other algorithms used in this thesis.

A comparison of the pairAGraph jet selection with the baseline selection used in Chapter 7 is considered in Table B.1 for the MC16a Standard Model non-resonant signal. As a reminder, the baseline selection orders jets by p_T , selecting first the highest p_T b -tagged jets (according to the b -tag region definition) and then the highest p_T non-tagged jets. The first four jets in this ordering are used.

For the comparison presented in Table B.1, only the leading five jets are considered in applying both algorithms in order to compare results on more equal footing. The numbers shown are the percent of the time that the correct jets are selected for the Higgs candidates by each algorithm, given that the correct jets fall within these leading five jets, where “correct” here means truth matched to the corresponding b -quarks. pairAGraph demonstrates a slight improvement over the baseline for $4b$, which widens when considering lower b -tag categories. Given that four b -quarks are present in all of these categories, this suggests that pairAGraph is able to recover information in the case of, e.g., mis-tagged jets.

Table B.2 compares the HH pairing accuracy of a few different pairing algorithms for the Standard Model signal. Notably, pairAGraph demonstrates a higher pairing accuracy immediately after paring, but all methods are quite comparable after the full analysis selection.

As mentioned in Chapter 7, though the pairing is quite important for signal events, it also must be applied to events in data, where the overwhelming majority of events do not contain HH . Though in general, pairing methods select for an HH -like topology, the additional flexibility of pairAGraph to choose which jets enter the candidate HH system provides an additional handle to shape the kinematics of events in data. Examples of this impact are seen in Figures B.1 and B.2, which compare the $2b$ and $4b$ distributions of p_T of the HH candidate system between BDT pairing and pairAGraph pairing before and after reweighting. HH p_T was chosen as it is a variable which demonstrates both a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$ and a residual mis-modeling after reweighting. As can be seen in Figure B.1, the

4b correct jets	96.7%	96.0%
3b+1 loose correct jets	96.3%	95.2%
3b correct jets	91.6%	83.2%

Table B.1: Percent of the time that the correct jets are selected for the Higgs candidates by each algorithm, given that the correct jets fall within the set of considered jets, where “correct” here means truth matched to the corresponding b -quarks. Only the leading five jets are considered in the assessment of both algorithms. Definitions of the $4b$ and $3b + 1$ loose categories are as described in Section 7.1, where $3b$ requires three b -tagged jets and the fourth jet is untagged. pairAGraph demonstrates a slight improvement over the baseline for $4b$, which widens when considering lower b -tag categories. Given that four b -quarks are present in all of these categories, this suggests that pairAGraph is able to recover information in the case of, e.g., mis-tagged jets.

	After Pairing	After Full Selection
D_{HH}	71.8%	93.6%
$\min \Delta R$	69.7%	94.7%
pairAGraph	78.4%	94.2%

Table B.2: Pairing accuracy evaluated for the Standard Model signal (MC16a), comparing D_{HH} and $\min \Delta R$ (discussed in Chapter 7) with pairAGraph trained on the Standard Model signal. Numbers are shown both immediately after pairing and after the full analysis selection. pairAGraph demonstrates a 7-8% higher accuracy than the other algorithms immediately after pairing, but all methods are quite comparable after the full analysis selection.

$2b$ and $4b$ distributions are more similar before reweighting with pairAGraph. Figure B.2 further shows that the residual mis-modeling after reweighting is reduced, along with the corresponding uncertainty. While this is not fully conclusive, it provides a hint that the jets chosen for the $2b$ event HH candidate system may be more “ $4b$ -like” than the jets chosen with the baseline selection.

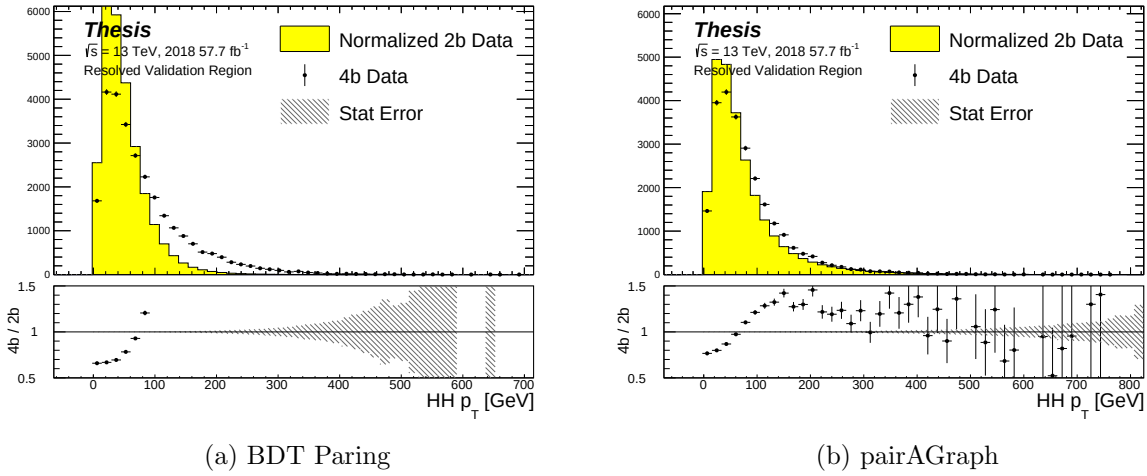


Figure B.1: Comparison of distributions of $HH p_T$ in the 2018 resonant validation region before reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). $HH p_T$ is a variable with a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$, but the relative shapes seem to be more similar for pairAGraph than for BDT paring, corresponding to the hypothesis that pairAGraph chooses more “ $4b$ -like” jets.

B.2 Background Estimation with Mass Plane Interpolation

The choice of a pairing algorithm that results in a smooth mass plane (such as $\min \Delta R$) opens up a variety of options for the background estimation. While the method based on reweighting of $2b$ events used for this thesis performs well and has been extensively studied and validated, it also relies on several assumptions. In particular, the reweighting is derived

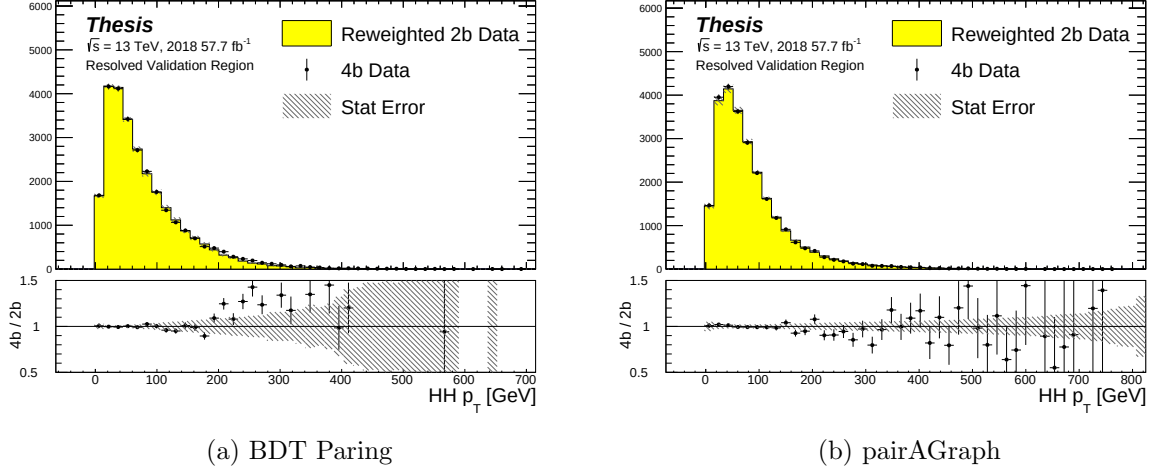


Figure B.2: Comparison of distributions of $HH p_T$ in the 2018 resonant validation region after reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). $HH p_T$ is a variable with a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$, and the reweighted agreement in the high p_T tail is significantly improved with pairAGraph, with a corresponding reduction in the assigned bootstrap uncertainty in that region.

between e.g., $2b$ and $4b$ events *outside* of the signal region and then applied to $2b$ events *inside* the signal region, with the assumption that the $2b$ to $4b$ transfer function will be sufficiently similar in both regions of the mass plane. An uncertainty is assigned to account for the bias due to this assumption, but the extrapolation in the mass plane is never explicitly treated in the nominal estimate. While the approach of reweighting $2b$ events within the signal region does have the advantage of incorporating explicit signal region information (that is, the $2b$ signal region events), the importance of the extrapolation bias motivates consideration of a method that operates within the $4b$ mass plane. This additionally removes the reliance on lower b -tagging regions, allowing for the use of, e.g. $3b$ triggers, and future-proofing the analysis against trigger bandwidth constraints in the low tag regions.

The pairAGraph pairing method discussed in the previous section was developed concu-

rently with these studies and demonstrates good properties for an interpolated estimate (as shown below), and is therefore used in the following.

The method considered here relies on the following: for a given vector of input variables (event kinematics, etc), $\vec{x}$, the joint probability in the HH mass plane may be written as:

$$p(\vec{x}, m_{H1}, m_{H2}) = p(\vec{x}|m_{H1}, m_{H2})p(m_{H1}, m_{H2}) \quad (\text{B.3})$$

by the chain rule of probability. This means that the full dynamics of events in the HH mass plane may be described by (1) the conditional probability of considered variables $\vec{x}$, given values of m_{H1} and m_{H2} , and (2) the density of the mass plane itself.

We present here an approach which uses normalizing flows [126] to model the conditional probabilities of events in the mass plane and Gaussian processes to model the mass plane density. These models are trained in a region around, but not including, the signal region, and the trained models are then used to construct an *interpolated* estimate of the signal region kinematics. This approach therefore explicitly treats event behavior within the mass plane, avoiding the concerns associated with a reweighted estimate. Validation of such a method, as well as assessing of closure and biases of the method, may be done in alternate b -tagging or kinematic regions, notably the now unused $2b$ region, results of which are shown below.

B.2.1 Normalizing Flows

Normalizing flows model observed data $x \in X$, with $x \sim p_X$, as the output of an invertible, differentiable function $f : X \rightarrow Z$, with $z \in Z$ a latent variable with a simple prior probability distribution (often standard normal), $z \sim p_Z$. From a change of variables, given such a function, we may write

$$p_X(x) = p_Z(f(x)) \left| \det \left(\frac{d(f(x))}{dx} \right) \right| \quad (\text{B.4})$$

where $\left(\frac{d(f(x))}{dx} \right)$ is the Jacobian of f at x .

The problem of normalizing flows then reduces to (1) choosing sets of f which are both tractable and sufficiently expressive to describe observed data, and (2) optimizing associated

sets of functional parameters on observed data via maximum likelihood estimation using the above formula. Sampling from the learned density is done by drawing from the latent distribution $z \sim p_Z$ (cf. inverse transform sampling) – the corresponding sample is then $x \sim p_X$ with $x = f^{-1}(z)$.

A standard approach to the definition of these f is as a composition of affine transformations (e.g. RealNVP [127]), that is, transformations of the form $\alpha z + \beta$, with α and β learnable parameter vectors. This can roughly be thought of as shifting and squeezing the input input prior density in order to match the data density. However, this has somewhat limited expressivity, for instance in the case of a multi-modal density.

This work thus instead relies on neural spline flows [128] in which the functions considered are monotonic rational-quadratic splines, which have an analytic inverse. A rational quadratic function has the form of a quotient of two quadratic polynomials, namely,

$$f_j(x_i) = \frac{a_{ij}x_i^2 + b_{ij}x_{ij} + c_{ij}}{d_{ij}x_i^2 + e_{ij}x_i + f_{ij}} \quad (\text{B.5})$$

with six associated parameters (a_{ij} through f_{ij}) per each piecewise bin j of the spline and each input dimension i . This is explicitly more flexible and expressive than a simple affine transformation, allowing, e.g., the treatment of multi-modality via the piecewise nature of the spline.

The rational quadratic spline is defined on an set interval. The transformation outside of this interval is set to the identity, with these linear tails allowing for unconstrained inputs. The boundaries between bins of the spline are set by coordinates called *knots*, with $K + 1$ knots for K bins – the two endpoints for the spline interval plus the $K - 1$ internal boundaries. The derivatives at these points are constrained to be positive for the internal knots, and boundary derivatives are set to 1 to match the linear tails.

The bin widths and heights are learnable ($2 \cdot K$ parameters) as are the internal knot derivatives ($K - 1$ parameters), and these $3K - 1$ outputs of the neural network are sufficient to define a monotonic rational-quadratic spline which passes through each knot and has the given derivative value at each knot.

In the context of the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ analysis, a neural spline flow is used to model the four vector information of each Higgs candidate, conditional on their respective masses. The resulting flow is therefore five dimensional, with inputs $x = (p_{T,H1}, p_{T,H2}, \eta_{H1}, \eta_{H2}, \Delta\phi_{HH})$, where the ATLAS ϕ symmetry has been encoded by assuming $\phi_{H1} = 0$. Conditional variables m_{H1} and m_{H2} are not modeled by the flow, but “come along for the ride”. A standard normal distribution in 5 dimensions is used for the underlying prior. Modeling of the four vectors was chosen in order to reduce bias from modeling m_{HH} directly.

The trained flow model then gives a model for $p(x|m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ which may be sampled from to reconstruct distributions of HH kinematics given values of m_{H1} and m_{H2} .

B.2.2 Gaussian Processes

The second piece of this background estimate is the modeling of the mass plane density, $p(m_{H1}, m_{H2})$. This is done using Gaussian process regression – note that a similar procedure is used to define a systematic in the boosted $4b$ analysis. Generally, Gaussian processes are a collection of random variables in which every finite collection of said variables is distributed according to a multivariate normal distribution. For the context of Gaussian process regression, what we consider is a Gaussian process over function space, that is, for a collection of points, $x_1, \dots, x_N$, the space of corresponding function values, $(f(x_1), \dots, f(x_N))$ is Gaussian process distributed, that is, described by an N dimensional normal distribution with mean μ , covariance matrix Σ .

For a single point, this would correspond to a function space described entirely by a normal distribution, with various samples from that distribution yielding various candidate functions. For multiple points, a covariance matrix describes the relationship between each pair of points – correspondingly, it is represented via a *kernel function*, $K(x, x')$. As, in practice, μ may always be set to 0 via a centering of the data, the kernel function fully defines the considered family of functions.

The considered family of functions describes a Bayesian *prior* for the data. This prior may be conditioned on a set of training data points $(X_1, \vec{y}_1)$. This conditional *posterior* may

then be used to make predictions $\vec{y}_2 = f(X_2)$ at a set of new points X_2 . Because of the Gaussian process prior assumption, $\vec{y}_1$ and $\vec{y}_2$ are assumed to be jointly Gaussian. We may therefore write

$$\begin{pmatrix} \vec{y}_1 \\ \vec{y}_2 \end{pmatrix} \sim \mathcal{N} \left(\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} K(X_1, X_1) & K(X_1, X_2) \\ K(X_1, X_2) & K(X_2, X_2) \end{pmatrix} \right) \quad (\text{B.6})$$

where we have used that the kernel function is symmetric and assumed prior mean 0.

By standard conditioning properties of Gaussian distributions,

$$\vec{y}_2 | \vec{y}_1 \sim \mathcal{N}(K(X_2, X_1)K(X_1, X_1)^{-1}\vec{y}_1, K(X_2, X_2) - K(X_2, X_1)K(X_1, X_1)^{-1}K(X_1, X_2)) \quad (\text{B.7})$$

which is the sampling distribution for a Gaussian process given kernel K . In practice, the mean of this sampling distribution is used as the function estimate, with an uncertainty from the predicted variance at a given point.

The choice of kernel function has a very strong impact on the fitted curve, and must therefore be chosen to express the expected dynamics of the data. A common such choice is a radial basis function (RBF) kernel, which takes the form

$$K(x, x') = \exp \left(-\frac{d(x, x')^2}{2l^2} \right) \quad (\text{B.8})$$

where $d(\cdot, \cdot)$ is the Euclidean distance and $l > 0$ is a length scale parameter. Conceptually, as distances $d(x, x')$ increase relative to the chosen length scale, the kernel smoothly dies off – further away points influence each other less.

Coming back to our case of the mass plane, the procedure runs as follows:

1. A binned 2d histogram of the blinded mass plane is created in a window around the “standard” analysis regions. Bins which have any overlap with the signal region are excluded.
2. A Gaussian process is trained using the bin centers, values as training points. The scikit-learn implementation [129] is used, with RBF kernel with anisotropic length scale (l is dimension 2). The length scale is initialized to (50, 50) to cover the signal region,

and optimized by minimizing the negative log-marginal likelihood on the training data, $-\log p(\vec{y}|\theta)$. Training data is centered and scaled to mean 0, variance 1, and a statistical error is included in the fit.

3. The Gaussian process is then used to predict the density $p(m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ in the signal region. This may then be sampled from via an inverse transform sampling to generate values (m_{H1}, m_{H2}) according to the density (specifically, according to the mean of the Gaussian process posterior). Though in principle the Gaussian process sampling is not limited to bin centers, this is kept for simplicity, with a uniform smearing applied within each sampled bin to approximate the continuous estimate, namely, if a bin is sampled from, the returned value is drawn uniformly at random within the sampled bin.
4. The sampling in the previous step can be arbitrary – to set the overall normalization, a Monte Carlo sampling of the Gaussian process is done to approximate the relative fraction of events predicted both inside (f_{in}) and outside (f_{out}) of the signal region, within the training box. The number of events outside of the signal region (n_{out}) is known, therefore, the number of events inside of the signal region, n_{in} , may be estimated as

$$n_{in} = \frac{n_{out}}{f_{out}} \cdot f_{in}. \quad (\text{B.9})$$

Note that the Monte Carlo sampling procedure is simply a set of samples of the Gaussian process from uniformly random values of m_{H1}, m_{H2} , and is the most convenient approach given the irregular shape of the signal region.

This procedure results in a generated set of predicted m_{H1}, m_{H2} values for signal region background events, along with an overall yield prediction.

B.2.3 The Full Prediction

Given the normalizing flow parametrization of $p(x|m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ and the Gaussian process generation of $(m_{H1}, m_{H2}) \sim p(m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ and prediction of the signal region yield, all of the

pieces are in place to construct an interpolation background estimate. Namely

1. Gaussian process sampled (m_{H1}, m_{H2}) values are provided to the normalizing flow to predict the other variables for the Higgs candidate four-vectors. These are used to construct the HH system (notably m_{HH}).
2. These final distributions are normalized according to the predicted background yield.

B.2.4 Results

All of the following results use the pairAGraph pairing algorithm, and reweighted results use the region definitions from the resonant analysis.

The Gaussian process sampling procedure is trained on a small fraction (0.01) of $2b$ data to mimic the available $4b$ statistics. This fraction of $2b$ data is blinded, and the prediction of the estimate trained on this blinded region may then be compared to real $2b$ data in the signal region. The predictions for signal region m_{H1} and m_{H2} individually are shown in Figure B.3, and the resulting mass planes are compared in Figure B.4. Good agreement is seen.

The $4b$ region is kept blinded for this work, meaning that a direct comparison of the Gaussian process estimate in the $4b$ signal region is not done. However, a Gaussian process is trained on the blinded $4b$ region and compared to the corresponding reweighted $2b$ estimate, trained per the nominal procedures from the analyses above. The predictions for signal region m_{H1} and m_{H2} individually are shown in Figure B.5, compared to both the control and validation region derived reweighting estimates, and the resulting signal region mass planes are compared in Figure B.6. The estimates are seen to be compatible.

The Gaussian process estimate may then be used as an input to the normalizing flow estimate to form a complete background estimate. Figure B.7 shows such an estimate for the subsampled $2b$ signal region. Results for the prediction of the normalizing flow with inputs of real $2b$ signal region m_{H1} and m_{H2} are compared to the results of using Gaussian process predicted m_{H1} and m_{H2} , and are seen to be consistent, demonstrating the above closure of

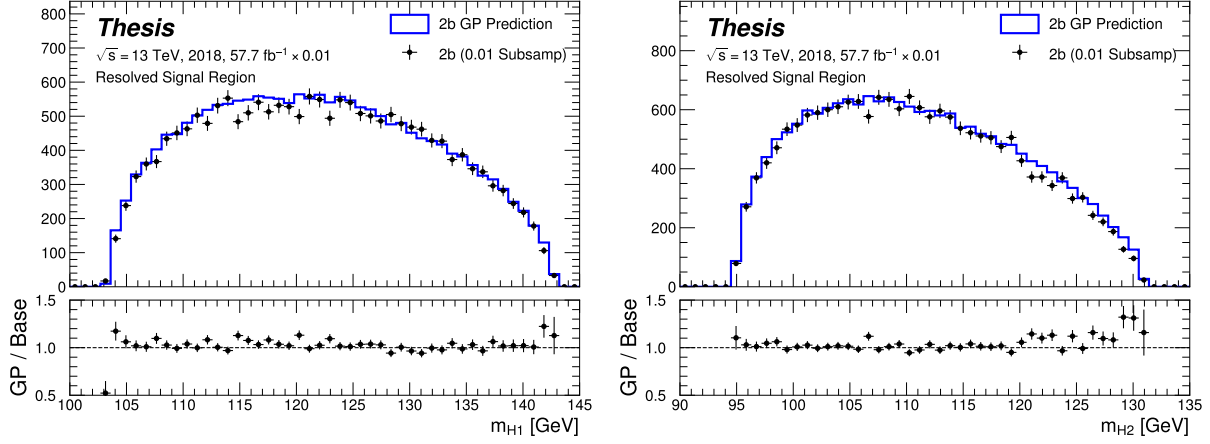


Figure B.3: Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H1} and m_{H2} for $2b$ signal region events compared to real $2b$ signal region events for the 2018 dataset. Good agreement is seen. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the $2b$ dataset is used for both training and this final comparison to mimic $4b$ statistics.

the Gaussian process prediction. Reasonable agreement with real $2b$ signal region data is seen.

Figure B.8 demonstrates the application of this process to the $4b$ region, closely following how such an estimate would be used in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ analysis. As the $4b$ signal region is kept blinded for these studies, no direct evaluation is made, but results are compared to a resonant control region derived reweighting. Both signal region predictions are seen to be comparable, though there are some systematic differences. However, only the nominal estimates are compared here, with assessment of uncertainties on the interpolated estimate left for future work.

B.2.5 Outstanding Points

While good performance is demonstrated from the nominal interpolated background estimate, various uncertainties must be assigned according to the various stages of the estimate. These

notably include

- Assessing a statistical uncertainty on the normalizing flow training (cf. bootstrap uncertainty).
- Propagation of the Gaussian process uncertainty through the sampling procedure.
- Validation of the resulting estimate and assessment of necessary systematic uncertainties (e.g. from validation region non-closure).

These are all quite tractable, but some, especially the choice of an appropriate systematic uncertainty, are certainly not obvious and require detailed study. In this respect, the reweighting validation work of the non-resonant analysis is certainly quite useful as a starting place in terms of the available regions and their correspondence to the nominal $4b$ signal region.

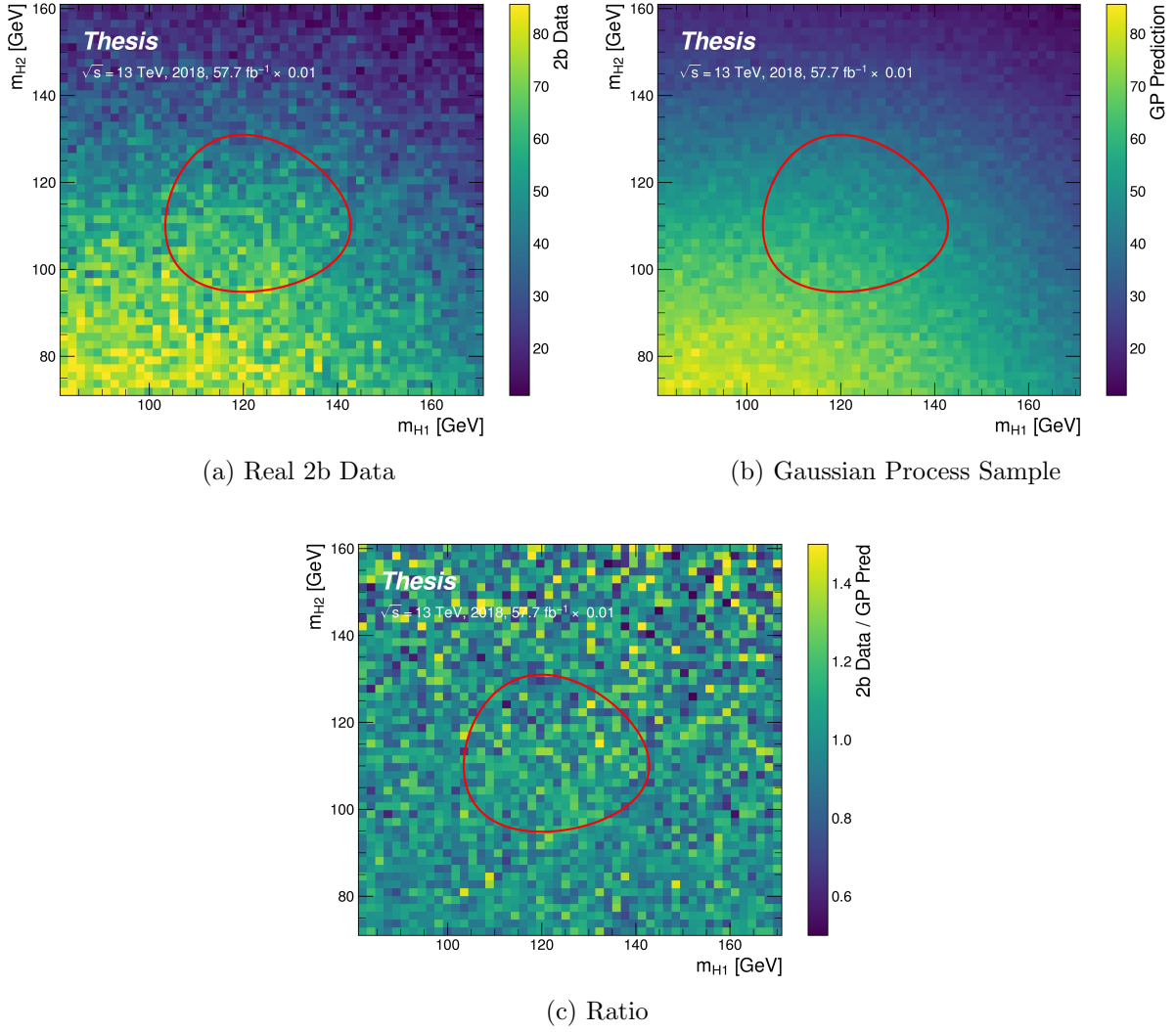


Figure B.4: Gaussian process sampling prediction for the mass plane compared to the real 2b dataset for 2018. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the 2b dataset is used for both training and this final comparison to mimic 4b statistics. Good agreement is seen.

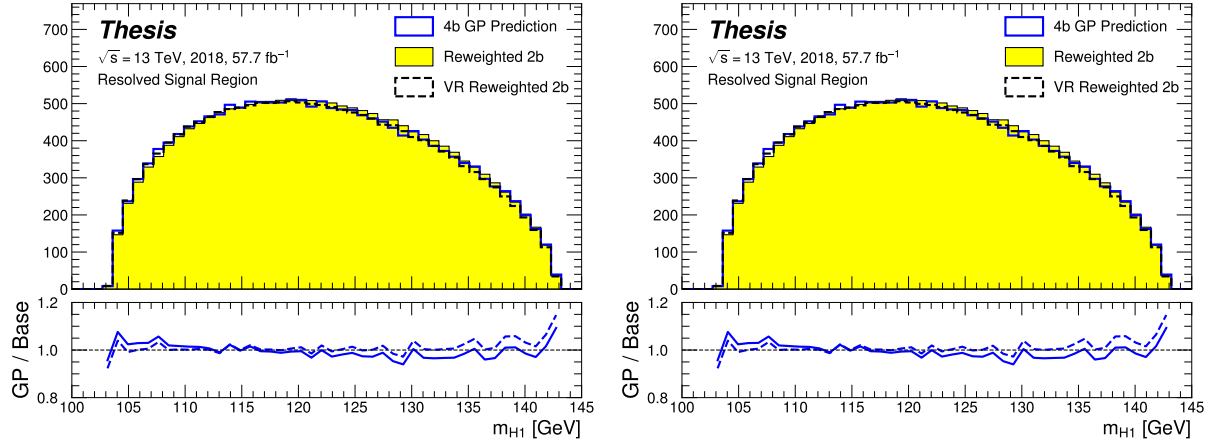


Figure B.5: Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H1} and m_{H2} for $4b$ signal region events compared to both control and validation reweighting predictions. While there are some differences, the estimates are compatible.

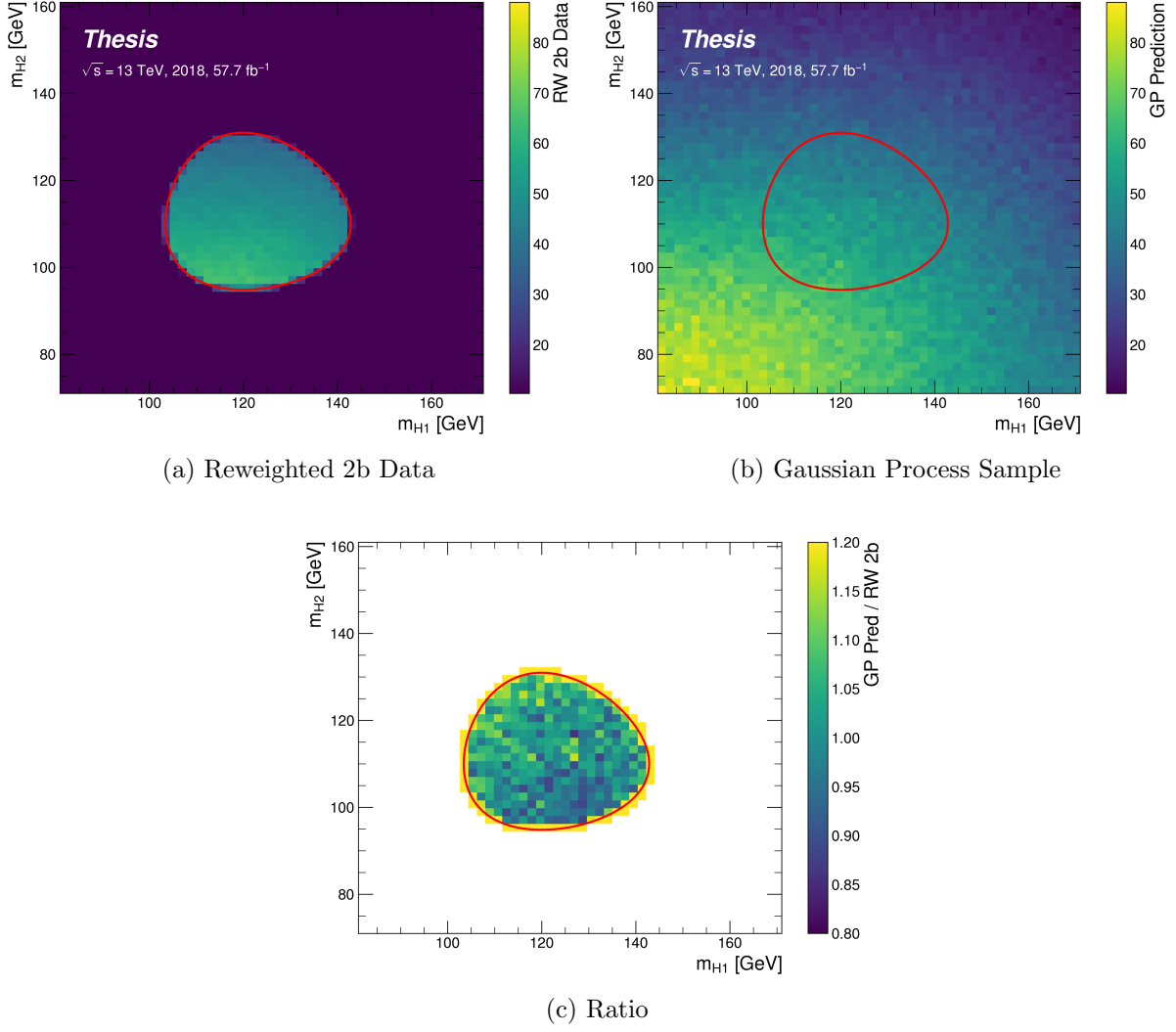


Figure B.6: Gaussian process sampling prediction for the $4b$ mass plane compared to the reweighted $2b$ estimate in the signal region. Both estimates are compatible.

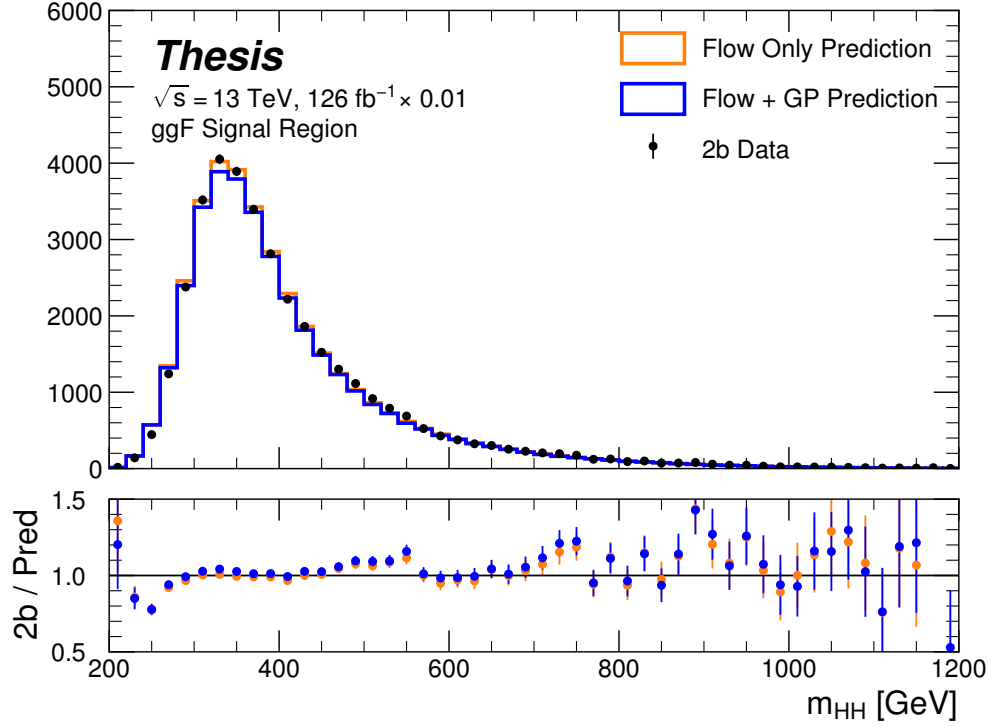


Figure B.7: Comparison of the interpolation background estimate with real $2b$ data in the signal region. Only 1 % of $2b$ data is used in order to mimic $4b$ statistics, and results are presented here summed across years. The “Flow Only” prediction uses samples of actual $2b$ signal region data for the input values of m_{H1} and m_{H2} , whereas the “Flow + GP” prediction uses samples following the Gaussian process procedure above, more closely mimicking a the full background estimation procedure. The two predictions are quite comparable, demonstrating the closure of the Gaussian process estimate, and the predicted m_{HH} shape agrees well with $2b$ data. Only $2b$ statistical uncertainty is shown.

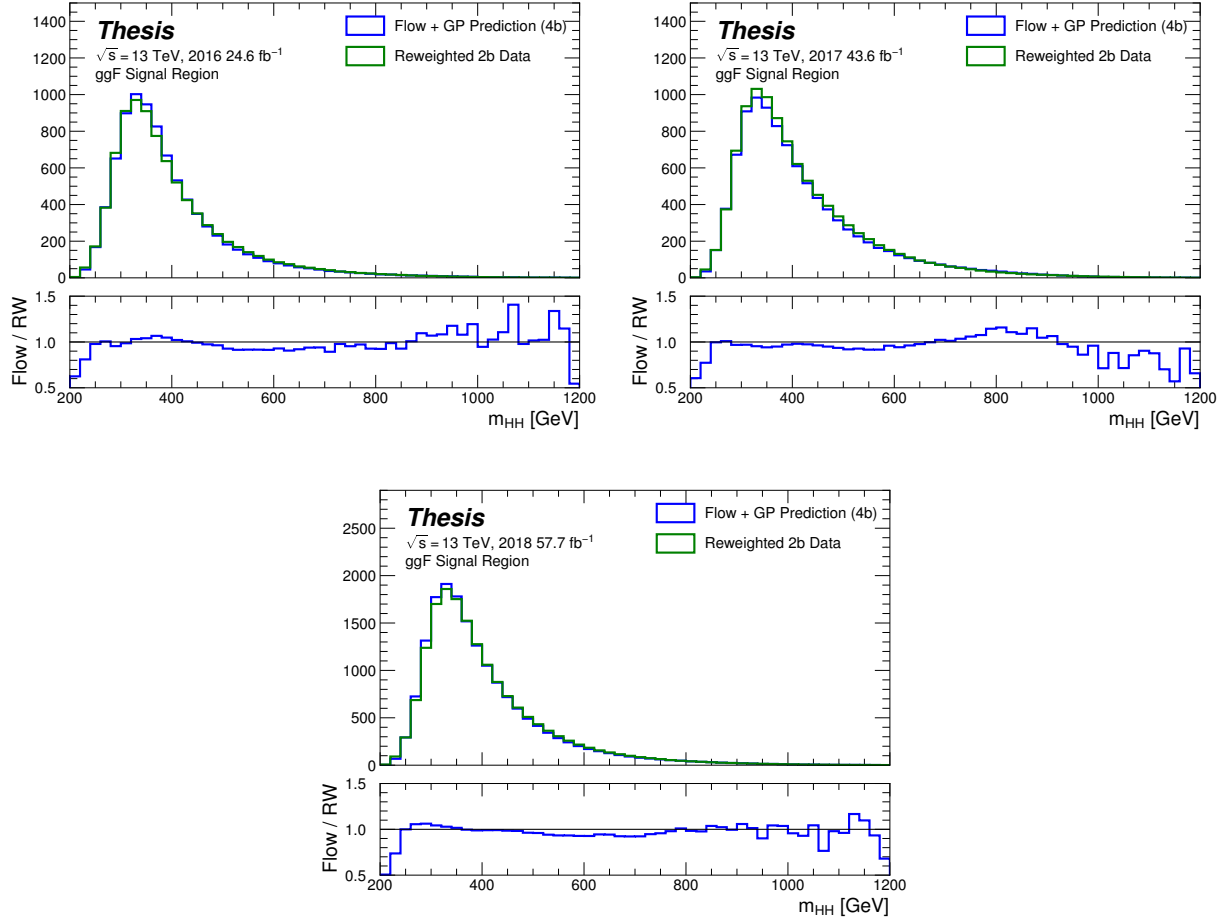


Figure B.8: Comparison of the interpolation background estimate in the $4b$ signal region with the control region derived reweighted 2b estimate, shown for each year individually. Results are generally similar, within around 10 %.

Appendix C

KINEMATIC REWEIGHTING FOR THE 2018 VALIDATION REGION

The impact of this control region derived reweighting in the validation region for the 2018 dataset is shown in Figures C.1 through C.9 for the resonant search and Figures C.10 through C.18 for $4b$ and Figures C.19 through C.27 for $3b1l$ for the non-resonant search. 2018 is chosen because it is the largest subset of the data on which the year-by-year reweighting is trained. Generally good agreement is seen, though there are differences due to the application of the reweighting outside of the training region. As noted above, the bimodal structure in m_{H1} for the non-resonant search is due to the definition of the validation region.

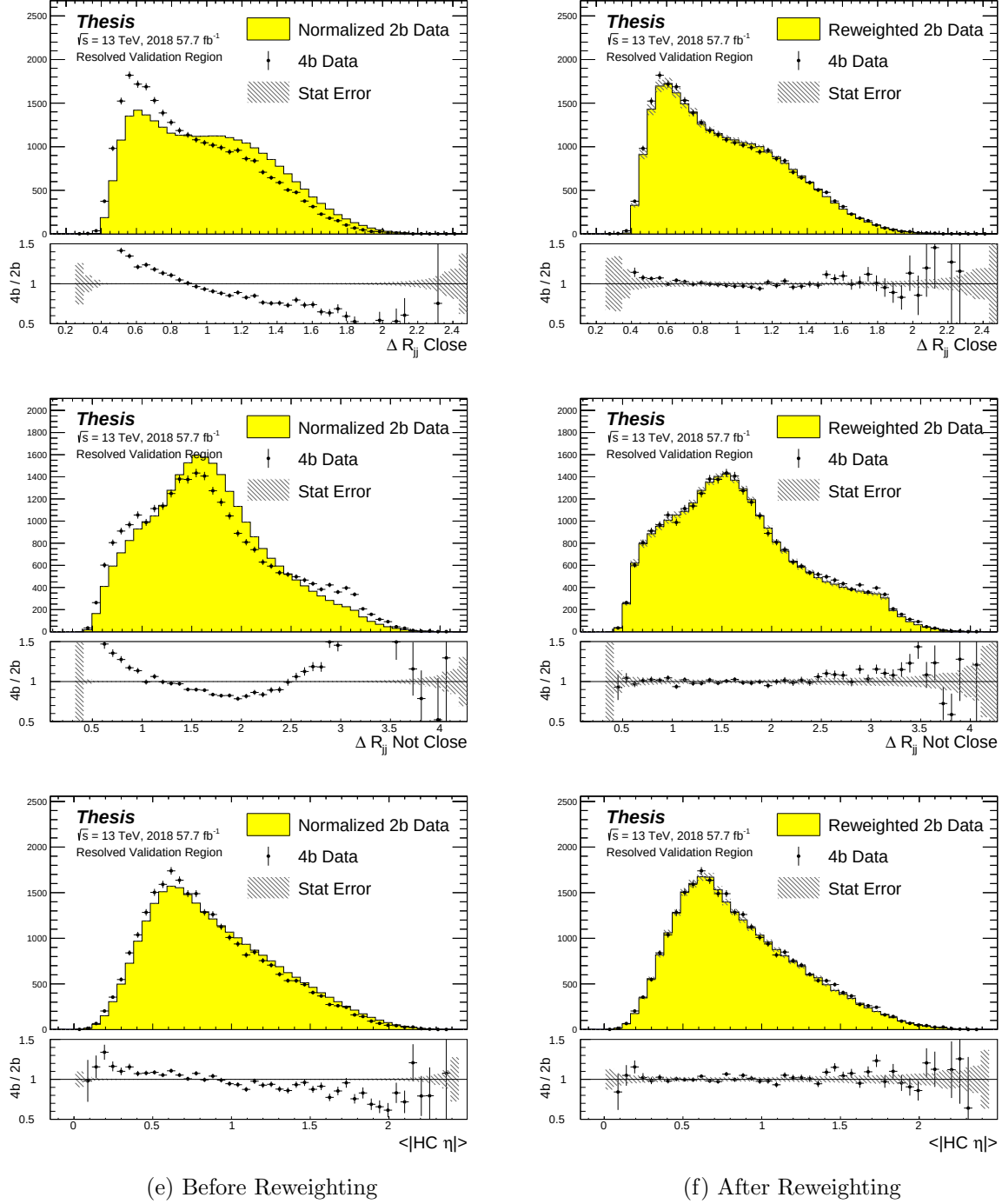


Figure C.1: **Resonant Search**: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

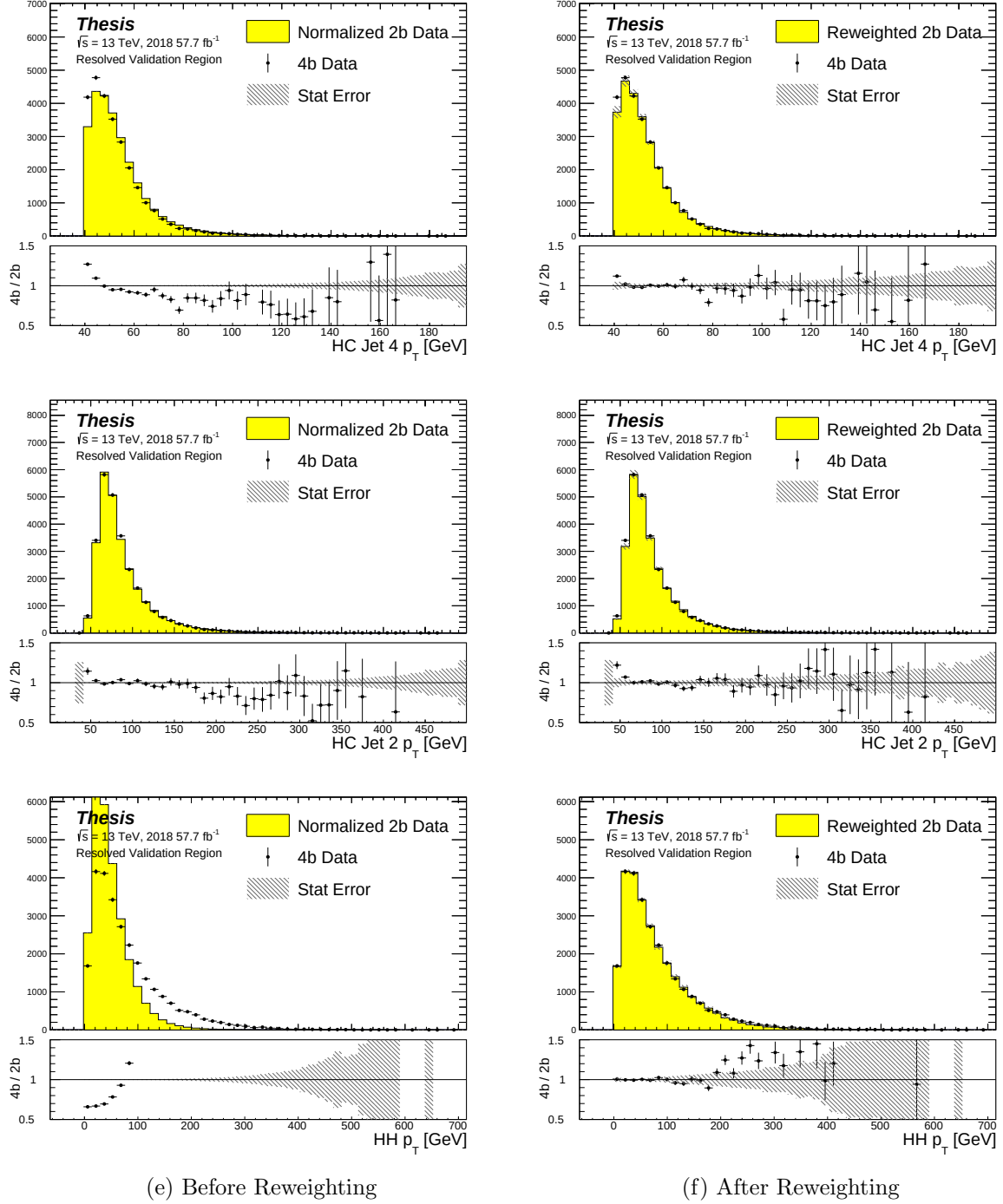
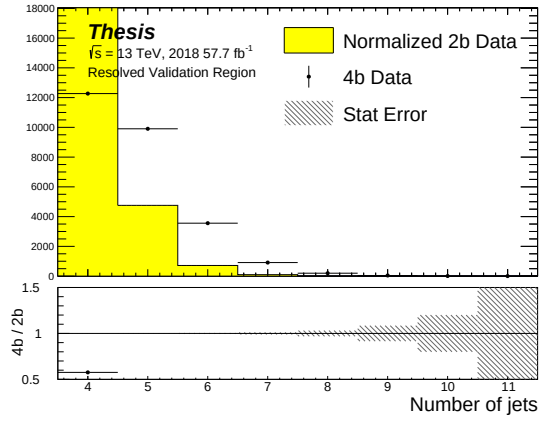
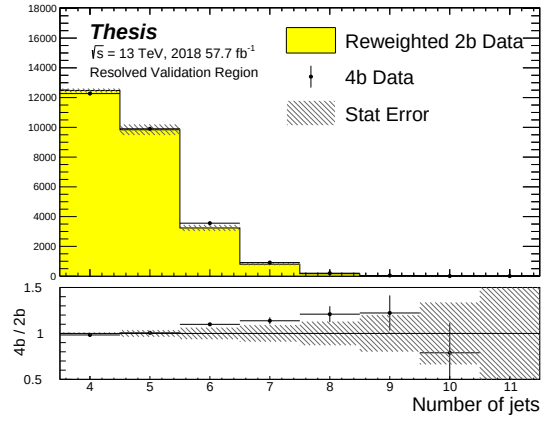


Figure C.2: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.



(a) Before Reweighting



(b) After Reweighting

Figure C.3: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

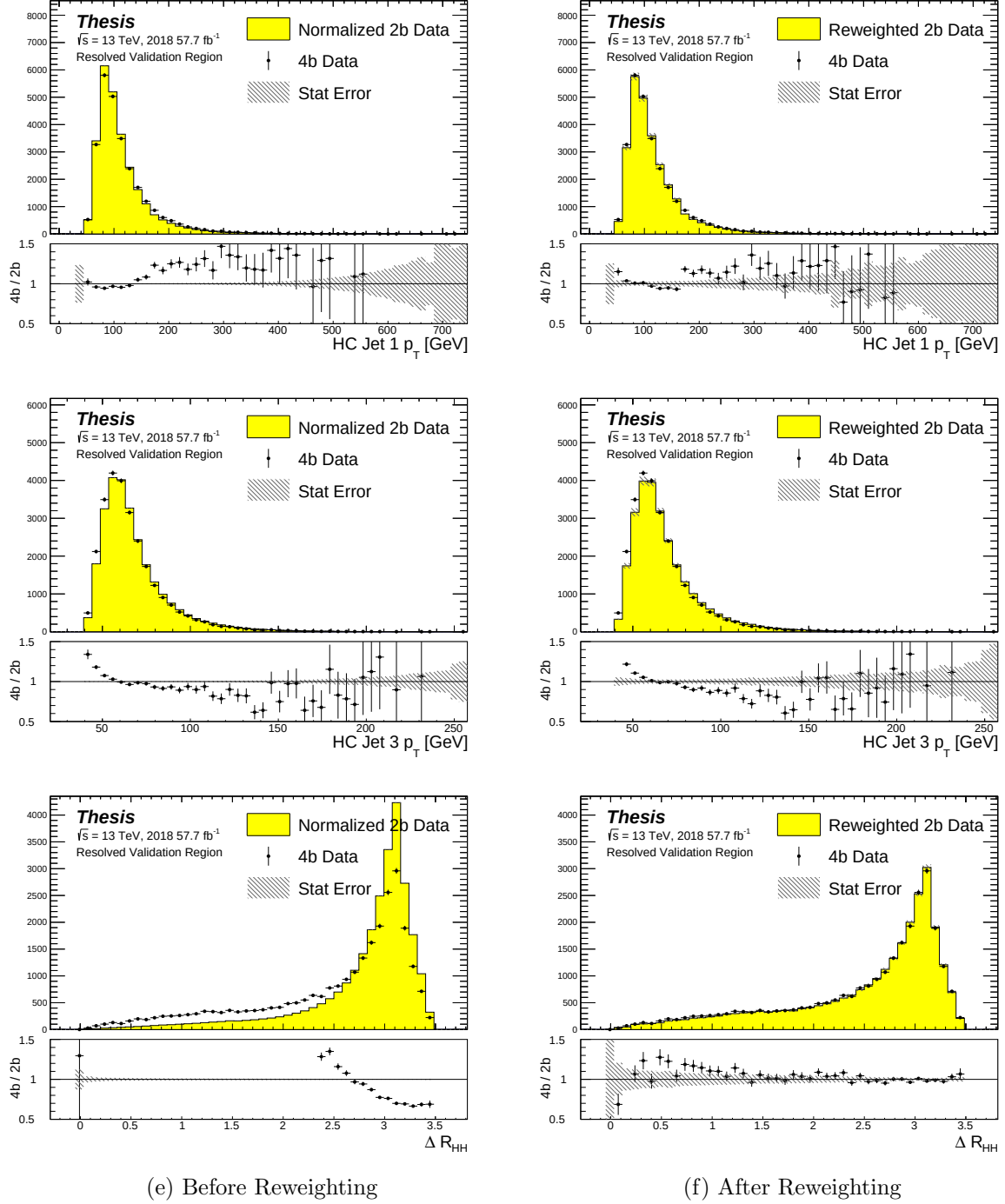


Figure C.4: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

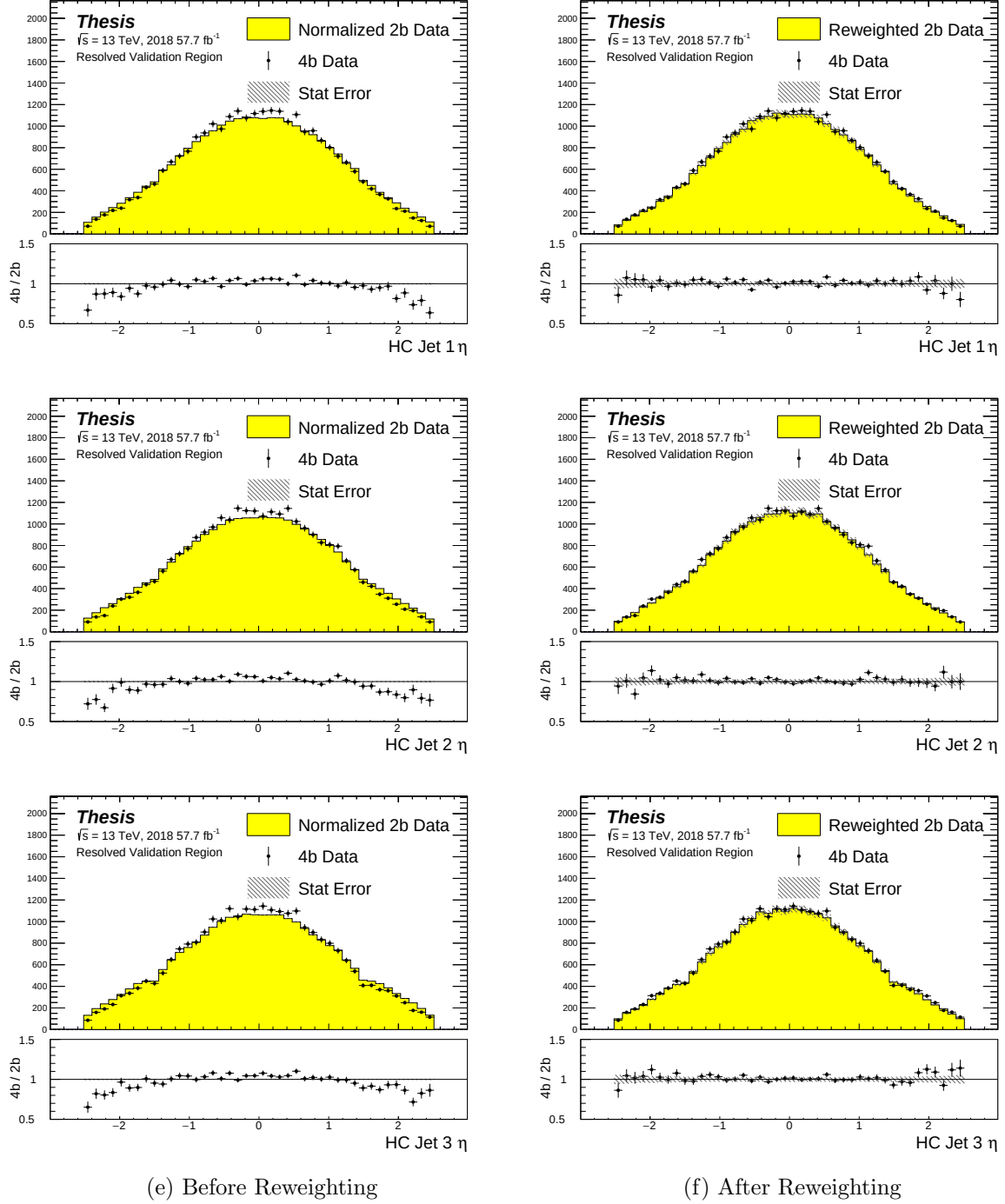


Figure C.5: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

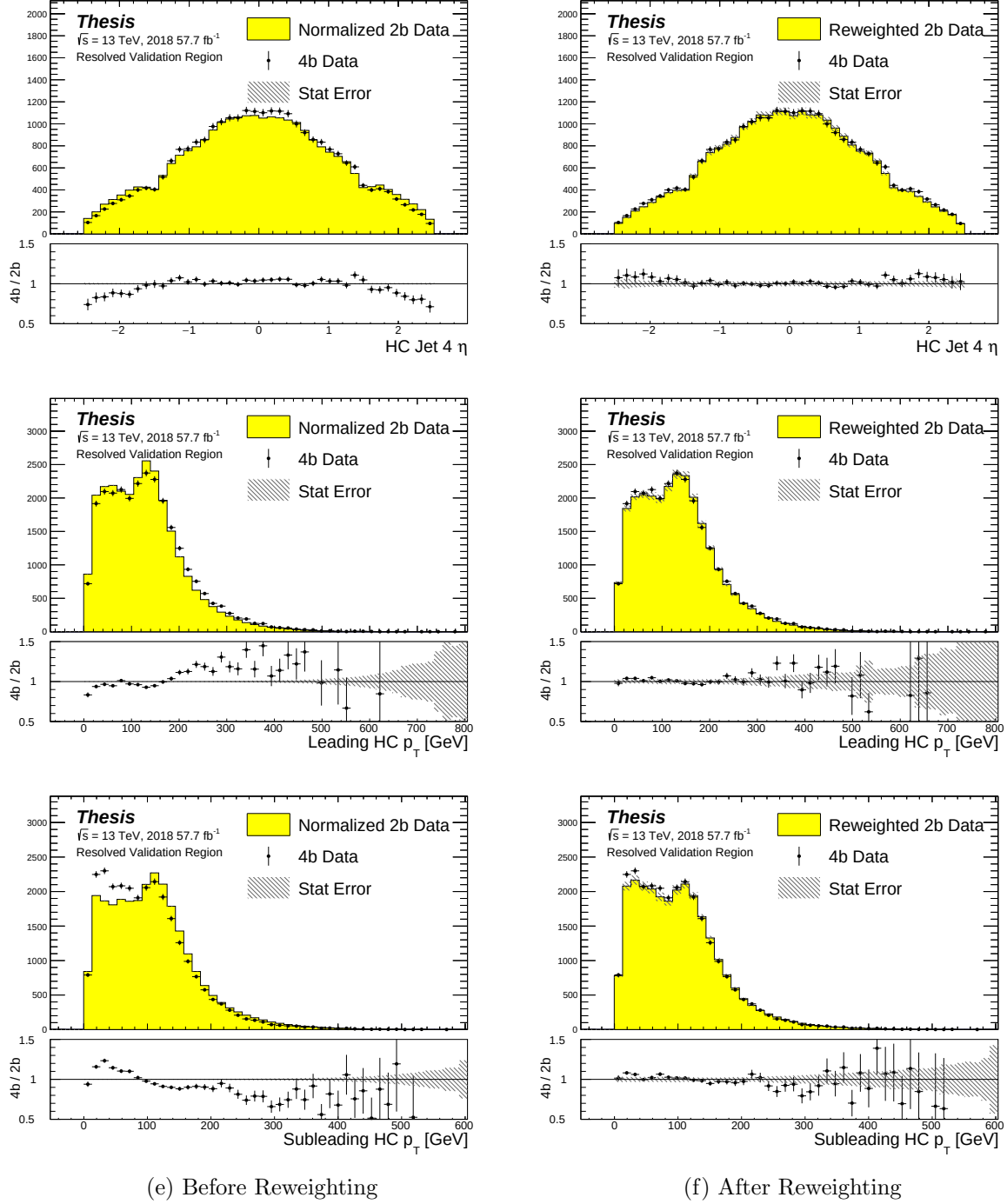


Figure C.6: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

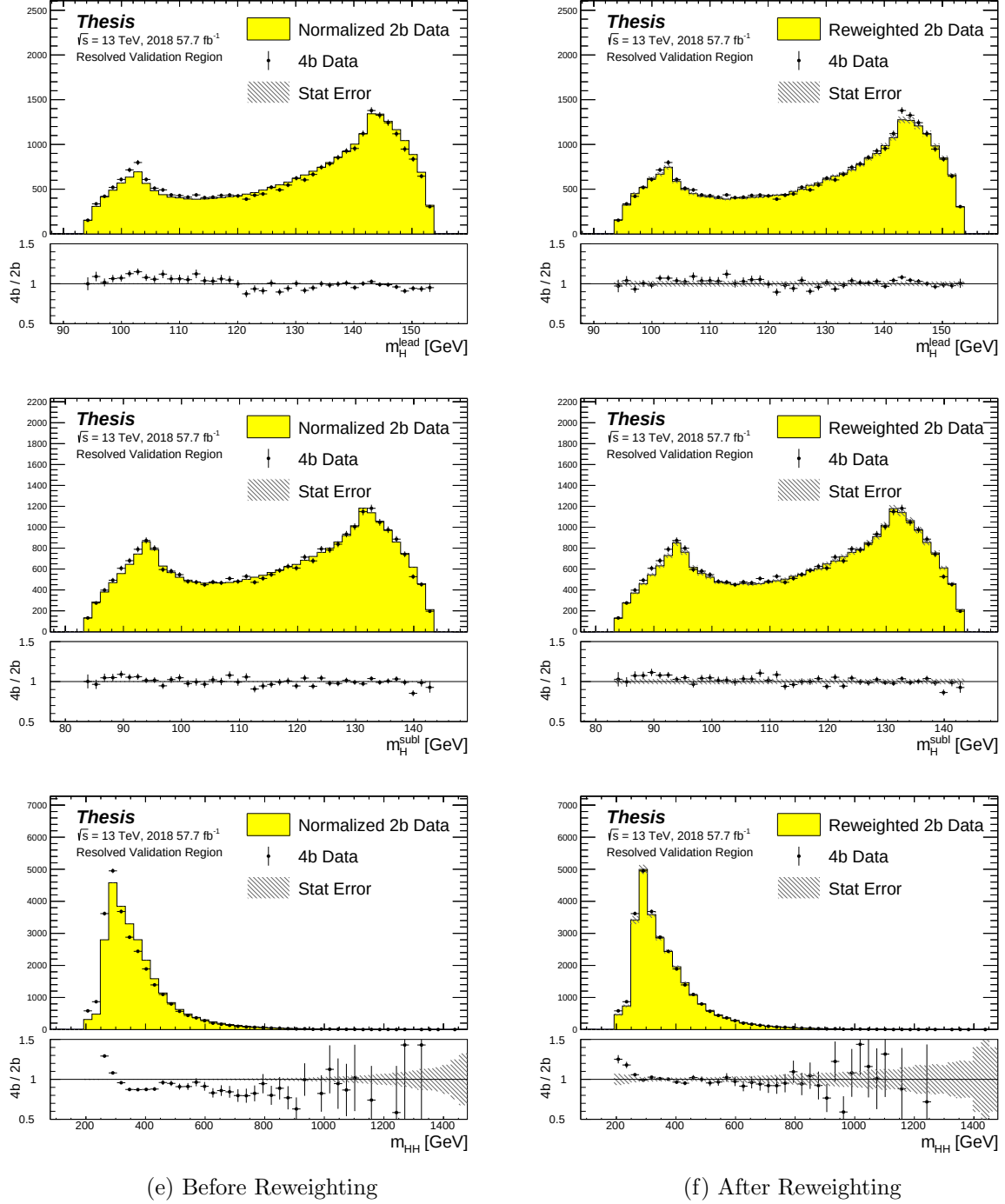


Figure C.7: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

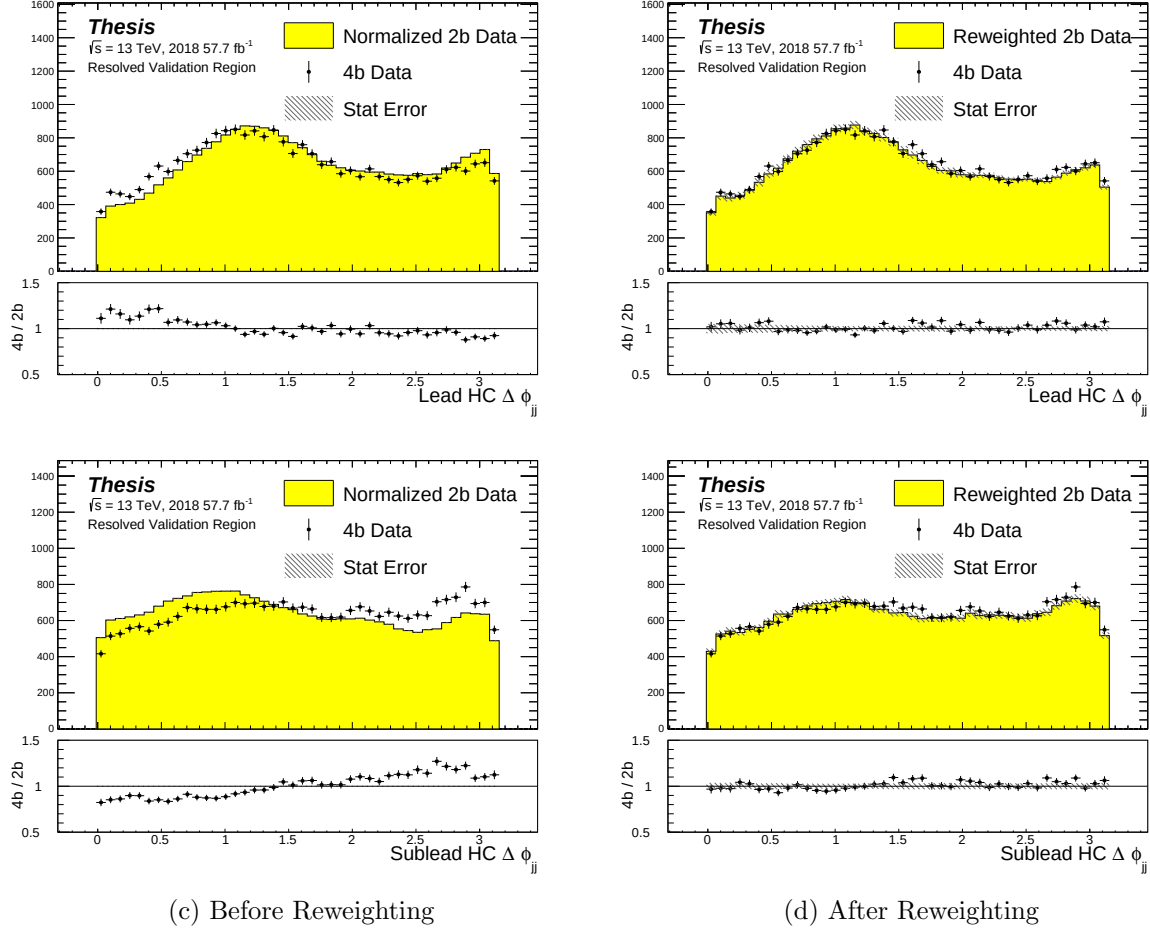


Figure C.8: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and sub-leading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

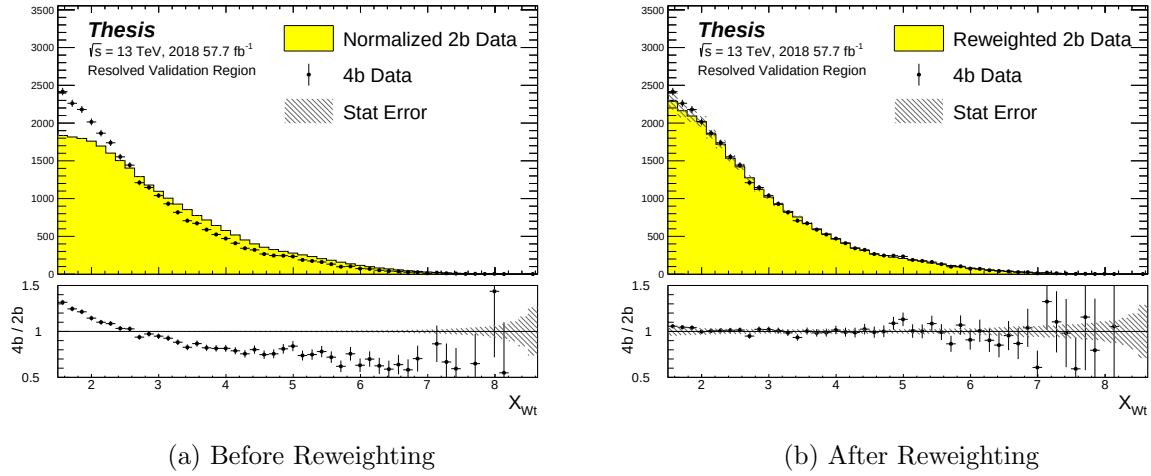
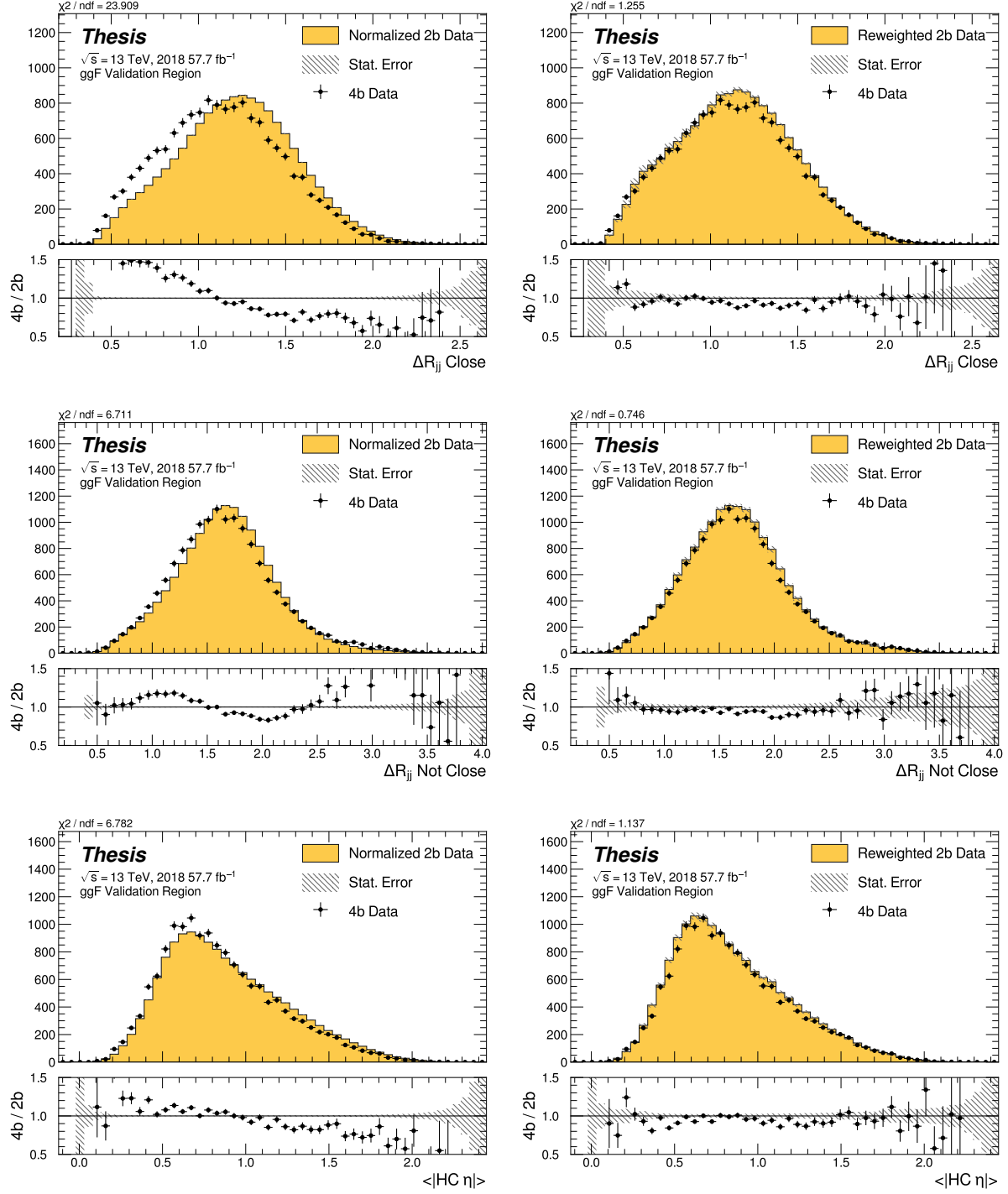


Figure C.9: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied



(e) Before Reweighting

(f) After Reweighting

Figure C.10: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

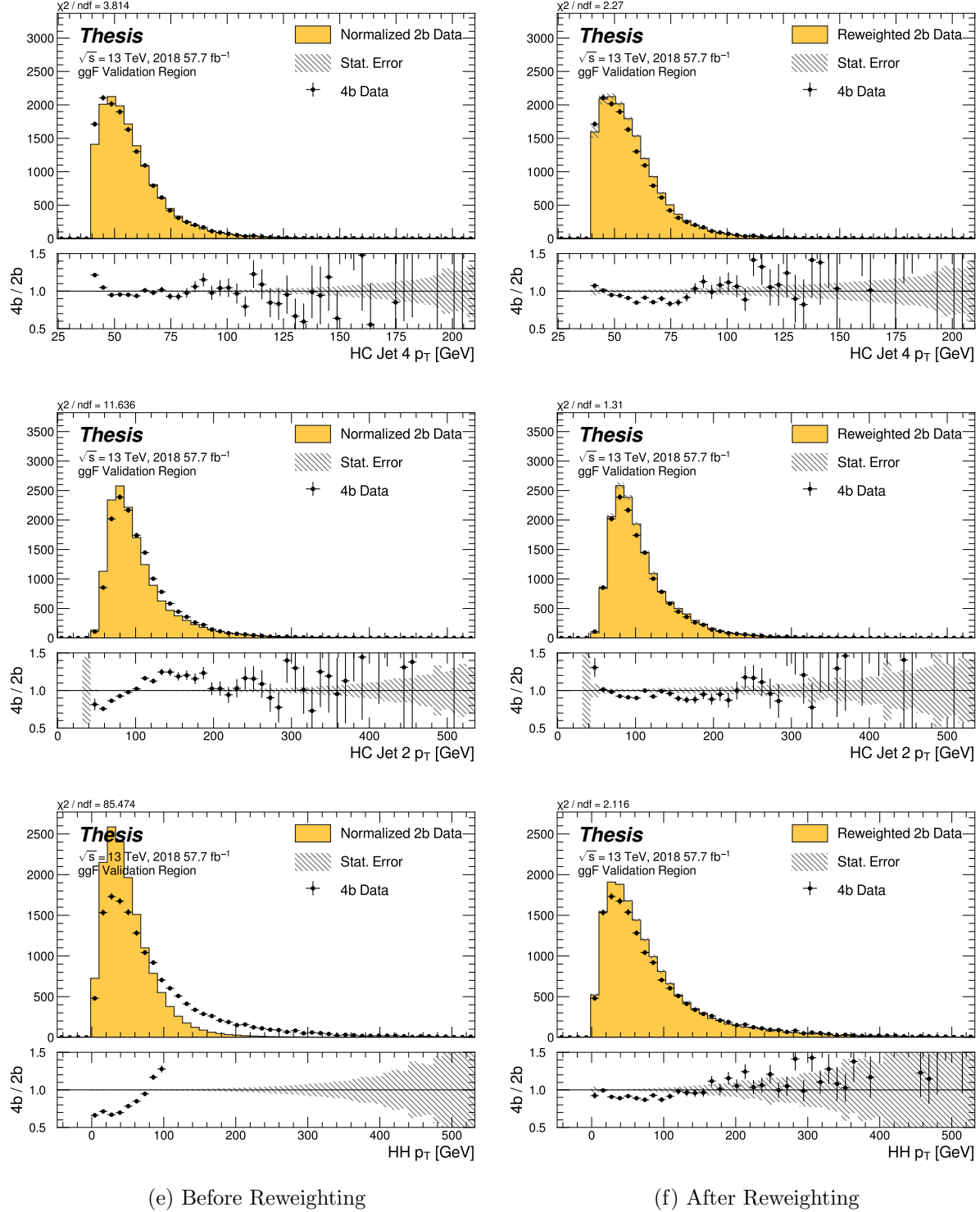


Figure C.11: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

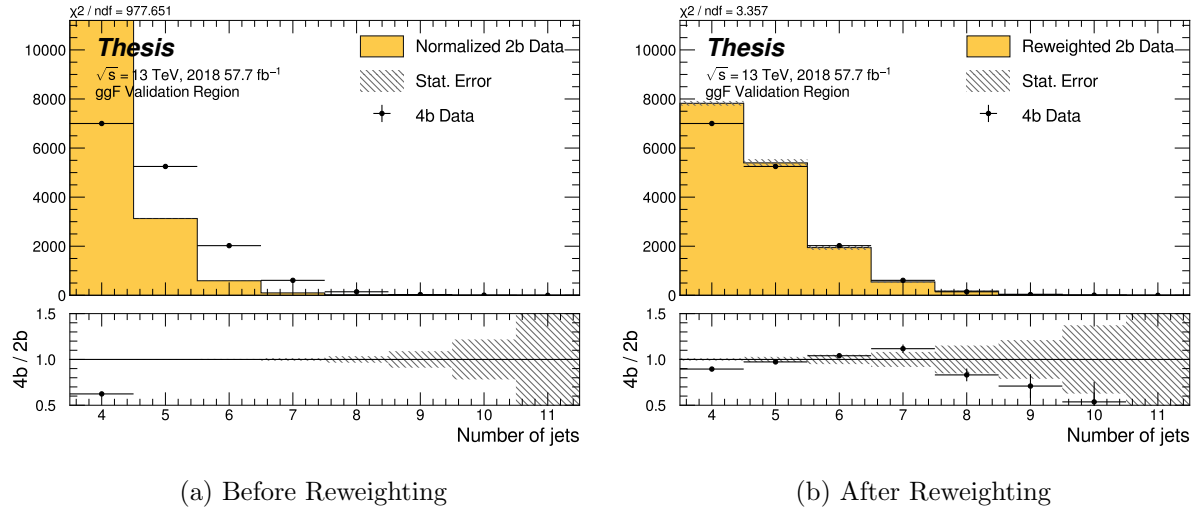
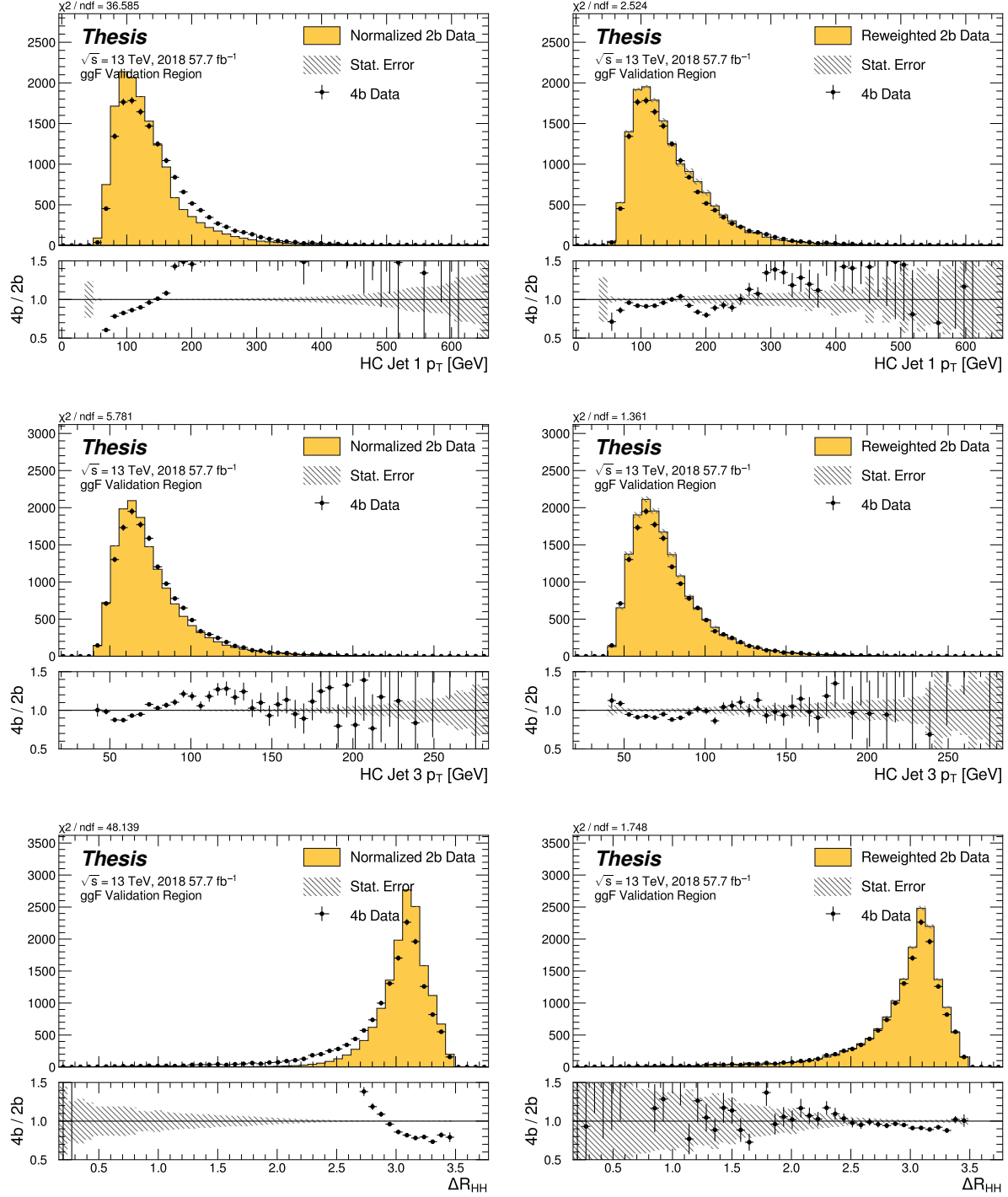


Figure C.12: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.



(e) Before Reweighting

(f) After Reweighting

Figure C.13: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

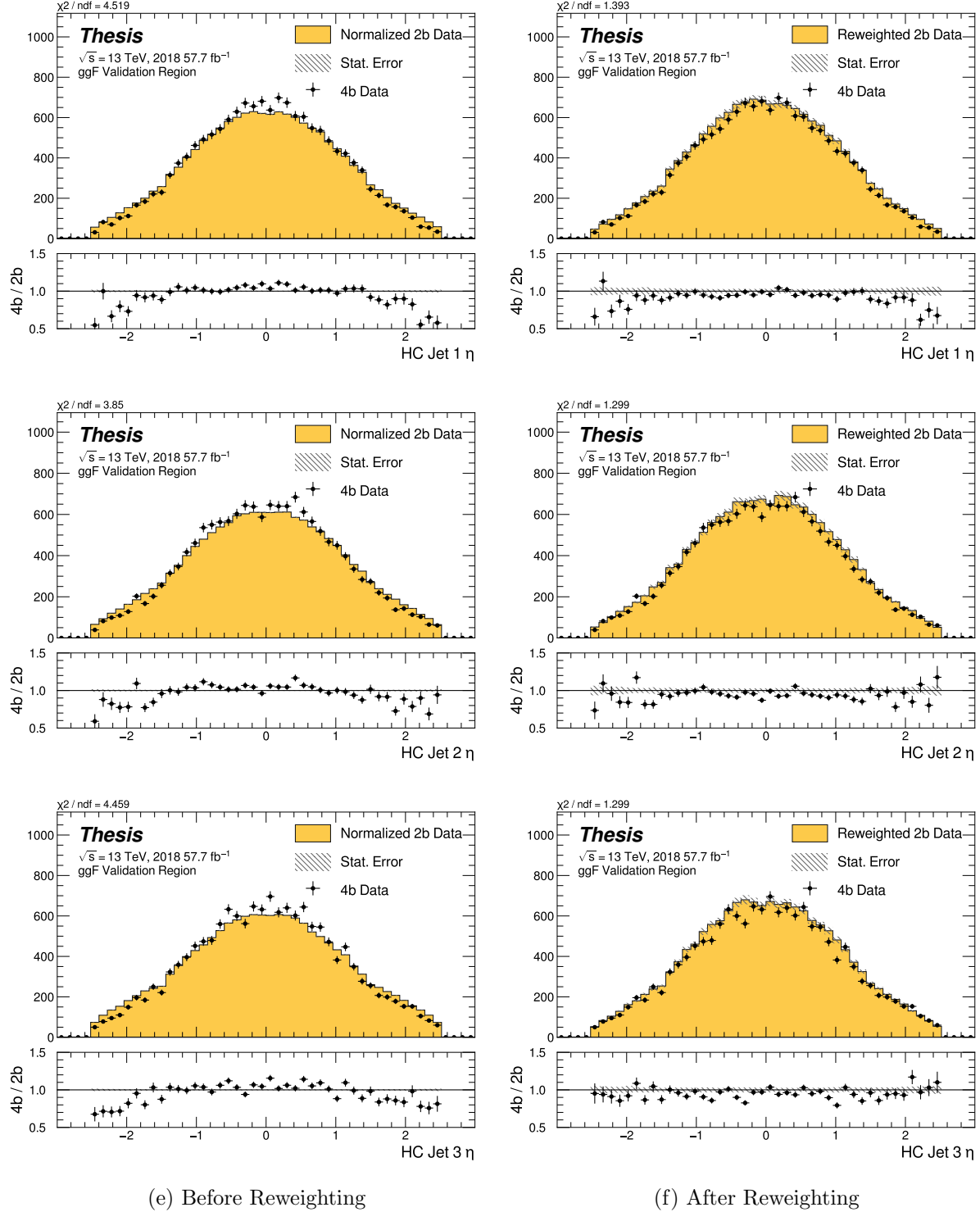


Figure C.14: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

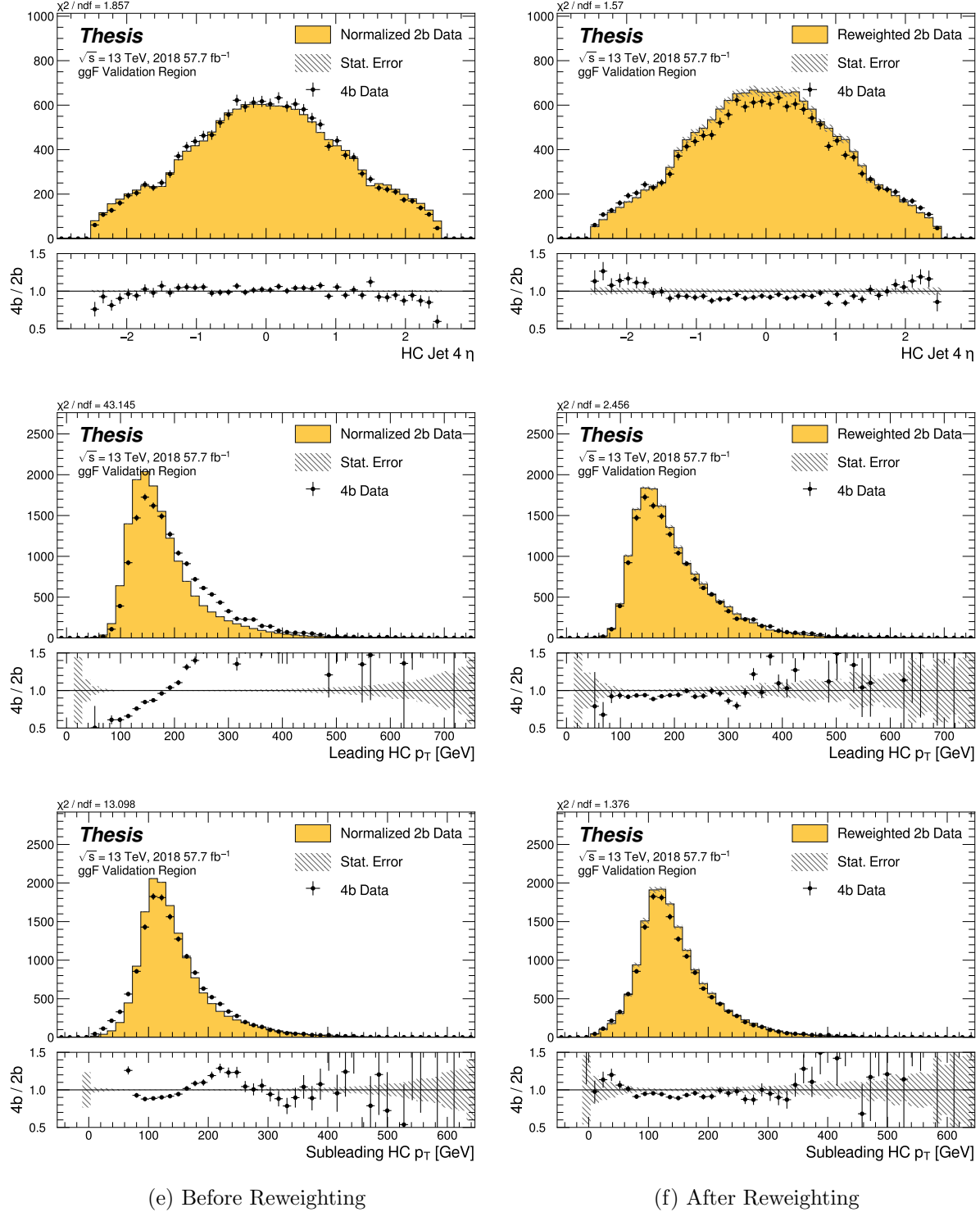


Figure C.15: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

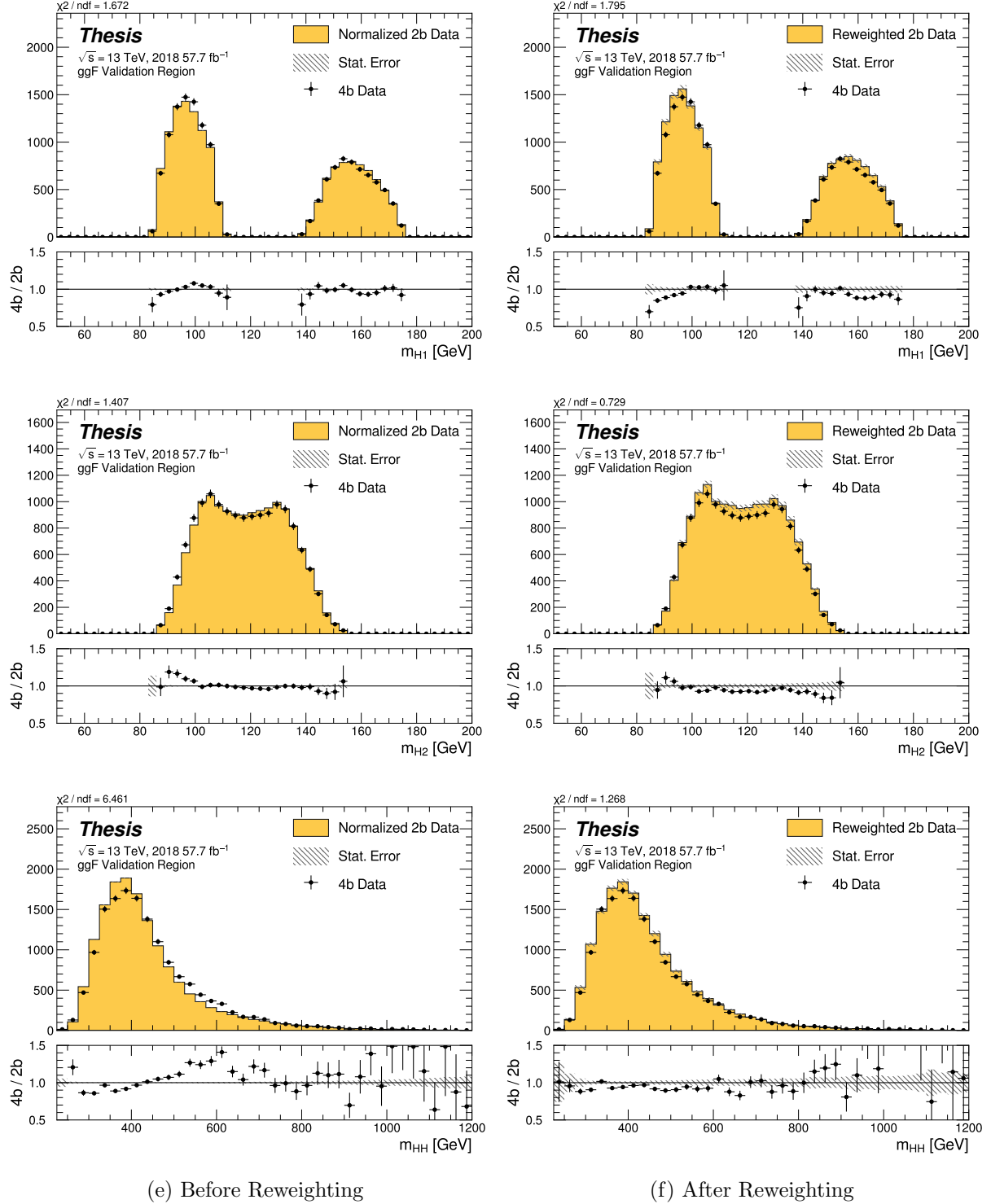


Figure C.16: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of mass of the leading and sub-leading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

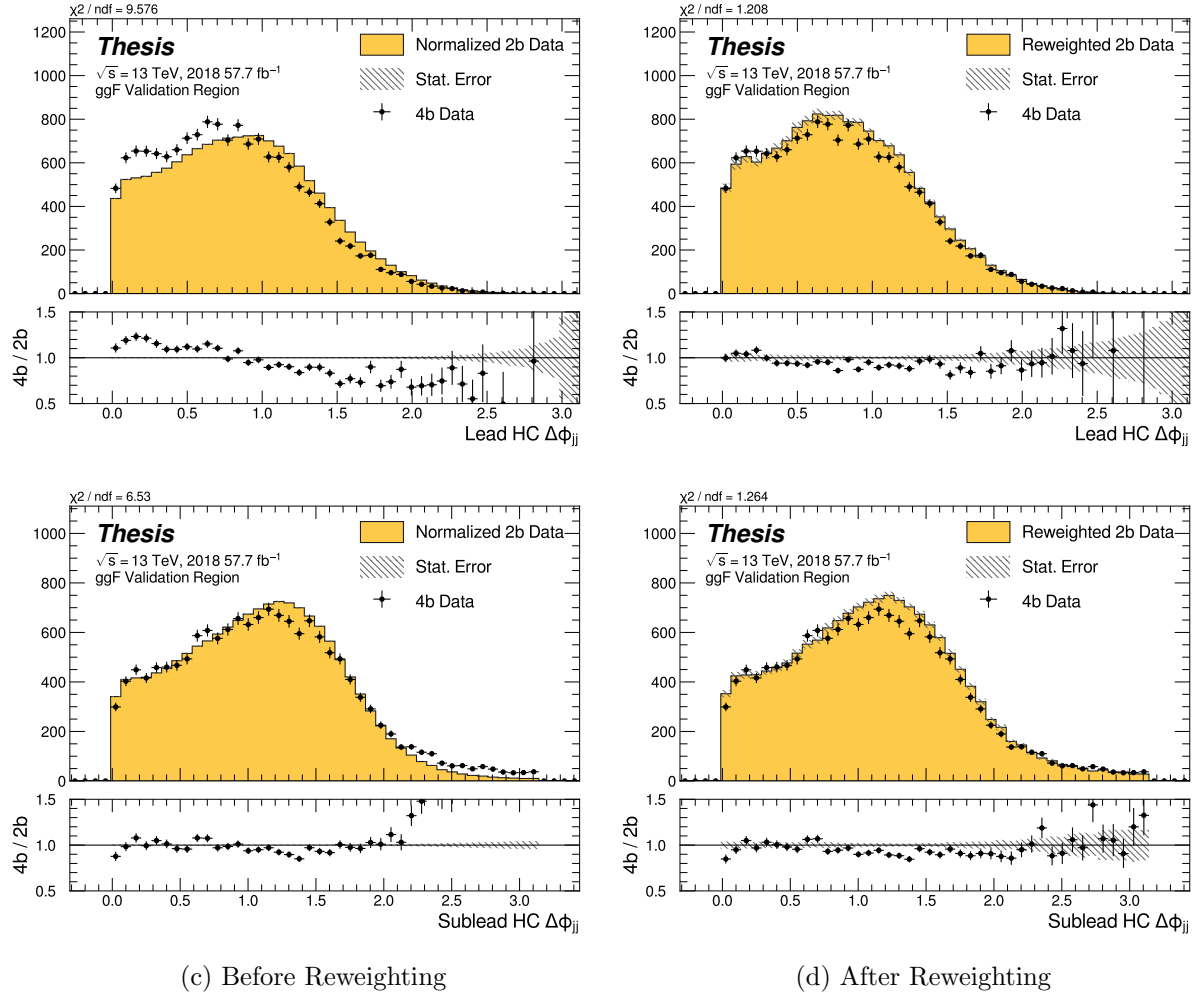
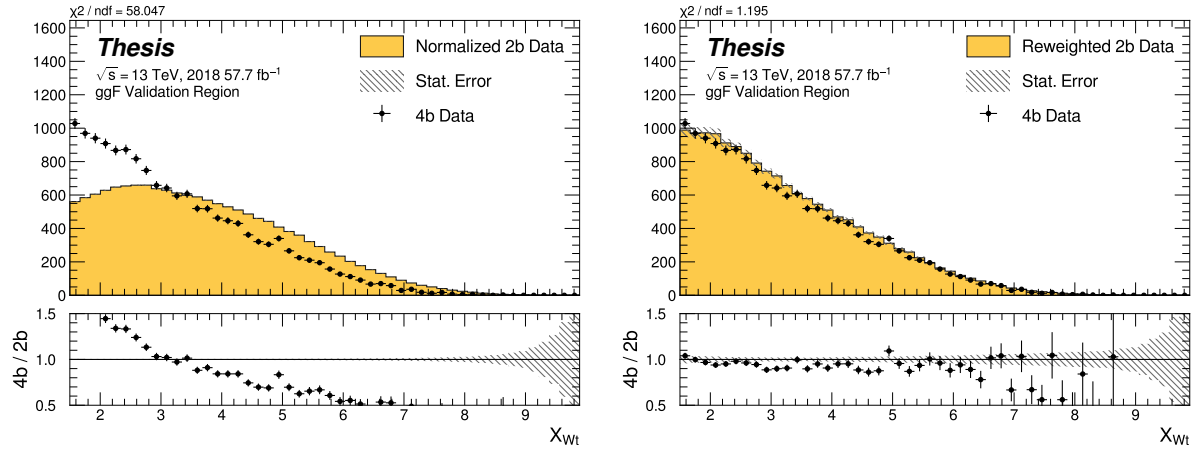


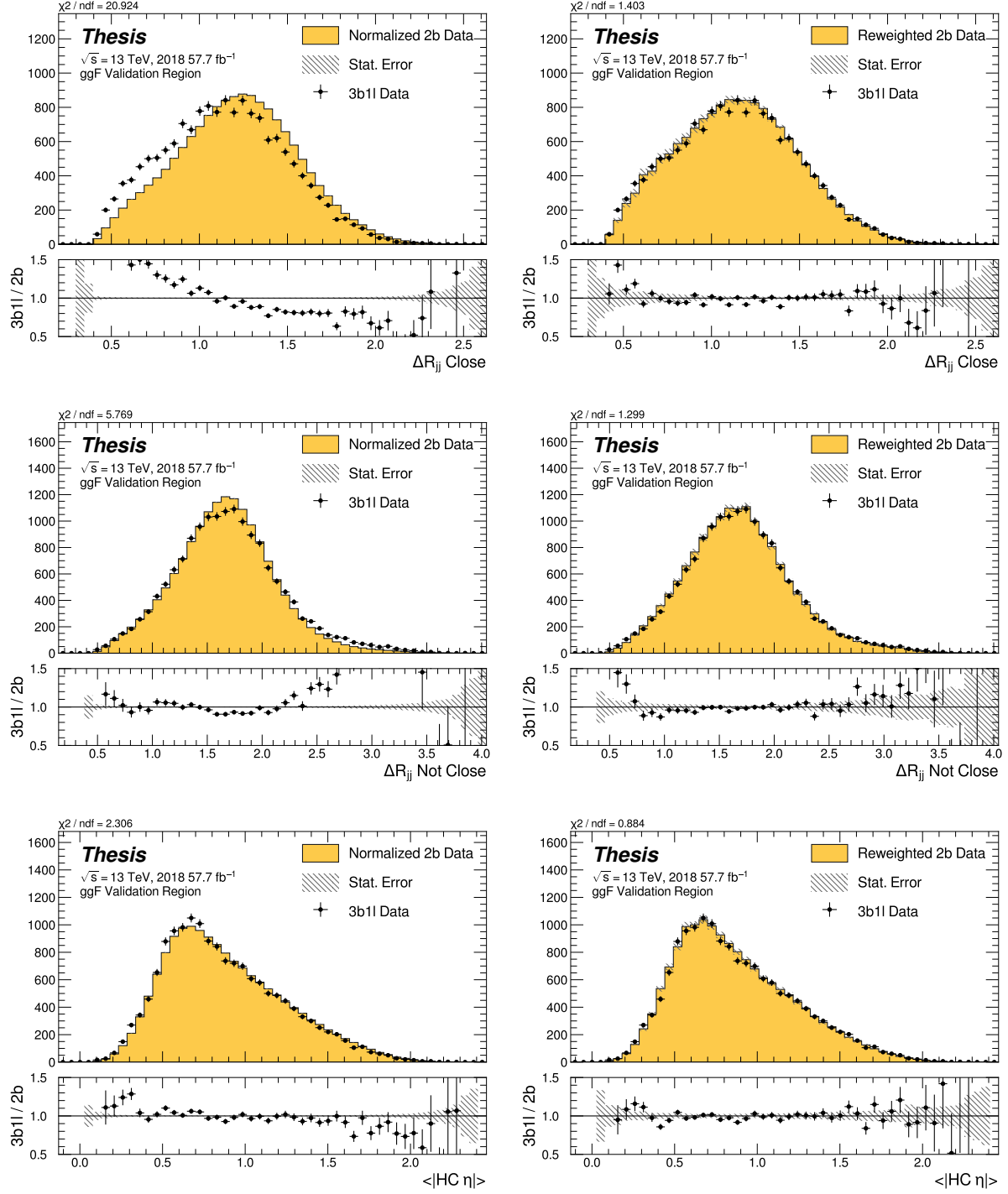
Figure C.17: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.



(a) Before Reweighting

(b) After Reweighting

Figure C.18: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.



(e) Before Reweighting

(f) After Reweighting

Figure C.19: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

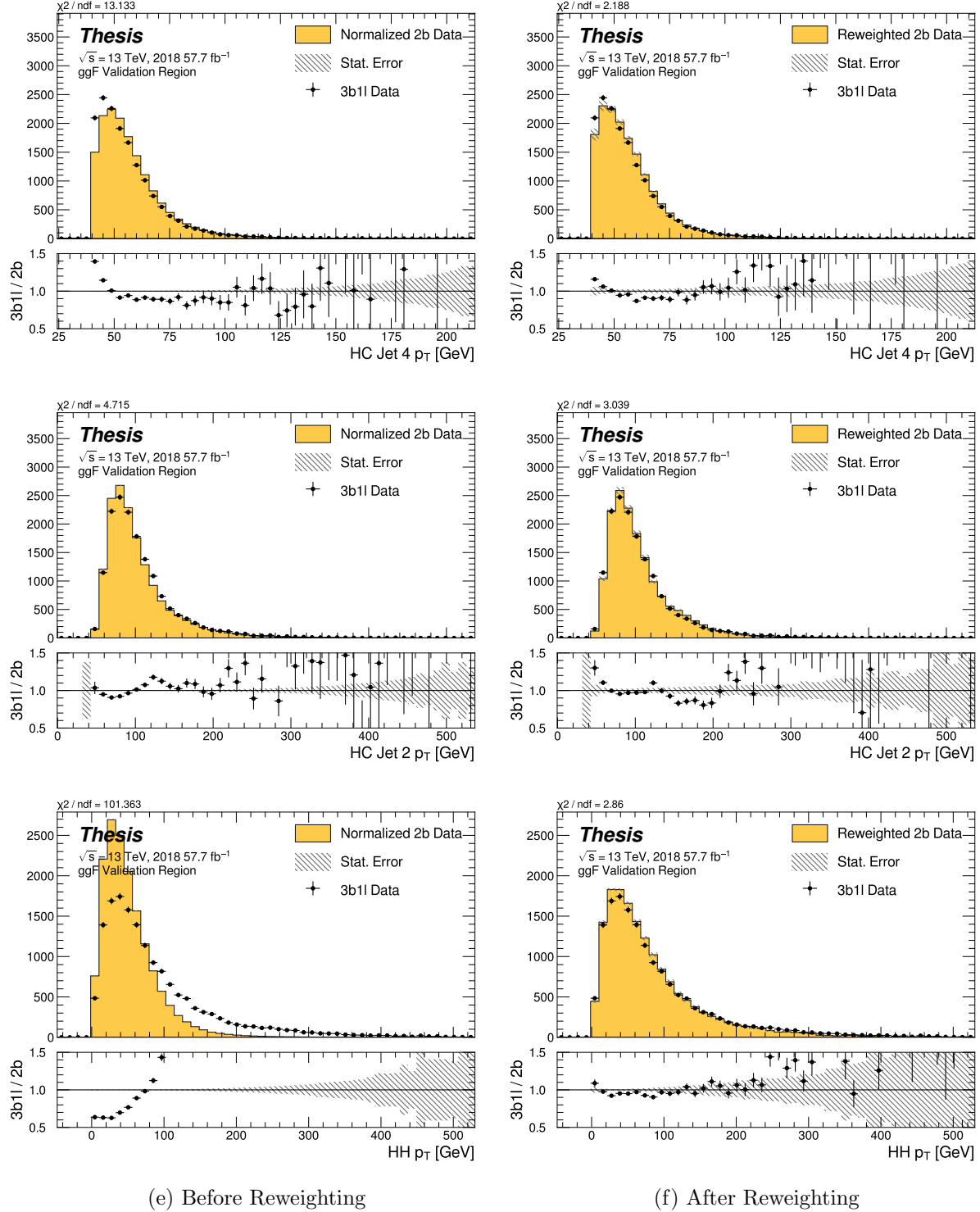


Figure C.20: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

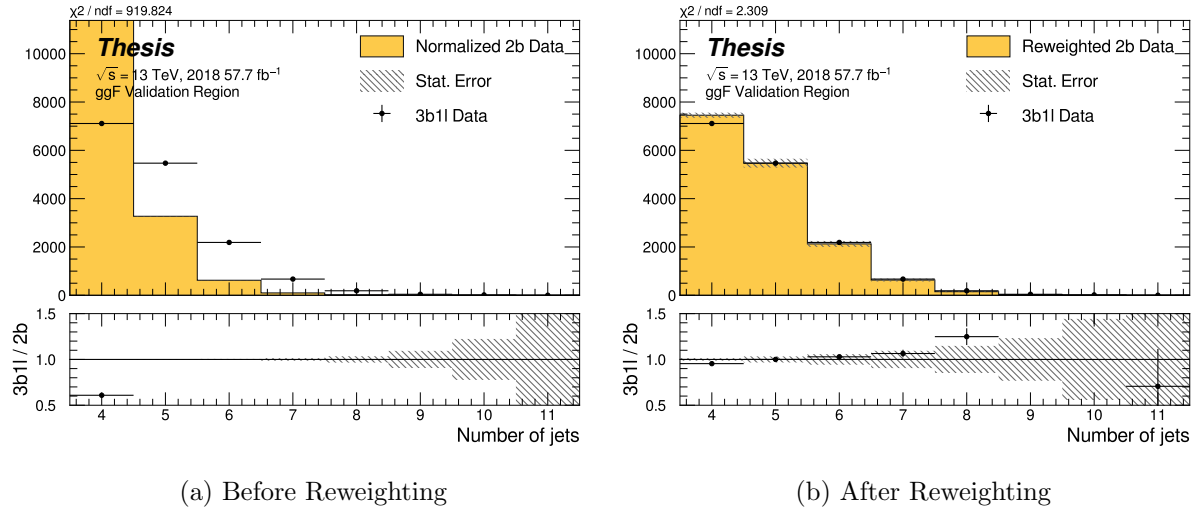
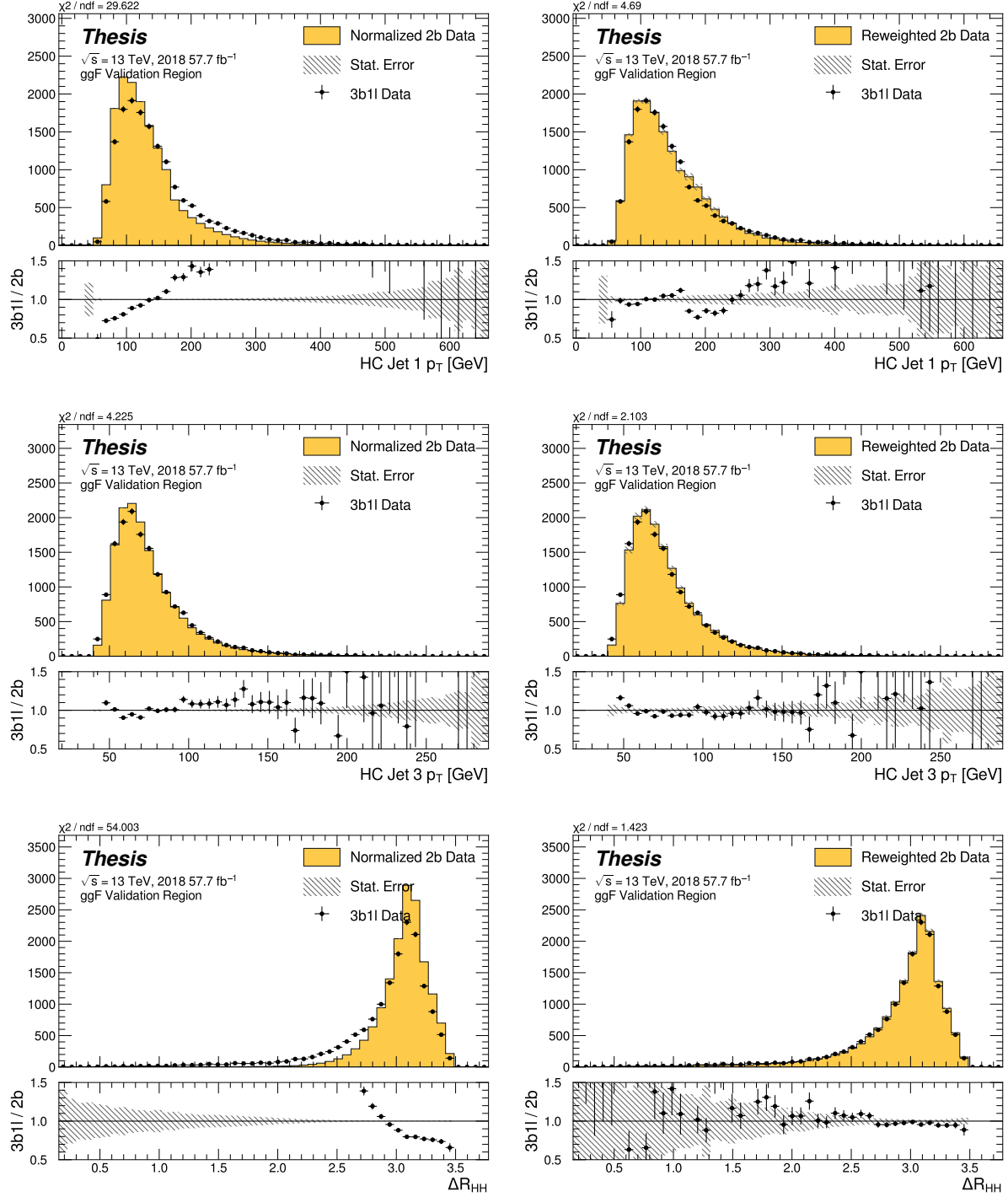


Figure C.21: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.



(e) Before Reweighting

(f) After Reweighting

Figure C.22: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

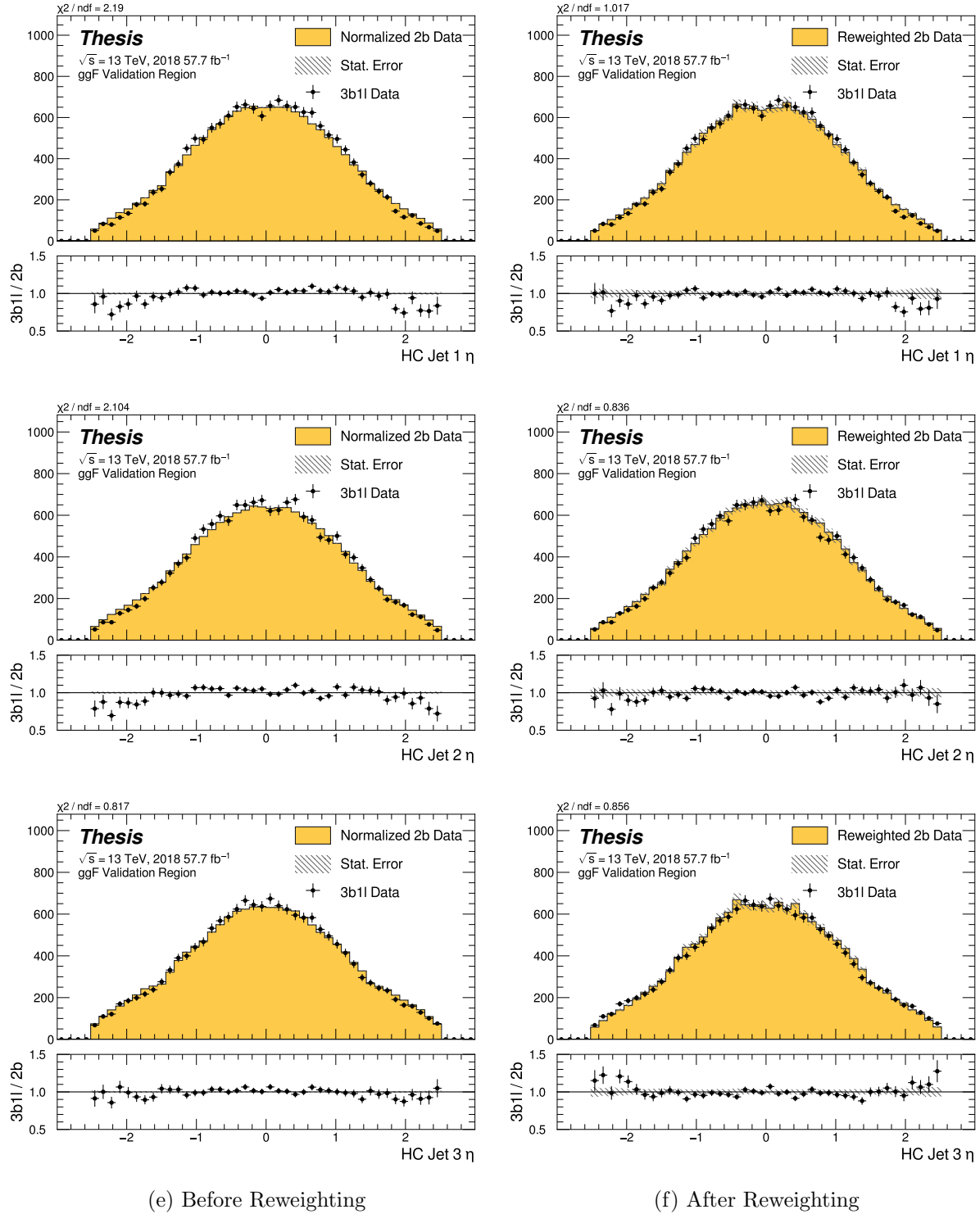
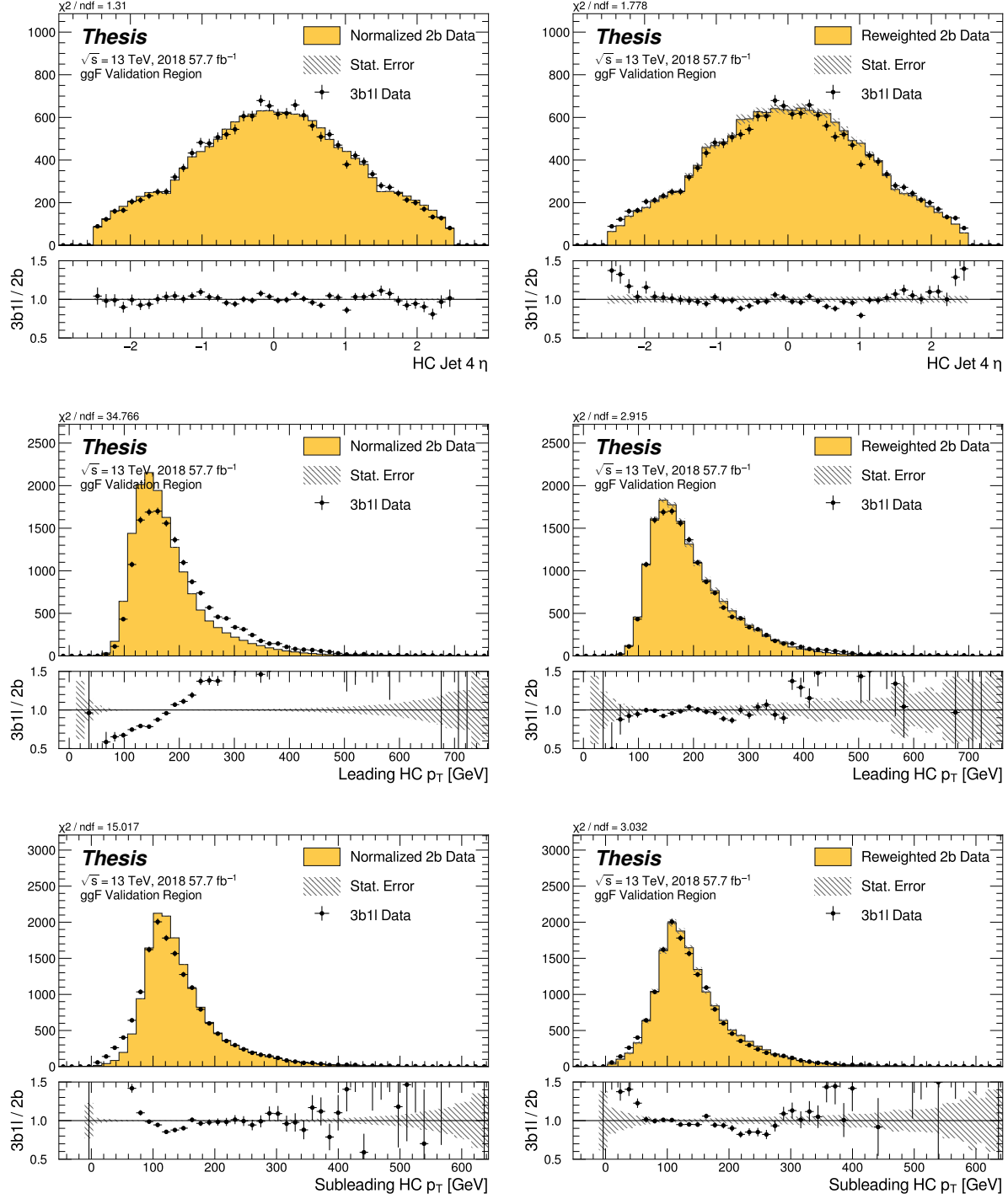


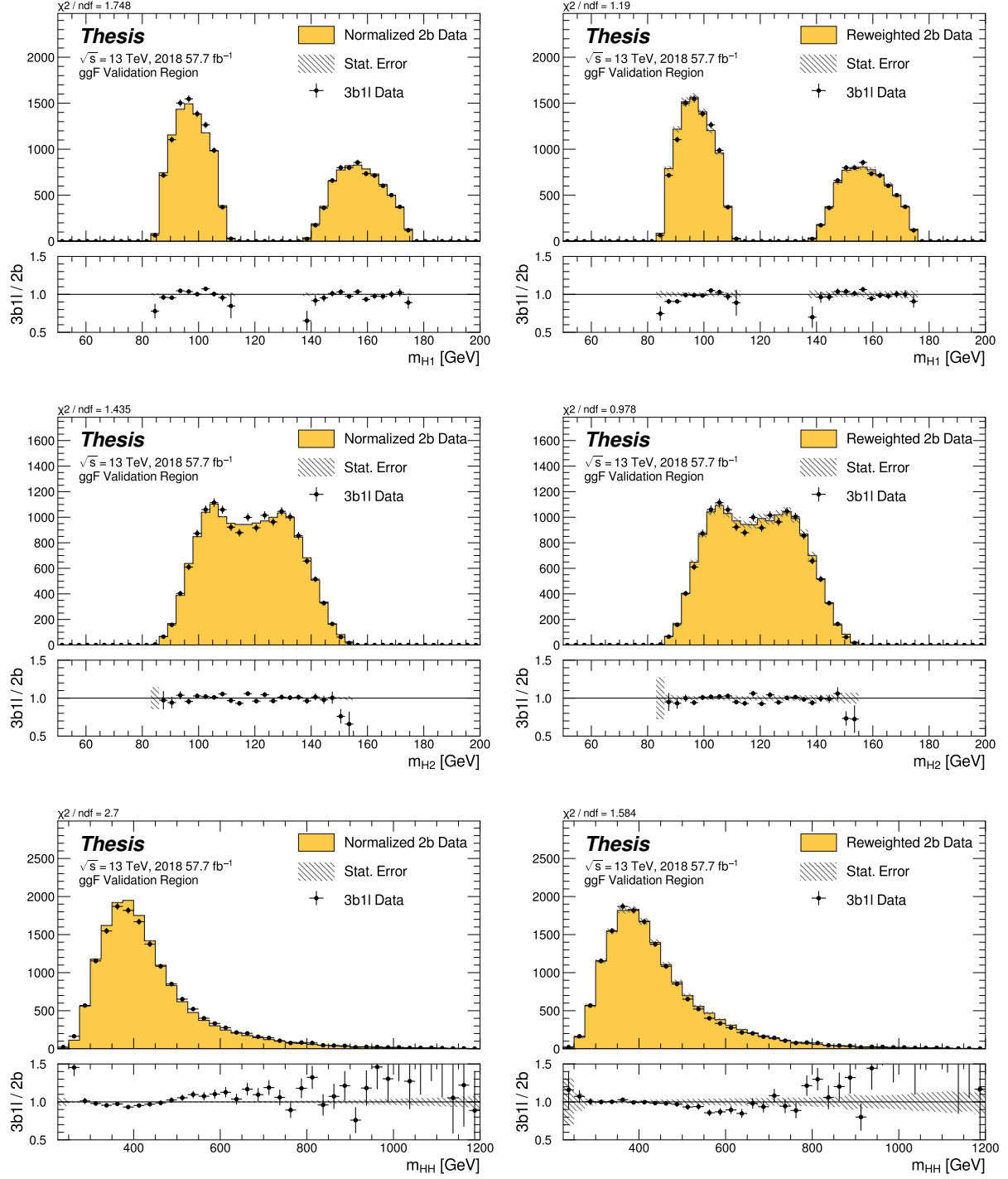
Figure C.23: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.



(e) Before Reweighting

(f) After Reweighting

Figure C.24: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.



(e) Before Reweighting

(f) After Reweighting

Figure C.25: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

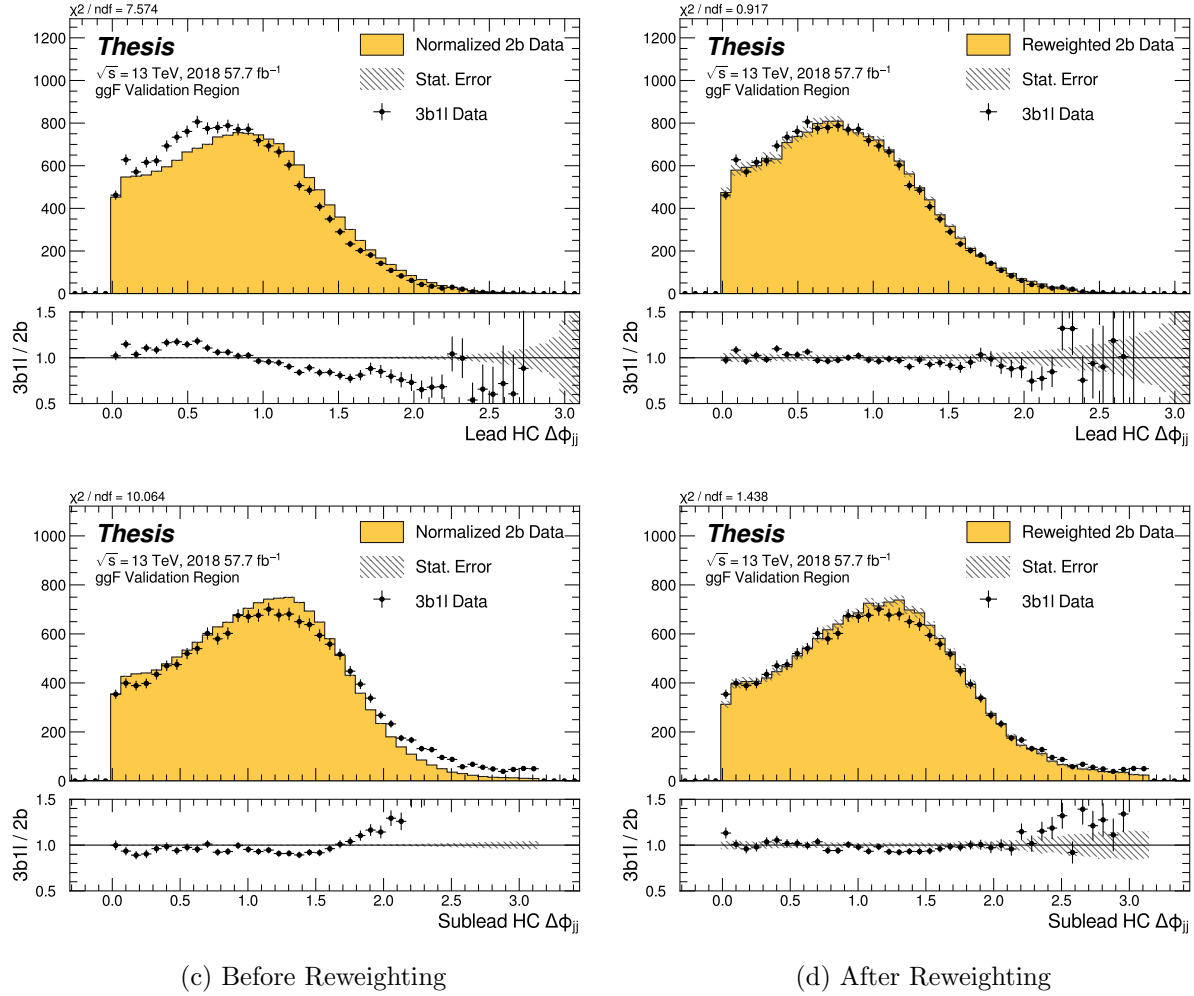


Figure C.26: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

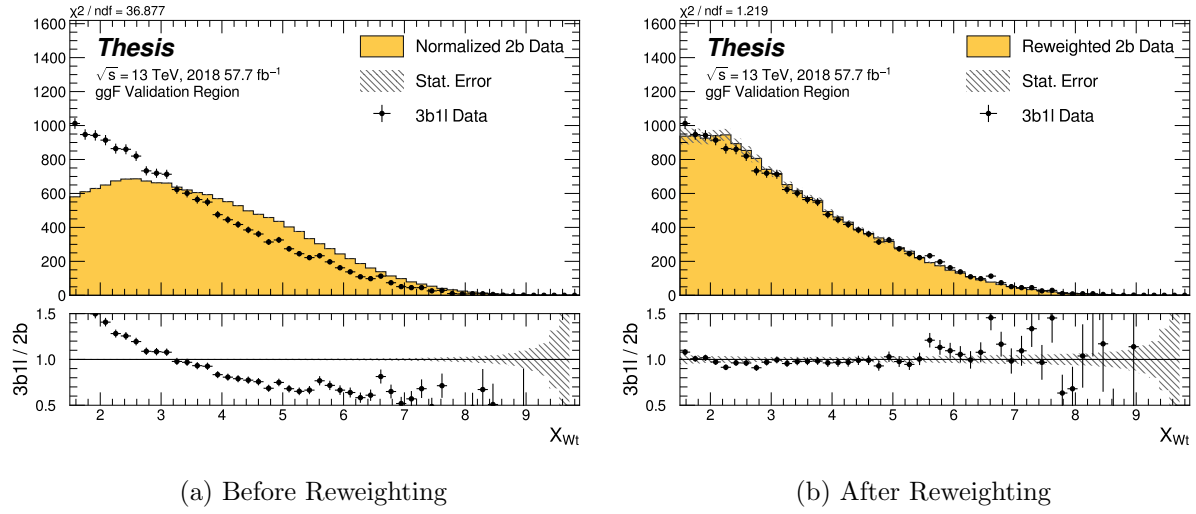


Figure C.27: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.